

Handwritten signature

PCT

WELTORGANISATION FÜR GEISTIGES EIGENTUM  
Internationales Büro

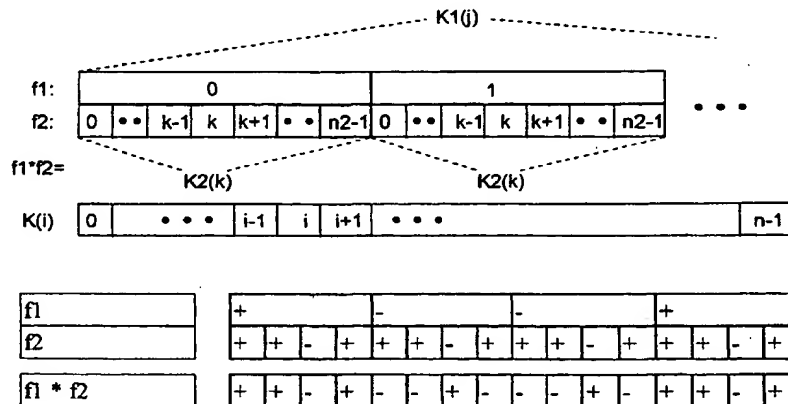


INTERNATIONALE ANMELDUNG VERÖFFENTLICHT NACH DEM VERTRAG ÜBER DIE  
INTERNATIONALE ZUSAMMENARBEIT AUF DEM GEBIET DES PATENTWESENS (PCT)

(51) Internationale Patentklassifikation <sup>7</sup> : <b>H04J 13/00</b>		A2	(11) Internationale Veröffentlichungsnummer: <b>WO 00/14915</b>
		(43) Internationales Veröffentlichungsdatum:	16. März 2000 (16.03.00)
(21) Internationales Aktenzeichen: PCT/DE99/02779		(81) Bestimmungsstaaten: AU, BR, CN, IN, JP, KR, US, eu- ropäisches Patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).	
(22) Internationales Anmeldedatum: 2. September 1999 (02.09.99)		Veröffentlicht <i>Ohne internationalen Recherchenbericht und erneut zu veröffentlichen nach Erhalt des Berichts.</i>	
(30) Prioritätsdaten: 198 40 974.5 8. September 1998 (08.09.98) DE 199 07 083.0 19. Februar 1999 (19.02.99) DE			
(71) Anmelder (für alle Bestimmungsstaaten ausser US): SIEMENS AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT [DE/DE]; Wittelsbacherplatz 2, D-80333 München (DE).			
(72) Erfinder; und (75) Erfinder/Anmelder (nur für US): RAAF, Bernhard [DE/DE]; Maxhofstrasse 62, D-81475 München (DE); MICHEL, Jürgen [DE/DE]; Frundsbergstrasse 44, D-80634 München (DE); LOBINGER, Andreas [DE/DE]; Schlierseer Strasse 30, D-83734 Hausham (DE); BÖMER, Leopold [DE/US]; 12585 Swan Canyon Place, San Diego, CA 92131 (US).			
(74) Gemeinsamer Vertreter: SIEMENS AKTIENGE- SELLSCHAFT; Postfach 22 16 34, D-80506 München (DE).			

(54) Title: METHOD FOR FORMING OR DETECTING A SIGNAL SEQUENCE AND TRANSMITTER UNIT AND RECEIVER UNIT

(54) Bezeichnung: VERFAHREN ZUR BILDUNG BZW. ERMITTLUNG EINER SIGNALFOLGE, SENDEEINHEIT UND EMPFANG-  
SEINHEIT



#### (57) Abstract

The invention relates to the forming of signal sequences based on signal partial sequences, wherein the second signal partial sequence is repeated and modulated by the first signal partial sequence. The invention also relates to the utilization of said signal partial sequences to synchronize two transmission units with the purpose of simplifying calculation of correlation sums in a two-stage calculation method, wherein a partial correlation sum sequence is initially calculated.

### (57) Zusammenfassung

Bildung von Signalfolgen, die auf Signalteilfolgen basieren, wobei die zweite Signalteilfolge wiederholt wird und dabei durch die erste Signalteilfolge moduliert wird. Verwendung dieser Signalteilfolgen bei der Synchronisation zweier Übertragungseinheiten zur vereinfachten Berechnung von Korrelationssummen in einem zweistufigen Berechnungsverfahren, wobei zunächst eine Teilkorrelationssummenfolge berechnet wird.

### LEDIGLICH ZUR INFORMATION

Codes zur Identifizierung von PCT-Vertragsstaaten auf den Kopfbögen der Schriften, die internationale Anmeldungen gemäss dem PCT veröffentlichen.

AL	Albanien	ES	Spanien	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slowenien
AM	Armenien	FI	Finnland	LT	Litauen	SK	Slowakei
AT	Österreich	FR	Frankreich	LU	Luxemburg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australien	GA	Gabun	LV	Lettland	SZ	Swasiland
AZ	Aserbaidshan	GB	Vereinigtes Königreich	MC	Monaco	TD	Tschad
BA	Bosnien-Herzegowina	GE	Georgien	MD	Republik Moldau	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagaskar	TJ	Tadschikistan
BE	Belgien	GN	Guinea	MK	Die ehemalige jugoslawische Republik Mazedonien	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Griechenland	ML	Mali	TR	Türkei
BG	Bulgarien	HU	Ungarn	MN	Mongolei	TT	Trinidad und Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Irland	MR	Mauretanien	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brasilien	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Island	MX	Mexiko	US	Vereinigte Staaten von Amerika
CA	Kanada	IT	Italien	NE	Niger	UZ	Usbekistan
CF	Zentralafrikanische Republik	JP	Japan	NL	Niederlande	VN	Vietnam
CG	Kongo	KE	Kenia	NO	Norwegen	YU	Jugoslawien
CH	Schweiz	KG	Kirgisistan	NZ	Neuseeland	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Demokratische Volksrepublik Korea	PL	Polen		
CM	Kamerun	KR	Republik Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kasachstan	RO	Rumänien		
CU	Kuba	LC	St. Lucia	RU	Russische Föderation		
CZ	Tschechische Republik	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Deutschland	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Schweden		
DK	Dänemark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapur		
EE	Estland						



## Beschreibung

Verfahren zur Bildung bzw. Ermittlung einer Signalfolge, Sendeeinheit und Empfangseinheit

5

Die Erfindung betrifft ein Verfahren zur Bildung einer insbesondere zum Zwecke der Synchronisation zumindest zweier Übertragungseinheiten zu übertragenden Signalfolge, sowie ein Verfahren zur Ermittlung dieser Signalfolge und entsprechende Sende- bzw. Empfangseinheiten.

10

Bei Signalübertragungssystemen, wie beispielsweise Mobilfunksystemen, ist es erforderlich, daß einer der Kommunikationspartner (erste Übertragungseinheit) bestimmte festgelegte Signale erkennt, die von einem anderen Kommunikationspartner (zweite Übertragungseinheit) ausgesandt werden. Dabei kann es sich beispielsweise um sogenannte Synchronisierungs-Bursts (Synchronisierungs-Funkblöcke) zur Synchronisierung zweier Synchronisationspartner, wie beispielsweise Funkstationen, oder um sogenannte Access-Bursts handeln.

15

20

Um derartige Empfangssignale gegenüber dem Umgebungsrauschen zuverlässig zu erfassen bzw. zu identifizieren, ist es bekannt, das Empfangssignal fortlaufend über eine festgelegte Zeitdauer mit einer vorgegebenen Signalfolge zu korrelieren und die Korrelationssumme über die Zeitdauer der vorgegebenen Signalfolge zu bilden. Der Bereich des Empfangssignals, der eine maximale Korrelationssumme ergibt, entspricht dem gesuchten Signal. Dem Synchronisationssignal von der Basisstation eines digitalen Mobilfunksystems ist beispielsweise eine Signalfolge als sogenannte Trainingssequenz vorgeschaltet, die auf die eben beschriebene Weise in der Mobilstation durch Korrelation mit der abgespeicherten Signalfolge erfaßt oder ermittelt wird. So können die Mobilstationen mit der Basisstation synchronisiert werden.

25

30

35

Auch in der Basisstation sind derartige Korrelationsberechnungen beispielsweise bei der Random-Access-Channel (RACH)-Detektion erforderlich. Außerdem wird eine Korrelationsberechnung auch zur Bestimmung der Kanalimpulsantwort und der  
5 Signallaufzeiten empfangener Signalbursts durchgeführt.

Die Korrelationssumme wird dabei wie folgt berechnet:

$$S_m = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} E(i+m) * K(i)$$

10

wobei  $E(i)$  eine aus dem Empfangssignal abgeleitete Empfangssignalfolge und  $K(i)$  die vorgegebene Signalfolge ist, wobei  $i$  von 0 bis  $n-1$  läuft. Die Korrelationssumme  $S_m$  wird aufeinanderfolgend für mehrere zeitlich versetzte, aus dem Empfangssignal gewonnene Signalfolgen  $E(i)$  berechnet, und dann der  
15 maximale Wert von  $S_m$  bestimmt. Sollen  $k$  aufeinanderfolgende Korrelationssummen berechnet werden, so beträgt der Berechnungsaufwand  $k * n$  Operationen, wobei eine Multiplikation und Addition zusammen als eine Operation gezählt wird.

20

Die Berechnung der Korrelationssummen ist daher sehr aufwendig und erfordert, insbesondere bei Real-Time-Anwendungen wie Sprachkommunikation oder Bildtelefonie oder in CDMA-Systemen, leistungsfähige und daher teure Prozessoren, die bei der Berechnung einen hohen Stromverbrauch aufweisen. Beispielsweise  
25 ist zur Synchronisation des sich in der Standardisierung befindlichen UMTS-Mobilfunksystems eine bekannte Signalfolge der Länge 256 Chips (bei CDMA wird ein übertragenes Bit auch Chip genannt) zu ermitteln. Die Folge wird alle 2560 Chips  
30 wiederholt. Da die Mobilstation anfangs asynchron zum Chiptakt arbeitet, muß das Empfangssignal überabgetastet werden, um auch bei ungünstiger Abtastlage noch ein ausreichendes Signal zu erhalten. Dies führt aufgrund der Abtastung der I- und Q-Komponente zu  $256 * 2560 * 2 * 2 = 2621440$  Operationen.

35

Der Erfindung liegt auch die Aufgabe zugrunde, Verfahren und Anordnungen anzugeben, die es erlauben, Signalfolgen zu bilden, und damit Signalfolgen anzugeben, die in übertragenen Empfangssignalfolgen leicht zu ermitteln sind. Der Erfindung  
5 liegt auch die Aufgabe zugrunde, ein Verfahren und Anordnungen anzugeben, die es erlauben, diese Signalfolgen durch die Bildung von Korrelationssummen vergleichsweise einfach zu ermitteln.

10 Gelöst wird die Aufgabe durch die Merkmale der unabhängigen Patentansprüche. Weiterbildungen sind den Unteransprüchen zu entnehmen.

Die Erfindung beruht auf dem Gedanken, Signalfolgen zu bilden, indem eine zweite Signalteilfolge der Länge  $n_2$   $n_1$  mal  
15 wiederholt wird und dabei mit der ersten Signalteilfolge moduliert wird.

Dadurch können Signalfolgen gebildet werden, die, wenn sie in  
20 einer Empfangssignalfolge enthalten sind, leicht ermittelt werden können.

Durch die Angabe des Verfahrens zur Bildung von Signalfolgen liegen auch die Signalfolgen, die durch ein derartiges Verfahren gebildet werden können oder erhältlich sind, im Rahmen  
25 der Erfindung. Insbesondere auch deren Verwendung in Datenübertragungssystemen, insbesondere zum Zwecke der Synchronisation einer Mobilstation mit einer Basisstation

30 Zur Ermittlung einer in einer Empfangssignalfolge enthaltenen vorgegebenen Signalfolge mittels der Bestimmung von Korrelationssummen wird eine Teilkorrelationssummenfolge der zweiten Signalteilfolge mit entsprechenden Teilen der Empfangssignalfolge berechnet. Zur Berechnung einer Korrelationssumme werden  
35  $n_1$  Elemente der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge ausgewählt und im Sinne eines Skalarproduktes mit der ersten Signalteilfolge multipliziert.

Bei einer Weiterbildung der Erfindung werden einmal berechnete Teilkorrelationssummen abgespeichert und zur Berechnung weiterer Korrelationssummen verwendet.

5

So ist es möglich, bei der Berechnung weiterer Korrelationssummen vorher schon berechnete Teilkorrelationssummen zu verwenden und so den Rechenaufwand enorm zu verringern.

10 Unter Empfangssignalfolge versteht man auch eine Signalfolge, die beispielsweise durch eine Demodulation, Filterung, Dero-  
tation, Skalierung oder Analog-/Digitalwandlung aus einem empfangenen Signal abgeleitet wurde.

15 Im folgenden wird die Erfindung anhand verschiedener Ausführungsbeispiele näher beschrieben, zu deren Erläuterung die nachfolgend aufgelisteten Figuren dienen:

Figur 1 schematische Darstellung eines Mobilfunknetzes

20

Figur 2 Blockschaltdiagramm einer Funkstation

Figur 3 herkömmliches Verfahren zur Berechnung von Korrelationssummen

25

Figur 4 Darstellung erfindungsgemäßer Signalfolgen und Signalteilstrecken

Figur 5 schematische Darstellung der Bildung der erfindungsgemäßen Signalfolge

30

Figur 6, 7 und 8 schematische Darstellung eines Verfahrens zur Berechnung einer Korrelationssumme

35 Figur 9 und 10 schematische Darstellung einer Ausführungsvariante eines Verfahrens zur Bildung der Korrelationssumme.

In Figur 1 ist ein zellulares Mobilfunknetz, wie beispielsweise das GSM (Global System for Mobile Communication)-System dargestellt, das aus einer Vielzahl von Mobilvermittlungsstellen MSC besteht, die untereinander vernetzt sind, bzw.  
5 den Zugang zu einem Festnetz PSTN/ISDN herstellen. Ferner sind diese Mobilvermittlungsstellen MSC mit jeweils zumindest einem Basisstationscontroller BSC verbunden, der auch durch ein Datenverarbeitungssystem gebildet sein kann. Eine ähnliche Architektur findet sich auch in einem UMTS (Universal Mobile Telecommunication System).  
10

Jeder Basisstationscontroller BSC ist wiederum mit zumindest einer Basisstation BS verbunden. Eine solche Basisstation BS ist eine Funkstation, die über eine Funkschnittstelle eine  
15 Funkverbindung zu anderen Funkstationen, sogenannten Mobilstationen MS aufbauen kann. Zwischen den Mobilstationen MS und der diesen Mobilstationen MS zugeordneten Basisstation BS können mittels Funksignalen Informationen innerhalb von Funkkanälen  $f$  die innerhalb von Frequenzbändern  $b$  liegen, übertragen werden. Die Reichweite der Funksignale einer Basisstation definieren im wesentlichen eine Funkzelle FZ.  
20

Basisstationen BS und ein Basisstationscontroller BSC können zu einem Basisstationssystem BSS zusammengefaßt werden. Das  
25 Basisstationssystem BSS ist dabei auch für die Funkkanalverwaltung bzw. -zuteilung, die Datenratenanpassung, die Überwachung der Funkübertragungsstrecke, Hand-Over-Prozeduren, und im Falle eines CDMA-Systems für die Zuteilung der zu verwendenden Spreizcodesets, zuständig und übermittelt die dazu nötigen Signalisierungsinformationen zu den Mobilstationen MS.  
30

Im Falle eines Duplex-Systems können bei FDD (Frequency Division Duplex)-Systemen, wie dem GSM-System, für den Uplink  $u$  (Mobilstation (Sendeeinheit) zur Basisstation (Empfangseinheit)) andere Frequenzbänder vorgesehen sein als für den  
35 Downlink  $d$  (Basisstation (Sendeeinheit) zur Mobilstation (Empfangseinheit)). Innerhalb der unterschiedlichen Frequenz-

bänder  $b$  können durch ein FDMA (Frequency Division Multiple Access) Verfahren mehrere Frequenzkanäle  $f$  realisiert werden.

5 Im Rahmen der vorliegenden Anmeldung versteht man unter Übertragungseinheit auch Kommunikationseinheit, Sendeeinheit, Empfangseinheit, Kommunikationsendgerät, Funkstation, Mobilstation oder Basisstation. Im Rahmen dieser Anmeldung verwendete Begriffe und Beispiele beziehen sich auch oft auf ein GSM-Mobilfunksystem; sie sind jedoch keineswegs darauf be-  
10 schränkt, sondern können anhand der Beschreibung von einem Fachmann auch leicht auf andere, gegebenenfalls zukünftige, Mobilfunksysteme, wie CDMA-Systeme, insbesondere Wide-Band-CDMA-Systeme abgebildet werden.

15 Mittels Vielfachzugriffsverfahren können Daten über eine Funkschnittstelle effizient übertragen, separiert und einer oder mehreren bestimmten Verbindungen bzw. dem entsprechenden Teilnehmer zugeteilt werden. Dazu kann ein Zeitvielfachzugriff TDMA, ein Frequenzvielfachzugriff FDMA, ein Codeviel-  
20 fachzugriff CDMA oder eine Kombination aus mehreren dieser Vielfachzugriffsverfahren eingesetzt werden.

Beim FDMA wird das Frequenzband  $b$  in mehrere Frequenzkanäle  $f$  zerlegt; diese Frequenzkanäle werden durch den Zeitvielfach-  
25 zugriff TDMA in Zeitschlitzte  $t_s$  aufgeteilt. Die innerhalb eines Zeitschlitzes  $t_s$  und eines Frequenzkanals  $f$  übertragenen Signale können durch verbindungsindividuelle den Daten aufmodulierte Spreizcodes, sogenannte CDMA-Codes  $cc$  separiert werden.

30 Die so entstehenden physikalischen Kanäle werden nach einem festgelegten Schema logischen Kanälen zugeordnet. Bei den logischen Kanälen unterscheidet man grundsätzlich zwei Arten: Signalisierungskanäle (bzw. Steuerkanäle) zur Übertragung von  
35 Signalisierungsinformationen (bzw. Steuerinformationen) und Verkehrskanäle (Traffic Channel TCH) zur Übertragung von Nutzdaten.

Die Signalisierungskanäle werden weiter unterteilt in:

- Broadcast Channels
- Common Control Channels
- Dedicated/Access Control Channel DCCH/ACCH

5 Zu der Gruppe der Broadcast Channels gehören der Broadcast Control Channel BCCH, durch den die MS funktechnische Informationen vom Basisstationssystem BSS erhält, der Frequency Correction Channel FCCH und der Synchronization Channel SCH. Zu den Common Control Channels gehört der Random Access Chan-  
10 nel RACH. Die zur Realisierung dieser logischen Kanäle übertragenen Funkblöcke oder Signalfolgen können dabei für unterschiedliche Zwecke Signalfolgen  $K(i)$  sog. Korrelationsfolgen enthalten, bzw. auf diesen logischen Kanälen können für unterschiedliche Zwecke Signalfolgen  $K(i)$  übertragen werden.

15

Im folgenden wird beispielhaft ein Verfahren zur Synchronisation einer Mobilstation MS mit einer Basisstation BS erläutert: Während eines ersten Schritts der anfänglichen Basisstationssuche oder Zellsuche (initial cell search procedure) verwendet die Mobilstation den primären Synchronisationskanal (primary synchronisation channel SCH (PSC)), um eine Zeitschlitzsynchronisation mit der stärksten Basisstation zu erreichen. Dies kann durch einen angepaßten Filter (matched filter) oder eine entsprechende Schaltung gewährleistet werden, der an den primären Synchronisationscode  $c_p$ , der von allen Basisstationen ausgesendet wird, angepaßt ist. Dabei wird  
20 von allen Basisstationen BS der gleiche primäre Synchronisationscode  $c_p$  der Länge 256 ausgesendet.

30 Die Mobilstation ermittelt mittels Korrelation aus einer Empfangsfolge die empfangenen Signalfolgen  $K(i)$  nach einem Prinzip, das in den Figuren 6 bis 11 und zugehöriger Beschreibung erläutert ist. Dabei werden am Ausgang eines angepaßten Filters (matched Filter) für jede empfangene Signalfolge jeder  
35 sich innerhalb des Empfangsbereichs der Mobilstation befindlichen Basisstation Peaks ausgegeben. Die Detektion der Position des stärksten Peaks ermöglicht die Ermittlung des Ti-

mings der stärksten Basisstation modulo der Schlitzlänge. Um eine größere Verlässlichkeit zu gewährleisten, kann der Ausgang des angepaßten Filters über die Anzahl der Zeitschlitzte nicht-kohärent akkumuliert werden. Die Mobilstation führt also eine Korrelation über eine Signalfolge der Länge 256 Chips als Matched-Filter-Operation durch.

Der Synchronisationscode  $cp$  ist dabei entsprechend einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$  nach einem Prinzip, wie in Figur 5 und zugehöriger Beschreibung erläutert, gebildet oder kann derart gebildet sein oder ist derart erhältlich. Die Signalfolge  $K(i)$  bzw. der Synchronisationscode  $cp$  der Länge 256 ist dabei aus zwei Signalteilstücken  $K1(j), K2(k)$ , die jeweils die Länge 16 aufweisen, gebildet oder kann derart gebildet werden. Diese Signalteilstücke bilden dabei ein Signalteilstückpaar  $(K1(j); K2(k))$ .

Eine derart erhältliche Signalfolge  $K(i)$  kann dabei auch "hierarchische Signalfolge" genannt werden. Eine Signalteilstückfolge kann auch "kurze Korrelationsfolge" genannt werden.

Figur 2 zeigt eine Funkstation, die eine Mobilstation MS sein kann, bestehend aus einer Bedieneinheit oder Interface-Einheit MMI, einer Steuereinrichtung STE, einer Verarbeitungseinrichtung VE, einer Stromversorgungseinrichtung SVE, einer Empfangseinrichtung EE und ggf. einer Sendeeinrichtung SE.

Die Steuereinrichtung STE besteht im wesentlichen aus einem programmgesteuerten Mikrocontroller MC, der schreibend und lesend auf Speicherbausteine SPE zugreifen kann. Der Mikrocontroller MC steuert und kontrolliert alle wesentlichen Elemente und Funktionen der Funkstation.

Die Verarbeitungseinrichtung VE kann auch durch einen digitalen Signalprozessor DSP gebildet sein, der ebenfalls auf Speicherbausteine SPE zugreifen kann. Durch die Verarbei-



tungseinrichtung VE können auch Additions- und Multiplikationsmittel realisiert sein.

- In den flüchtigen oder nicht flüchtigen Speicherbausteinen SPE sind die Programmdateien, die zur Steuerung der Funkstation und des Kommunikationsablaufs, insbesondere auch der Signalisierungsprozeduren, benötigt werden und während der Verarbeitung von Signalen entstehende Informationen gespeichert. Außerdem können darin Signalfolgen  $K(i)$ , die zu Korrelationszwecken verwendet werden, und Zwischenergebnisse von Korrelationssummenberechnungen gespeichert werden. Die im Rahmen der Erfindung liegenden Signalfolgen  $K(i)$  können also in der Mobilstation und/oder der Basisstation abgespeichert sein.
- Es ist auch möglich, daß ein oder mehrere Signalteilfolgen oder Signalteilfolgenpaare  $(K1(j); K2(k))$  in der Mobilstation und/oder der Basisstation abgespeichert sind. Es ist auch möglich, daß in der Mobilstation und/oder der Basisstation eine Signalfolge  $K(i)$  aus einem Signalteilfolgenpaar  $(K1(j); K2(k))$  gebildet wird.

Insbesondere kann in einer Basisstation oder in allen Basisstationen eines Systems eine Signalfolge  $K(i)$  abgespeichert sein, die in festen oder variablen Abständen zu Synchronisationszwecken ausgesendet wird. In der Mobilstation MS ist das Signalteilfolgenpaar  $(K1(j); K2(k))$ , aus dem die in der Basisstation abgespeicherte Signalfolge  $K(i)$  bildbar ist oder gebildet werden kann, abgespeichert und wird zur Synchronisation der Mobilstation mit einer Basisstation zur rechenaufwandsgünstigen Korrelationssummenberechnung herangezogen.

Die Speicherung der Signalfolgen bzw. der Signalteilfolgen kann auch durch eine Speicherung entsprechender Informationen in beliebig codierter Form erfolgen und durch Mittel zur Speicherung, wie beispielsweise flüchtige und/oder nicht-flüchtige Speichereinbausteine oder durch entsprechend konfigurierte Addierer- oder Multipliziererereingänge oder entspre-

chende gleichwirkende Hardwareausgestaltungen realisiert sein.

Der Hochfrequenzteil HF besteht ggf. aus der Sendeeinrichtung SE, mit einem Modulator und einem Verstärker V und einer Empfangseinrichtung EE mit einem Demodulator und ebenfalls einem Verstärker. Durch Analog/Digitalwandlung werden die analogen Audiosignale und die analogen von der Empfangseinrichtung EE stammenden Signale in digitale Signale gewandelt und vom digitalen Signalprozessor DSP verarbeitet. Nach der Verarbeitung werden ggf. die digitalen Signale durch Digital/Analogwandlung in analoge Audiosignale oder andere Ausgangssignale und analoge der Sendeeinrichtung SE zuzuführende Signale gewandelt. Dazu wird gegebenenfalls eine Modulation bzw. Demodulation durchgeführt.

Der Sendeeinrichtung SE und der Empfangseinrichtung EE wird über den Synthesizer SYN die Frequenz eines spannungsgeregelten Oszillators VCO zugeführt. Mittels des spannungsgesteuerten Oszillators VCO kann auch der Systemtakt zur Taktung von Prozessoreinrichtungen der Funkstation erzeugt werden.

Zum Empfang und zum Senden von Signalen über die Luftschnittstelle eines Mobilfunksystems ist eine Antenneneinrichtung ANT vorgesehen. Bei einigen bekannten Mobilfunksystemen, wie dem GSM (Global System for Mobile Communication) werden die Signale zeitlich gepulst in sogenannten bursts empfangen und gesendet.

Bei der Funkstation kann es sich auch um eine Basisstation BS handeln. In diesem Fall wird das Lautsprecherelement und das Mikrophonelement der Bedieneinheit MMI durch eine Verbindung zu einem Mobilfunknetz, beispielsweise über einen Basisstationscontroller BSC bzw. eine Vermittlungseinrichtung MSC ersetzt. Um gleichzeitig Daten mit mehreren Mobilstationen MS auszutauschen, verfügt die Basisstation BS über eine entsprechende Vielzahl von Sende- bzw. Empfangseinrichtung.

In Figur 3 ist eine Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$ , bei der es sich auch um ein von einem Empfangssignal abgeleitete Signalfolge handeln kann, der Länge  $w$  dargestellt. Zur Berechnung einer ersten Korrelationssumme  $S_0$  entsprechend eingangs angegebener Formel werden Elemente eines ersten Abschnitts dieser Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  paarweise mit den entsprechenden Elementen der Signalfolge  $K(i)$  der Länge  $n$  multipliziert, und die Länge der resultierenden Teilergebnisse zur Korrelationssumme  $S_0$  aufaddiert.

Zur Berechnung einer weiteren Korrelationssumme  $S_1$  wird die Signalfolge  $K(i)$  wie in der Figur bildlich dargestellt um ein Element nach rechts verschoben und die Elemente der Signalfolge  $K(i)$  mit den entsprechenden Elementen der Signalfolge  $E(l)$  paarweise multipliziert, und durch eine Summation der entstehenden Teilergebnisse wieder die Korrelationssumme  $S_1$  gebildet.

Die paarweise Multiplikation der Elemente der Signalfolge mit entsprechenden Elementen der Empfangssignalfolge und die anschließende Summation kann auch in Vektorschreibweise als die Bildung eines Skalarproduktes beschrieben werden, sofern man jeweils die Elemente der Signalfolge und die Elemente der Empfangssignalfolge zu einem Vektor eines kartesischen Koordinatensystems zusammenfaßt:

$$S_0 = \begin{pmatrix} K(0) \\ \vdots \\ K(i) \\ \vdots \\ K(n-1) \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E(0) \\ \vdots \\ E(i) \\ \vdots \\ E(n-1) \end{pmatrix} = K(0) * E(0) + \dots + K(i) * E(i) + \dots + K(n-1) * E(n-1)$$

$$S1 = \begin{pmatrix} K(0) \\ \vdots \\ K(i) \\ \vdots \\ K(n-1) \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E(1) \\ \vdots \\ E(i+1) \\ \vdots \\ E(n) \end{pmatrix} = K(0) * E(1) + \dots + K(i) * E(i+1) + \dots + K(n-1) * E(n)$$

In den so ermittelten Korrelationssummen S kann das Maximum gesucht werden, das Maximum der Korrelationssummen S mit einem vorgegebenen Schwellwert verglichen werden, und so ermittelt werden, ob in dem Empfangssignal E(1) die vorgegebene Signalfolge K(i) enthalten ist, und wenn ja, wo im Empfangssignal E(1) sie sich befindet, und so zwei Funkstationen miteinander synchronisiert werden bzw. Daten, denen ein individueller Spreizcode in Form einer Signalfolge K(i) aufmoduliert wurde, detektiert werden.

In Figur 4 ist wieder die Empfangssignalfolge E(1) und als Korrelationsfolge eine Signalfolge K(i), die auf den Signalteilfolgen K1(j), K2(k) basiert, dargestellt.

In Figur 5 ist die Bildung einer Signalfolge K(i) dargestellt, die auf zwei Signalteilfolgen K2(k) der Länge n2 und K1(j) der Länge n1 basiert. Dazu wird die Signalteilfolge K2(k) n1 mal wiederholt, und dabei durch die Signalteilfolge K1(j) moduliert. Die Bildung der Signalfolge K(i) läßt sich mathematisch auch durch folgende Formel ausdrücken:

$$K(i) = K2(i \bmod n2) * K1(i \operatorname{div} n2), \text{ für } i = 0 \dots n1 * n2 - 1$$

Dies entspricht für den Fall n1 = n2 folgender Beziehung:

$$K(i) = K2(i \bmod n1) * K1(i \operatorname{div} n2).$$

Dabei bezeichnet mod den ganzzahligen Rest einer Division und div das ganzzahlige Ergebnis einer Division.

Dies ist bildlich dargestellt durch eine Folge  $f_2$ , die aus den wiederholten, nacheinander abgebildeten Signalteilfolgen  $K_2(k)$  besteht, und eine Folge  $f_1$ , die durch eine gedehnte Signalteilfolge  $K_1(j)$  über der Folge  $f_2$  abgebildet ist.

5

Durch eine Multiplikation der Elemente der Folge  $f_2$  mit den entsprechenden über der Folge  $f_2$  abgebildeten Elementen der Folge  $f_1$  entsteht die neue Signalfolge  $K(i)$  der Länge  $n$ . Diese Erzeugung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$  ist unten im Bild noch einmal anhand eines Beispiels zweier binärer Signalteilfolgen der Länge 4 dargestellt.

Natürlich ist die Erfindung nicht auf Signalteilfolgen der Länge 4 bzw. Signalfolgen der Länge 16 beschränkt. Auch ist die Erfindung nicht auf die oben verwendete mathematische Beschreibung beschränkt.

Beispielsweise entspricht inhaltlich folgende Darstellung für Signalteilfolgen der Länge 16 bzw. Signalfolgen der Länge 256 der oben verwendeten mathematischen Darstellung und ist daher ebenfalls in der Erfindung enthalten:

$a$  ist eine Signalteilfolge der Länge 16  
 $a = \langle x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{16} \rangle;$

25

die Signalfolge  $y$  der Länge 256 wird generiert durch die 16 fache Wiederholung der Signalteilfolge  $a$ , wobei  $a$  durch eine zweite Signalteilfolge der Länge 16 moduliert wird:

$y = \langle a, a, a, \underline{\underline{a}}, \underline{\underline{a}}, a, \underline{\underline{a}}, \underline{\underline{a}}, a, a, a, \underline{\underline{a}}, a, \underline{\underline{a}}, a, a \rangle$ , wobei durch den doppelten Unterstrich die zweite Signalteilfolge und die Modulation durch die zweite Signalteilfolge angezeigt wird.

Die so gebildete Signalfolge der Länge 256 kann beispielsweise zu Synchronisationszwecken als primärer Synchronisationscode  $cp$  der Länge 256 ausgesendet werden.

Derart gebildete Signalfolgen  $K(i)$  können zur vereinfachten Berechnung von Korrelationssummen dieser Signalfolgen  $K(i)$  mit Empfangssignalfolgen  $E(l)$  genutzt werden.

5

Eine schematische Darstellung einer derartigen vereinfachten und somit auch schnelleren und aufwandgünstigeren Berechnung von Korrelationssummen  $S$  ist in den Figuren 6 bis 8 dargestellt, auf die im folgenden eingegangen wird.

10

Zunächst wird eine Teilkorrelationssumme  $TS(z)$  gebildet. Dazu wird beispielsweise für das erste Element der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(0)$  die Korrelationssumme der zweiten Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$  mit dem entsprechenden Abschnitt der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  gebildet.

15

$$TS(0) = \begin{pmatrix} K2(0) \\ \vdots \\ K2(k) \\ \vdots \\ K2(n2-1) \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E(0) \\ \vdots \\ E(k) \\ \vdots \\ E(n2-1) \end{pmatrix} = K2(0) * E(0) + \dots + K2(k) * E(k) + \dots + K2(n2-1) * E(n2-1)$$

Für das zweite Element der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(1)$  wird die zweite Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$  wie bildlich dargestellt um ein Element verschoben und ebenfalls die Korrelationssumme mit dem entsprechenden Element der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  gebildet usw.

20

$$TS(1) = \begin{pmatrix} K2(0) \\ \vdots \\ K2(k) \\ \vdots \\ K2(n2-1) \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E(1) \\ \vdots \\ E(k+1) \\ \vdots \\ E(n2) \end{pmatrix} = K2(0) * E(1) + \dots + K2(k) * E(k+1) + \dots + K2(n2-1) * E(n2)$$

25

Das  $n$ -te Element der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(n1*n2-1)$  wird nach  $n-1$  Verschiebungen der zweiten Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$  gegenüber der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  entsprechend berechnet.

30

$$\begin{aligned}
 TS(n-1) &= \begin{pmatrix} K2(0) \\ \vdots \\ K2(k) \\ \vdots \\ K2(n2-1) \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E(n-1) \\ \vdots \\ E(k+n-1) \\ \vdots \\ E(n2+n-2) \end{pmatrix} = \\
 &= K2(0) * E(n-1) + \dots + K2(k) * E(k+n-1) + \dots + K2(n2-1) * E(n2+n-2)
 \end{aligned}$$

Die so entstehende Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  ist im  
 5 oberen Bereich der Figur 7 dargestellt. Aus dieser Teilkorre-  
 lationssummenfolge wird nun jedes  $n2$ -te-Element ausgewählt  
 und mit dem entsprechenden Element der ersten Signalteilfolge  
 $K1(j)$  paarweise multipliziert.

- 10 Faßt man die ausgewählten Elemente der Teilkorrelationssum-  
 menfolge  $TS(z)$  und die erste Signalteilfolge  $K1(j)$  jeweils zu  
 Vektoren zusammen, so wird die erste Korrelationssumme  $S0$   
 durch das Skalarprodukt dieser beiden Vektoren erzeugt.

$$S0 = \begin{pmatrix} K1(0) \\ \vdots \\ K1(j) \\ \vdots \\ K1(n1-1) \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} TS(0) \\ \vdots \\ TS(j * n2 - 1) \\ \vdots \\ TS((n1-1) * n2 - 1) \end{pmatrix} = K1(0) * TS(0) + \dots + K1(j) * TS(j * n2 - 1) + \dots$$

15

Figur 7 zeigt im unteren Bereich die entsprechende Berechnung  
 weiterer Korrelationssummen  $S1$  bzw.  $S2$  durch die Auswahl  $n2$ -  
 ter um 1 bzw. 2 rechts von den als erstes ausgewählten Ele-  
 20 menten liegenden Elemente:

$$S1 = \begin{pmatrix} K1(0) \\ \vdots \\ K1(j) \\ \vdots \\ K1(n1-1) \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} TS(1) \\ \vdots \\ TS(j * n2) \\ \vdots \\ TS((n1-1) * n2) \end{pmatrix} = K1(0) * TS(0) + \dots + K1(j) * TS(j * n2) + \dots$$

Durch die Speicherung einmal berechneter Teilkorrelationssummen TS kann auf diese bei der späteren Berechnung von weiteren Korrelationssummen zurückgegriffen werden, und somit auf die entsprechenden Rechenschritte verzichtet werden.

5

Je nach Ausführungsvariante kann entweder zunächst die komplette Teilkorrelationssummenfolge TS(z) über die ganze Empfangssignalfolge E(l) berechnet werden und dann die einzelnen Korrelationssummen oder erst bei Bedarf zur Berechnung einer neuen Korrelationssumme die entsprechenden zusätzlich benötigten Teilkorrelationssummen berechnet werden.

10

Figur 8 zeigt nochmals das aus zwei Schritten bestehende Verfahren zur Berechnung von Korrelationssummen S, diesmal anhand des in Figur 5 dargestellten Beispiels zweier binärer Signalteilfolgen der Länge 4.

15

In einem ersten Schritt werden die Teilkorrelationssummen TS(z) der zweiten Signalteilfolge K2(k) ++--+ mit entsprechenden Abschnitten der Empfangssignalfolge E(l) berechnet, und dann in einem zweiten Schritt jedes vierte Element der so erzeugten Teilkorrelationssummenfolge TS(z) ausgewählt, mit dem entsprechenden Element der ersten Signalteilfolge K1(j) +---+ multipliziert und zur Korrelationsfolge S0 aufsummiert.

20

25

Die dick gezeichneten Linien stellen dabei die neu durchzuführenden Berechnungsschritte dar für die Berechnung einer weiteren Korrelationssumme S1, für den Fall, daß die übrigen Teilkorrelationssummen TS schon zuvor berechnet und abgespeichert wurden.

30

Diese Ausführungsvariante kann möglichst speichereffizient durchgeführt werden, wenn zunächst jede n2-te Teilkorrelationssumme berechnet wird. Dazu werden die Abtastwerte zwischengespeichert.

35



Die Figuren 9 bis 10 stellen eine andere Ausführungsvariante zur vereinfachten Berechnung von Korrelationssummen  $S$  anhand des schon oben erwähnten Beispiels zweier binärer Signalteilstfolgen der Länge 4 vor.

5

Dabei wird zunächst jedes 4. Element der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  ausgewählt und die Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  der so ausgewählten Elemente mit der Signalteilstfolge  $K1(j)$  gebildet. Aus der so entstehenden Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  werden jeweils 4 aufeinander folgende Elemente ausgewählt, paarweise mit entsprechenden Elementen der Signalteilstfolge  $K2(k)$  multipliziert und die resultierenden Teilergebnisse zur Korrelationssumme  $S$  aufsummiert. Dabei stellen wieder die dick gezeichneten Linien die zusätzlich nötigen Schritte zur Berechnung einer weiteren Korrelationssumme  $S1$  dar, für den Fall, daß die anderen Teilkorrelationssummen  $TS$  zuvor schon berechnet und abgespeichert wurden.

Figur 10 zeigt nochmals die Berechnung einer ersten Korrelationssumme  $S0$  bei der zunächst jedes 4. Element der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  ausgewählt wird, diese Elemente mit entsprechenden Elementen der ersten Signalteilstfolge  $K1(j)$   $+-++$  multipliziert werden und durch Summation der Teilergebnisse die Teilkorrelationssumme  $TS(0)$  berechnet wird. In einem zweiten Schritt werden die ersten vier aufeinander folgenden Elemente der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  mit den entsprechenden Elementen der zweiten Signalteilstfolge  $K2(k)$   $++-+$  multipliziert und die entstehenden Teilergebnisse zur Korrelationssumme  $S0$  aufsummiert.

30

Bei dieser Ausführungsvariante wird weniger Speicher zum Zwischenspeichern der Teilkorrelationssummen benötigt, wenn die Summen sukzessive berechnet werden.

35 Bei einer bevorzugten Ausführungsvariante der Erfindung werden als Signalteilstfolgen Barker-Folgen verwendet, da diese, bezogen auf die Länge, die bestmöglichen Autokorrelationsei-

genschaften bieten. Für die o.g. Verfahren eignet sich insbesondere die Verwendung einer Signalfolge der Länge 169, die durch zwei Barker-Signalteilfolgen der Länge 13 gebildet werden. Eine solche Folge kann insbesondere in einem UMTS-Mobilfunksystem vorteilhaft eingesetzt werden.

Je nach Ausführungsvariante können die Elemente der Signalteilfolgen Werte auf dem Einheitskreis, beliebige reelle Werte oder beliebige komplexe Werte annehmen.

Ferner sieht eine weitere Ausgestaltung der Erfindung vor, zwei Signalteilfolgen gleicher Länge zu verwenden. Es ist auch möglich für die beiden Signalteilfolgen die gleiche Folge zu verwenden. Auch kann es vorteilhaft sein, als zweite Signalteilfolge die gespiegelte erste Signalteilfolge zu verwenden:  $K1(j) = K2(n1-j)$ .

Es ist auch möglich eine verkürzte Signalfolge mit weniger als  $n1 * n2$  Werten zu verwenden. Zur Berechnung der Korrelationssummen wird in diesem Fall das letzte Element der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge (zur Berechnung einer neuen Korrelationssumme) zunächst verkürzt berechnet und dann (um die für die folgenden Korrelationssummen benötigte Teilkorrelationssummenfolge zu berechnen) komplett berechnet. Dies erlaubt die Generierung von Signalfolgen beliebiger Länge.

In oben eingeführter Nomenklatur wird also eine verkürzte Signalfolge  $Ks(i)$  verwendet, deren Länge  $ns$  kleiner ist als  $n1*n2$ . Es sei  $ns = n1*n2 - \delta$ .  $n1$  läßt sich so wählen, daß gilt  $\delta < n2$ .

Die Berechnung wird analog zum bereits geschilderten Verfahren durchgeführt, nur daß zusätzlich verkürzte Teilkorrelationsfolgen TSs berechnet werden, deren Länge ebenfalls um  $\delta$  kürzer als  $n2$  ist.

$$\begin{aligned}
 TSs(n-1) &= \begin{pmatrix} K2(0) \\ \vdots \\ K2(k) \\ \vdots \\ K2(n2-1-\delta) \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E(n-1) \\ \vdots \\ E(k+n-1) \\ \vdots \\ E(n2+n-2-\delta) \end{pmatrix} = \\
 &= K2(0) * E(n-1) + \dots + K2(k) * E(k+n-1) + \dots + K2(n2-1-\delta) * E(n2+n-2-\delta)
 \end{aligned}$$

Die (verkürzte) erste Korrelationssumme S0 kann dann berechnet werden, wobei im Gegensatz zum oben beschriebenen Verfahren für den letzten Term die verkürzte Teilkorrelationssumme verwendet wird.

$$S0 = K1(0) * TS(0) + \dots + K1(j) * TS(j * n2 - 1) + \dots + K1(n1 - 1) * TSs((n1 - 1) * n2 - 1)$$

Vorteilhafterweise wird die später benötigte nicht verkürzte Teilkorrelationssumme TS(i) unter Verwendung der gespeicherten Teilkorrelationsfolge TSs(i) berechnet.

Es ist auch möglich eine verlängerte Signalfolge, also mit mehr als  $n1 * n2$  Werten zu verwenden. Zur Berechnung der Korrelationssummen wird in diesem Fall der erste Teil ( $n1 * n2$  Terme) nach obigem Verfahren berechnet, und außerdem zusätzliche Terme hinzugenommen. Die Korrelationsfolge Kl(i) enthält dazu eine erfindungsgemäße Korrelationsfolge K(i), die jedoch um zusätzliche Elemente verlängert ist. Auch dieses Verfahren erlaubt die Generierung von Folgen beliebiger Länge.

In oben eingeführter Nomenklatur wird also eine verlängerte Korrelationsfolge Kl(i) verwendet, deren Länge  $n1$  größer ist als  $n1 * n2$ . Es gilt  $Kl(i) = K(i)$  für  $0 \leq i \leq n1 * n2 - 1$ .

Die Berechnung wird analog zum bereits geschilderten Verfahren durchgeführt, nur daß außerdem die zusätzlichen Terme nach einem beliebigen Verfahren, entweder konventionell oder ebenfalls erfindungsgemäß, berechnet werden.

20

$$S0 = K1(0) * TS(0) + \dots + K1(j) * TS(j * n2 - 1) + \dots + K1(n1 - 1) * TS((n1 - 1) * n2 - 1) + \\ + K1(n1) * E((n1 - 1) * n2) + \dots + K1(n1) * E(n1)$$

In einer weiteren Variante des zuletzt aufgeführten Ausführungsbeispiels werden zusätzliche Werte am Anfang und/oder  
 5 zwischen den (modulierten) Wiederholungen der Signalteilstfolge K2 eingefügt. Die nicht eingefügten Elemente werden dann gemäß einem oben stehenden Verfahren weiterverarbeitet, die eingefügten Elemente entweder konventionell oder ebenfalls nach einem erfindungsgemäßen Verfahren.

10

Eine andere Weiterbildung der Erfindung sieht vor mehr als zwei Signalteilstfolgen zu verwenden, wobei eine Signalteilstfolge selbst aus Signalteilstfolgen besteht.

15 Eine weitere Ausgestaltung der Erfindung macht von der durch das regelmäßige Konstruktionsprinzip der Signalfolge K(i) bedingten regelmäßigen (fast periodischen) Struktur der aperiodischen Autokorrelationsfunktion dieser Signalfolge Gebrauch. Dies bedeutet, daß sich bei der Suche eines Signals  
 20 nicht nur ein Haupt-Maximum ergibt, sondern in regelmäßigen Abständen auch Nebenmaxima auftreten. Zur beschleunigten Suche nach der Signalfolge in der Empfangssignalfolge kann man die Regelmäßigkeit der Lage der Maxima ausnutzen. Sobald ein Nebenmaxima gefunden wurde, kann man aufgrund der Periodizität die Lage der anderen Maxima vorhersagen, d.h. man berechnet die Korrelationssumme lediglich an diesen Stellen. Auf  
 25 diese Weise kann man schnell das Hauptmaximum detektieren. Allerdings kann es sich bei dem vermeintlichen Nebenmaximum auch nur um einen zufällig (wegen des Rauschanteils) erhöhten Wert handeln. In diesem Fall wird man an den potentiellen Stellen des erwarteten Hauptmaximums tatsächlich kein Maximum finden. Daher wird in diesem Fall die Hypothese verworfen und die Berechnung konventionell fortgesetzt.

30

35 Man kann die durch das Konstruktionsprinzip der Signalfolgen bedingte Regelmäßigkeit der Nebenmaxima aber auch zur Elimi-

nierung und Korrektur störender Nebenmaxima im Korrelationsergebnis ausnutzen. Nach der Detektion des Maximums kann man aus dem Maximum die Nebenmaxima berechnen und diesen Wert von den entsprechenden Korrelationsergebnissen subtrahieren.

5 Auf diese Weise erhält man das Korrelationsergebnis einer (hypothetischen) Folge mit perfekter Autokorrelationsfunktion. Dadurch ergibt sich durch die Regelmäßigkeit der Nebenmaxima eine stark vereinfachte Berechnung.

- 10 Die Erfindung ist nicht auf Funkübertragungssysteme beschränkt, sondern kann auch bei Verwendung anderer Übertragungsverfahren z.B. akustischer Verfahren (Ultraschall), insbesondere zu Zwecken der Sonographie, oder optischer Verfahren, beispielsweise die Infrarotmessung nach Lidar-Prinzipien
- 15 eingesetzt werden. Ein weiteres Anwendungsgebiet ist die Untersuchung von Änderungen der spektralen Zusammensetzung von rückgestreuten Signalen.

- Die Bildung von Signalfolgen, ihre Übertragung, sowie die Berechnung von Korrelationssummen dieser Signalfolgen mit empfangenen Signalfolgen kann in unterschiedlichen technischen Gebieten Anwendung finden:
- 20

- 25 - zum Zwecke der Synchronisation zweier Übertragungseinheiten, wie beispielsweise Funkstationen, insbesondere die Verwendung dieser Folgen im Synchronisationskanal in CDMA-Mobilfunksystemen, wie das sich in der Standardisierung befindliche UMTS-System,
- 30 - bei der Datenübertragung mittels durch die Signalfolge gespreizte Sendesymbole bzw. Daten in Bandspreiz (spread spectrum)-Systemen, insbesondere zur Ermittlung von Sendesymbolen bzw. Daten, denen eine derartige Signalform aufmoduliert wurde,
- 35 - in der Meßtechnik zur Entfernungs- und Objektvermessung,

- 5     - zur Bestimmung von Übertragungseigenschaften des zwischen Übertragungseinheiten, wie Sendeeinheit und Empfangseinheit liegenden Übertragungskanals, in der Radarmeßtechnik, um die Lage eines Objektes und /oder weitere von der Geometrie und den spezifischen Reflexionseigenschaften des Objektes abhängige Parameter zu bestimmen,
  
- 10    - zur Bestimmung von Übertragungseigenschaften des zwischen Sender und Empfänger befindlichen Übertragungskanals, in der Radarmeßtechnik zur Bestimmung von Parametern eines rückstreuenden Mediums, insbesondere der Ionosphäre, insbesondere durch inkohärente Streuung,
  
- 15    - zur Bestimmung von Übertragungseigenschaften des zwischen Übertragungseinheiten, wie Sendeeinheit und Empfangseinheit liegenden Übertragungskanals, insbesondere zur Bestimmung von Mehrwegeausbreitungen in der Meßtechnik oder Kommunikationstechnik. Dabei werden mittels des Korrelationsergebnisses während der Kommunikation die sich zeitlich ändernden Ausbreitungseigenschaften des Übertragungskanals (Kanalimpulsantwort) ermittelt. Insbesondere werden zusätzliche Pfade der Mehrwegeausbreitung ermittelt. Dazu können die Signalfolgen  $K(i)$  auch in Form einer Mittambel innerhalb eines Funkblockes übertragen werden. Diese Kenntnis kann dann in einer  
20  
25    ansonsten konventionellen Empfangseinheit weiterverwendet werden.

## Patentansprüche

1. Verfahren zur Bildung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$  der Länge  $n$ , bei dem
  - 5 - die Signalfolge  $K(i)$  auf einer ersten Signalteilfolge  $K1(j)$  der Länge  $n1$  und einer zweiten Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$  der Länge  $n2$  basiert, wobei
    - sich die zweite Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$   $n1$  mal wiederholt und dabei mit der ersten Signalteilfolge  $K1(j)$  moduliert
  - 10 wird.
2. Verfahren nach Anspruch 1, bei dem die Bildung der Signalfolge  $K(i)$  durch Modulation der zweiten Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$  nach folgender Vorschrift erfolgt:
  - 15  $K(i) = K2(i \bmod n2) * K1(i \text{ div } n2)$ .
3. Verfahren nach Anspruch 1 oder 2, bei dem die Bildung und/oder Übertragung der Signalfolge  $K(i)$ 
  - zur Synchronisation mindestens zweier Übertragungseinheiten
  - 20 (MS,BS), oder
  - zur Aufmodulation auf Daten gemäß einer Bandspreiztechnik, oder
  - zur Ermittlung von Objektausmaßen oder Objekteigenschaften, oder
  - 25 - zur Bestimmung von Übertragungseigenschaften des zwischen Übertragungseinheiten liegenden Übertragungskanals, oder
  - zur Bestimmung der Lage eines Objektes und /oder weiterer von der Geometrie und/oder den spezifischen Reflexionseigenschaften des Objektes abhängiger Parameter, oder
  - 30 - zur Bestimmung von Parametern eines rückstreuenden Mediums erfolgt.
4. Verfahren zur Ermittlung einer in einer Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  enthaltenen vorgegebenen Signalfolge  $K(i)$ , die gemäß einem Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 erhältlich ist, durch die Bestimmung der Korrelationssummen  $S$  der

Signalfolge  $K(i)$  mit entsprechenden Abschnitten der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$ , bei dem

- eine Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  der Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$  mit entsprechenden Teilen der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  berechnet wird, und
- zur Berechnung einer Korrelationssumme  $S$   $n1$  Elemente der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  ausgewählt werden und im Sinne eines Skalarproduktes mit der Signalteilfolge  $K1(j)$  multipliziert werden.

10

5. Verfahren nach Anspruch 4, bei dem zur Berechnung einer Korrelationssumme  $S$   $n1$  jeweils  $n2$ -te Elemente der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  ausgewählt werden.

15

6. Verfahren zur Ermittlung einer in einer Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  enthaltenen vorgegebenen Signalfolge  $K(i)$ , die gemäß einem Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 erhältlich ist, durch die Bestimmung der Korrelationssummen  $S$  der Signalfolge  $K(i)$  mit entsprechenden Abschnitten der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$ , bei dem

- eine Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  der Signalteilfolge  $K1(j)$  mit ausgewählten Elementen der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  berechnet wird, und
- zur Berechnung einer Korrelationssumme  $S$   $n2$  Elemente der Teilkorrelationssummenfolge  $TS(z)$  im Sinne eines Skalarproduktes mit der Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$  multipliziert werden.

7. Verfahren nach Anspruch 6, bei dem zur Berechnung einer Teilkorrelationssumme  $TS$   $n1$  jeweils  $n2$ -te Elemente der Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$  ausgewählt werden.

8. Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 4 bis 7, bei dem berechnete Teilkorrelationssummen  $TS$  abgespeichert werden und zur Berechnung einer weiteren Korrelationssumme  $S$  verwendet werden.



9. Verfahren zur Übertragung von Daten, bei dem eine Signalfolge  $K(i)$  nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 in einer sendenden Einheit (BS) gebildet wird und diese Signalfolge  $K(i)$  nach einem der Ansprüche 4 bis 8 in einer empfangenden Einheit (MS) ermittelt wird.

10. Verfahren zur Synchronisation einer Basisstation (BS) mit einer Mobilstation (MS), bei dem

- die Basisstation eine Signalfolge  $K(i)$ , die durch ein Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 erhältlich ist, aussendet.

11. Verfahren nach Anspruch 10, bei dem

- die Signalfolge  $K(i)$  durch eine Mobilstation nach einem der Ansprüche 4 bis 8 ermittelbar ist.

12. Verfahren zur Synchronisation einer Basisstation (BS) mit einer Mobilstation (MS), bei dem

- die Basisstation eine Synchronisationsfolge  $K(i)$  der Länge 256 aussendet, die dadurch bildbar ist, daß
- eine zweite Signalteilfolge  $K2(k)$  der Länge 16 16 mal wiederholt wird und dabei durch eine erste Signalteilfolge  $K1(j)$  der Länge 16 moduliert wird, und
- eine Mobilstation diese Synchronisationsfolge ermittelt.

13. Sendeeinheit (BS) mit

- Multiplikationsmitteln (DSP) zur Bildung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$  nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3, und

Mitteln zur Aussendung dieser Signalfolge  $K(i)$  zum Zwecke der Synchronisation mit einer Empfangseinheit (MS).

14. Sendeeinheit (BS) nach Anspruch 13, mit

- Additionsmitteln (DSP) zur Bildung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$  nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3.

15. Sendeeinheit (BS) mit

Mitteln (SPE) zur Speicherung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$ , die durch ein Verfahren nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 erhältlich ist, und

5 Mitteln zur Aussendung dieser Signalfolge  $K(i)$  zum Zwecke der Synchronisation mit einer Empfangseinheit (MS).

16. Sendeeinheit (BS) mit

Mitteln (SPE) zur Speicherung eines Signalteilstfolgenpaares ( $K1(j)$ ,  $K2(k)$ ),

10 Mitteln zur Bildung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$  nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3, und

Mitteln zur Aussendung dieser Signalfolge  $K(i)$  zum Zwecke der Synchronisation mit einer Empfangseinheit (MS).

15 17. Empfangseinheit (MS) mit

- Additionsmitteln (DSP) zur Ermittlung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$ , die nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 erhältlich ist, und

20 - Speichermitteln (SPE) zur Speicherung von Zwischenergebnissen (TS).

18. Empfangseinheit (MS) nach Anspruch 17, wobei zur Ermittlung einer Signalfolge Korrelationen mit der Signalfolge gebildet werden.

25

19. Empfangseinheit (MS) nach einem der Ansprüche 17 bis 18, mit

30 - Multiplikationsmitteln (DSP) zur Ermittlung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$ , die nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 erhältlich ist.

20. Empfangseinheit (MS) mit

35 - Mitteln (SPE) zur Speicherung eines Signalteilstfolgenpaares ( $K1(j)$ ;  $K2(k)$ ), aus dem nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 eine Signalfolge  $K(i)$  erhältlich ist,

- Mitteln zum Empfang einer Empfangssignalfolge  $E(l)$ , und

- Mitteln zur Ermittlung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$  nach einem der Ansprüche 4 bis 8.

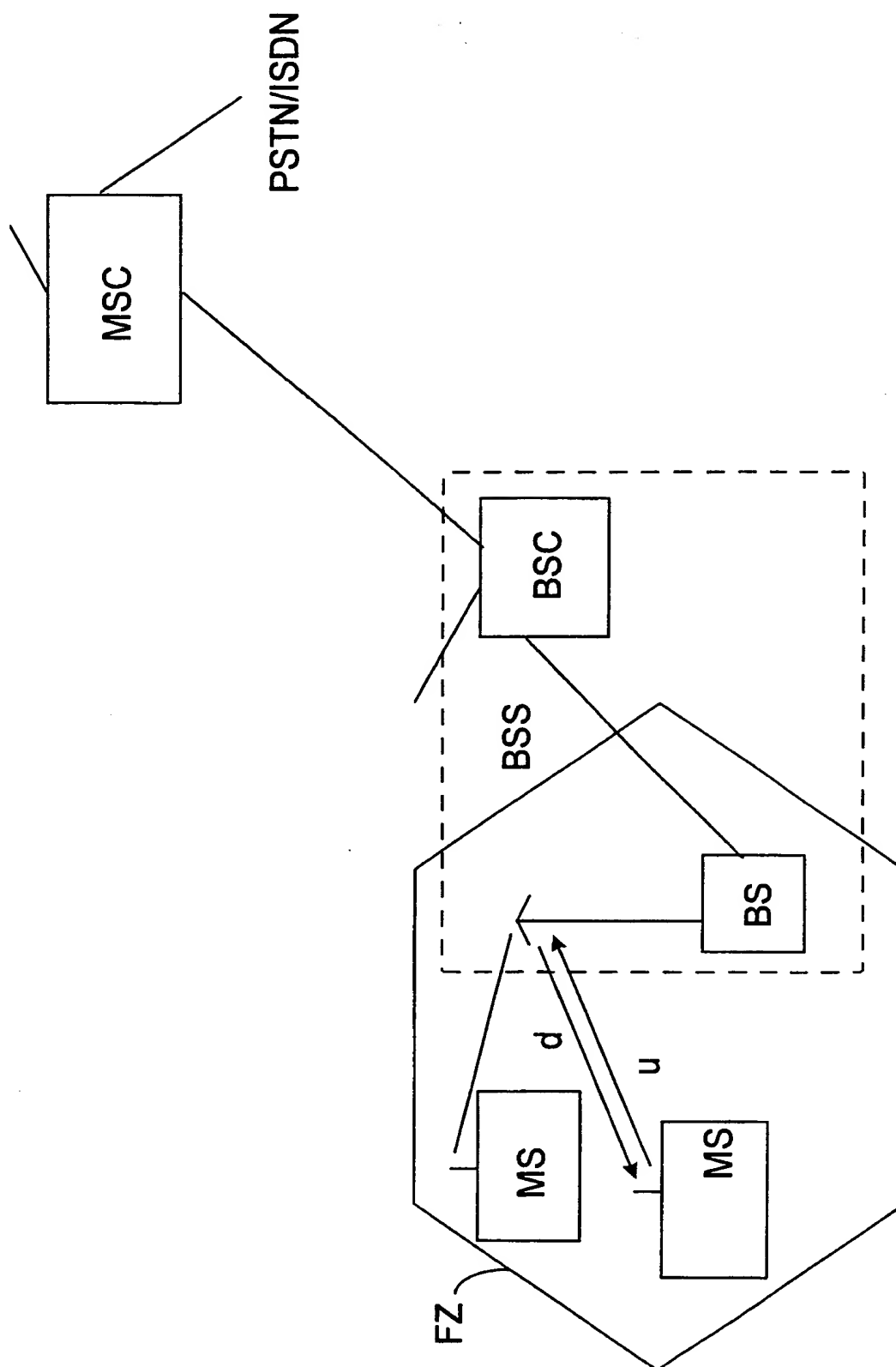
21. Empfangseinheit (MS) mit

- 5 Mitteln (SPE) zur Speicherung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$ , die nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 erhältlich ist, und Mitteln zur Ermittlung einer Signalfolge  $K(i)$ , die nach einem der Ansprüche 1 bis 3 erhältlich ist.

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

FIG 1

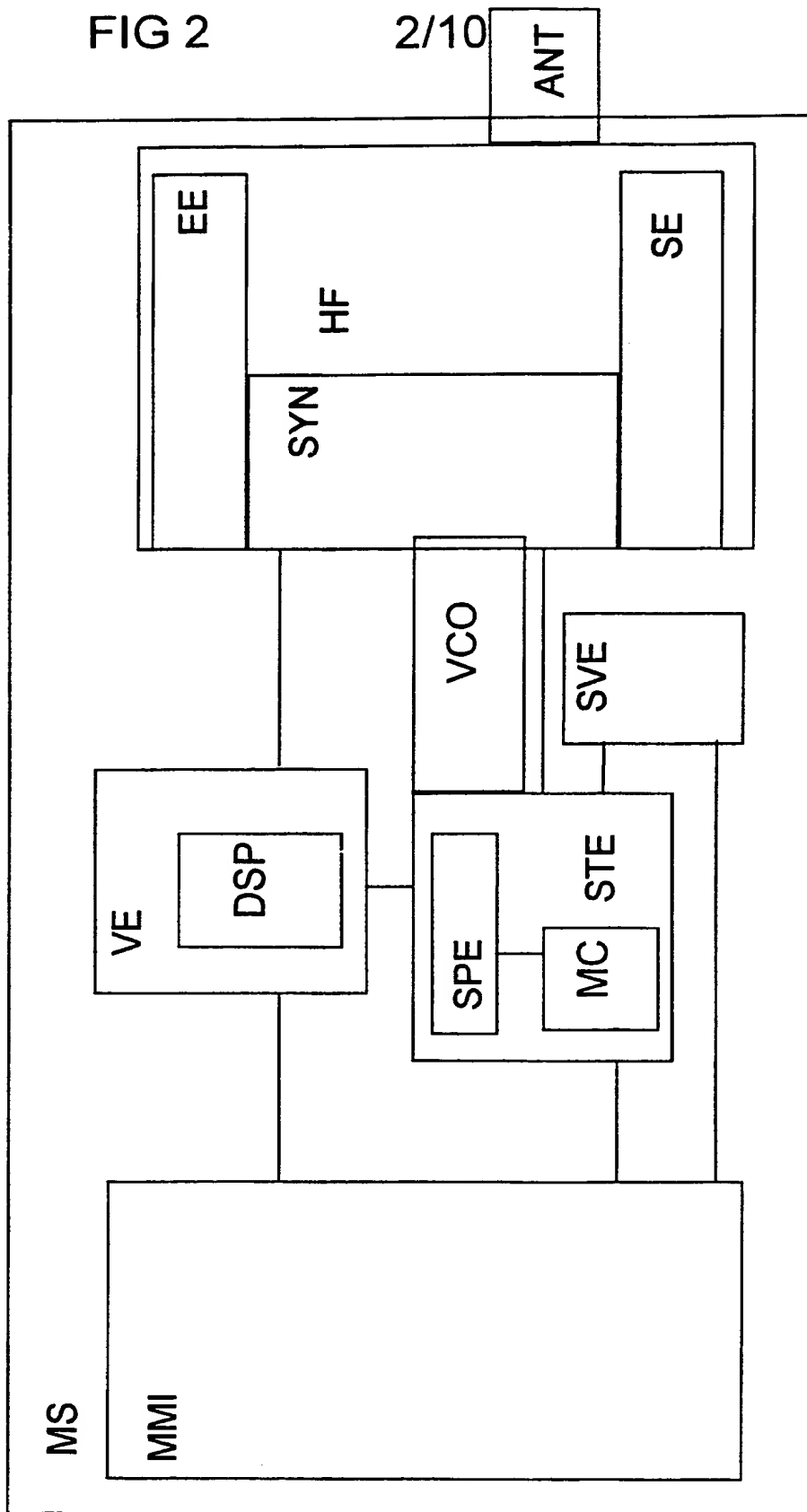
1/10



**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

FIG 2

2/10

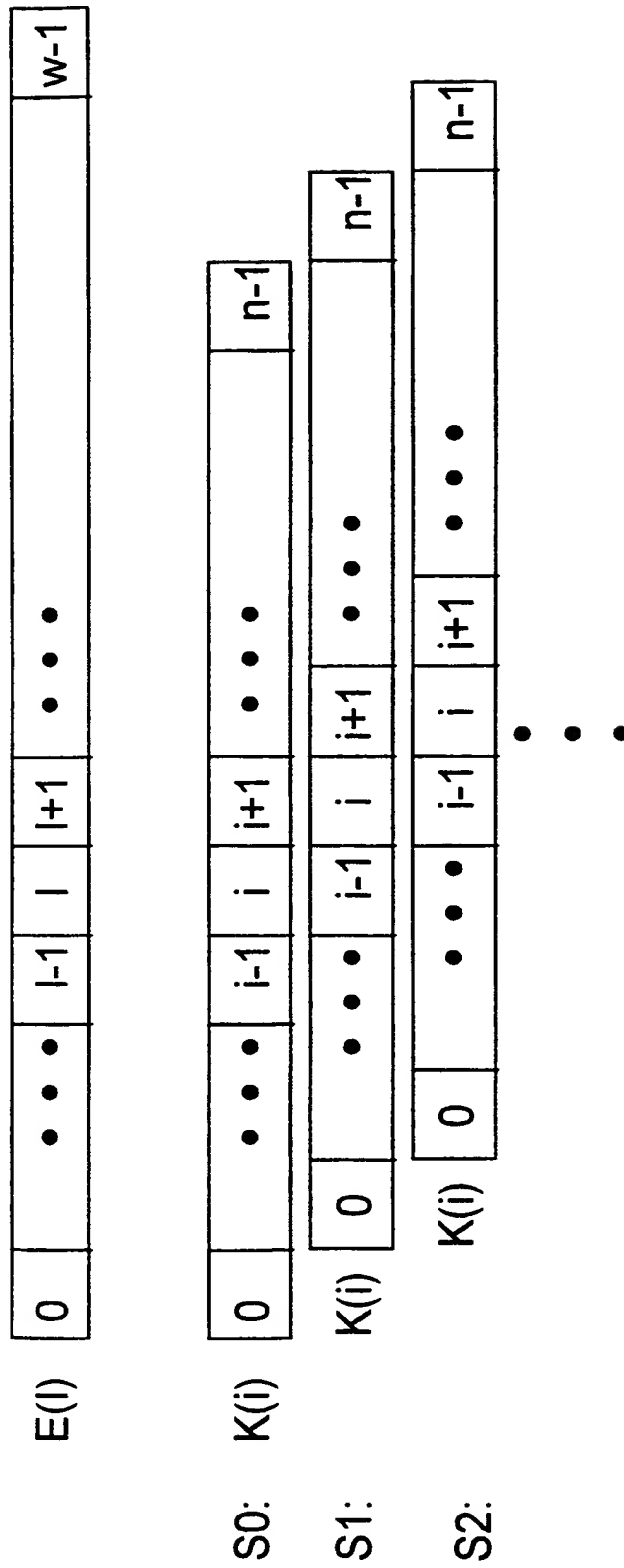


THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)



FIG 3

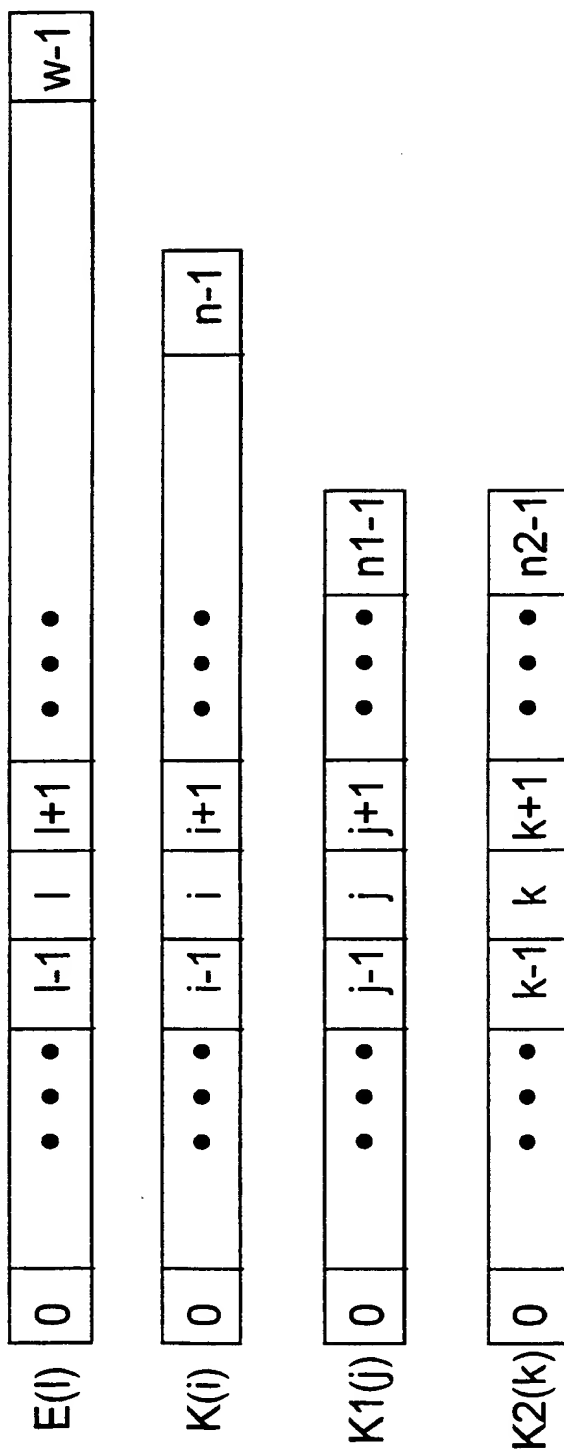
3/10



THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

FIG 4

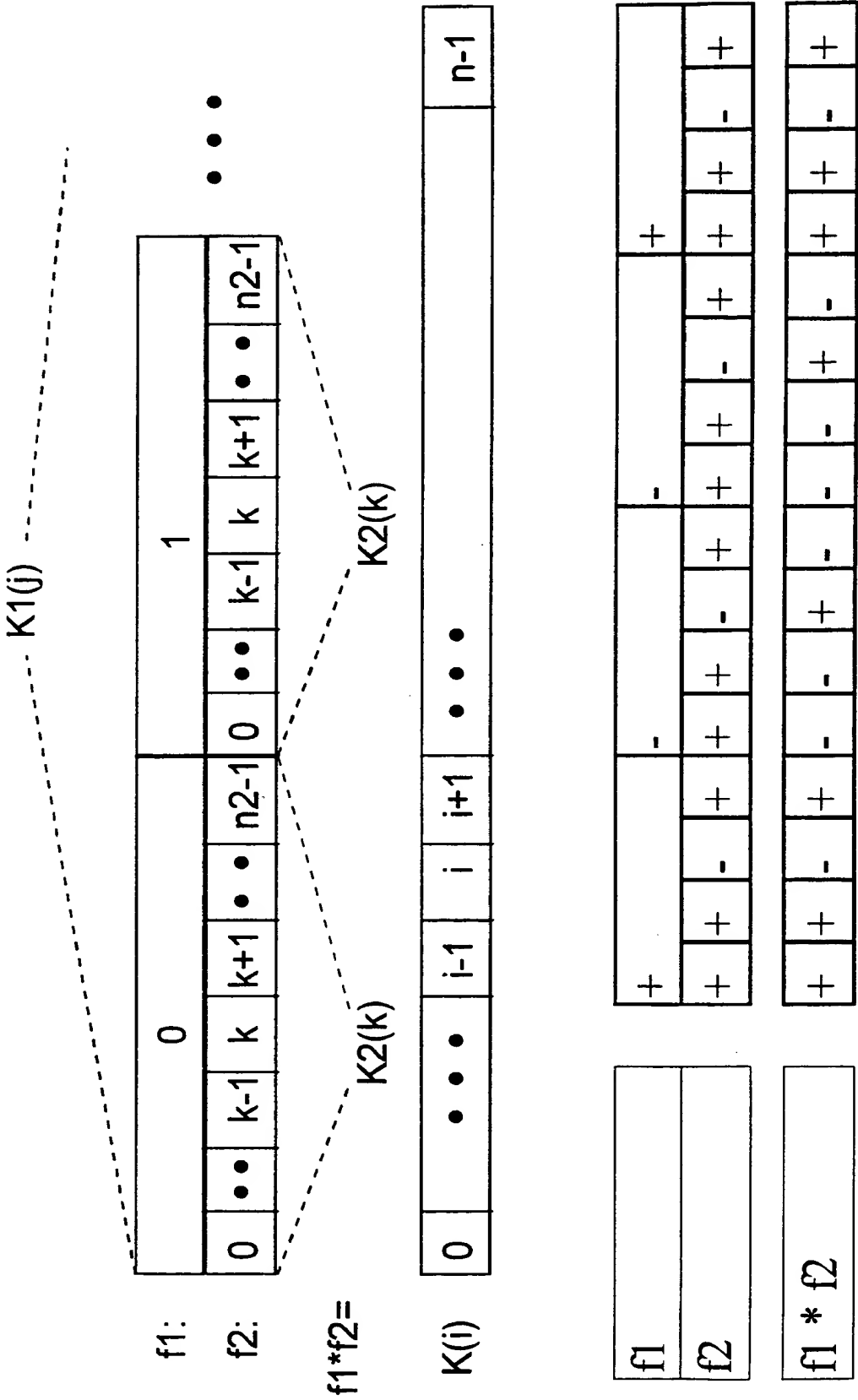
4/10



**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

FIG 5

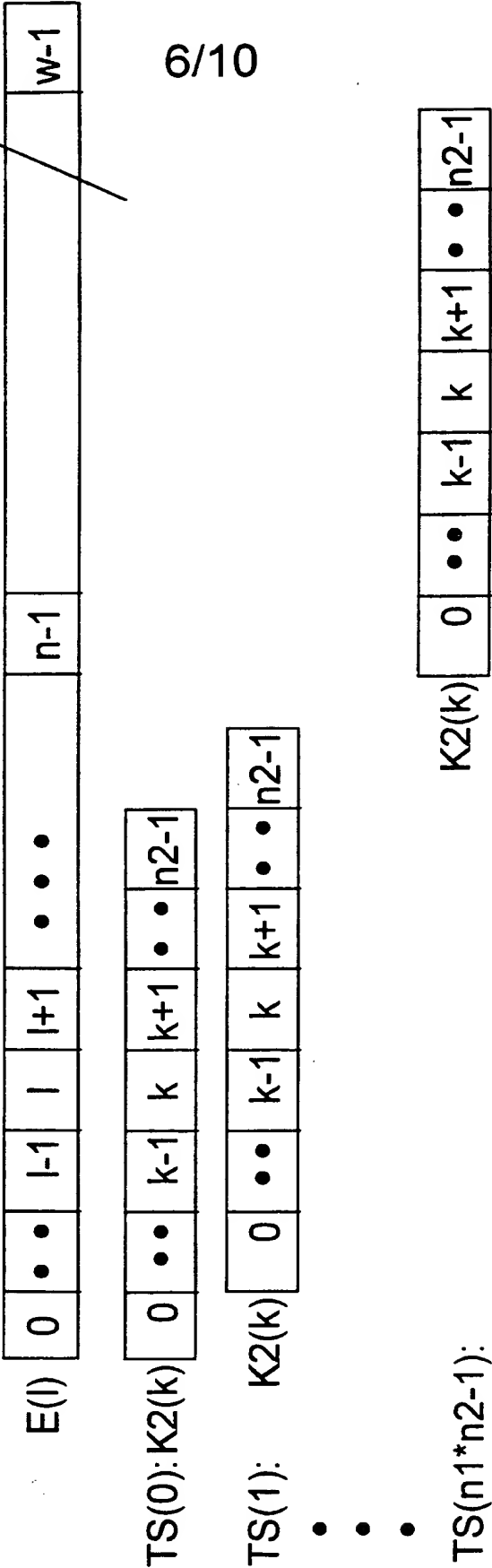
5/10



THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

FIG 6

6/10

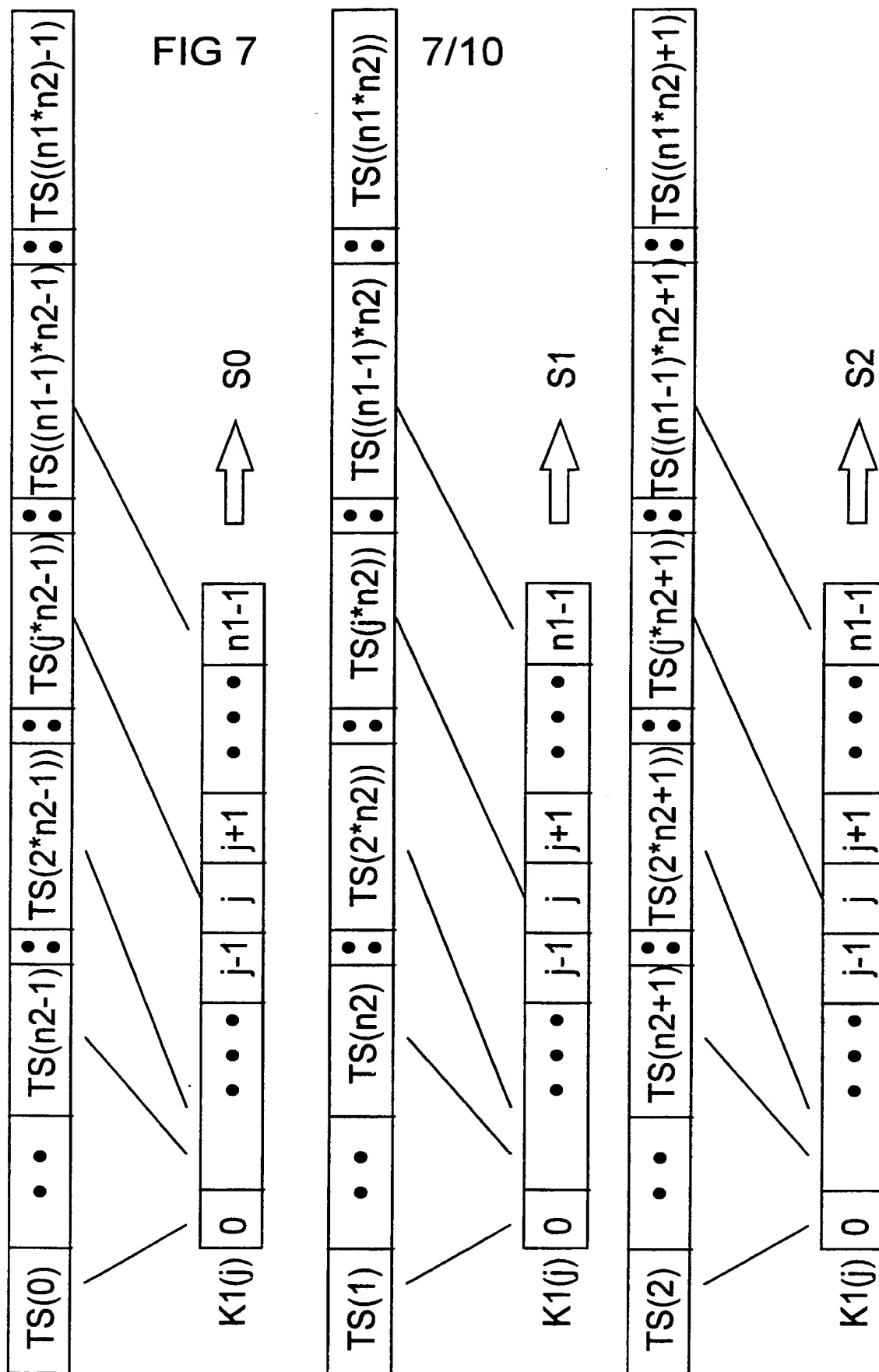


**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**



FIG 7

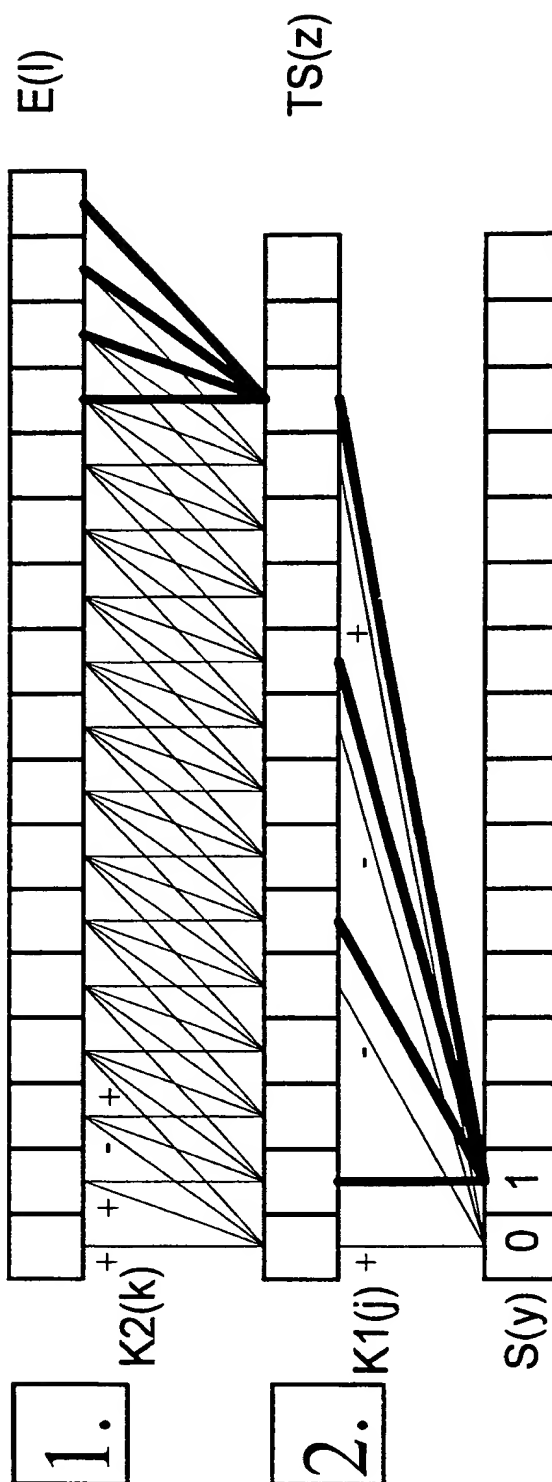
7/10



**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

FIG 8

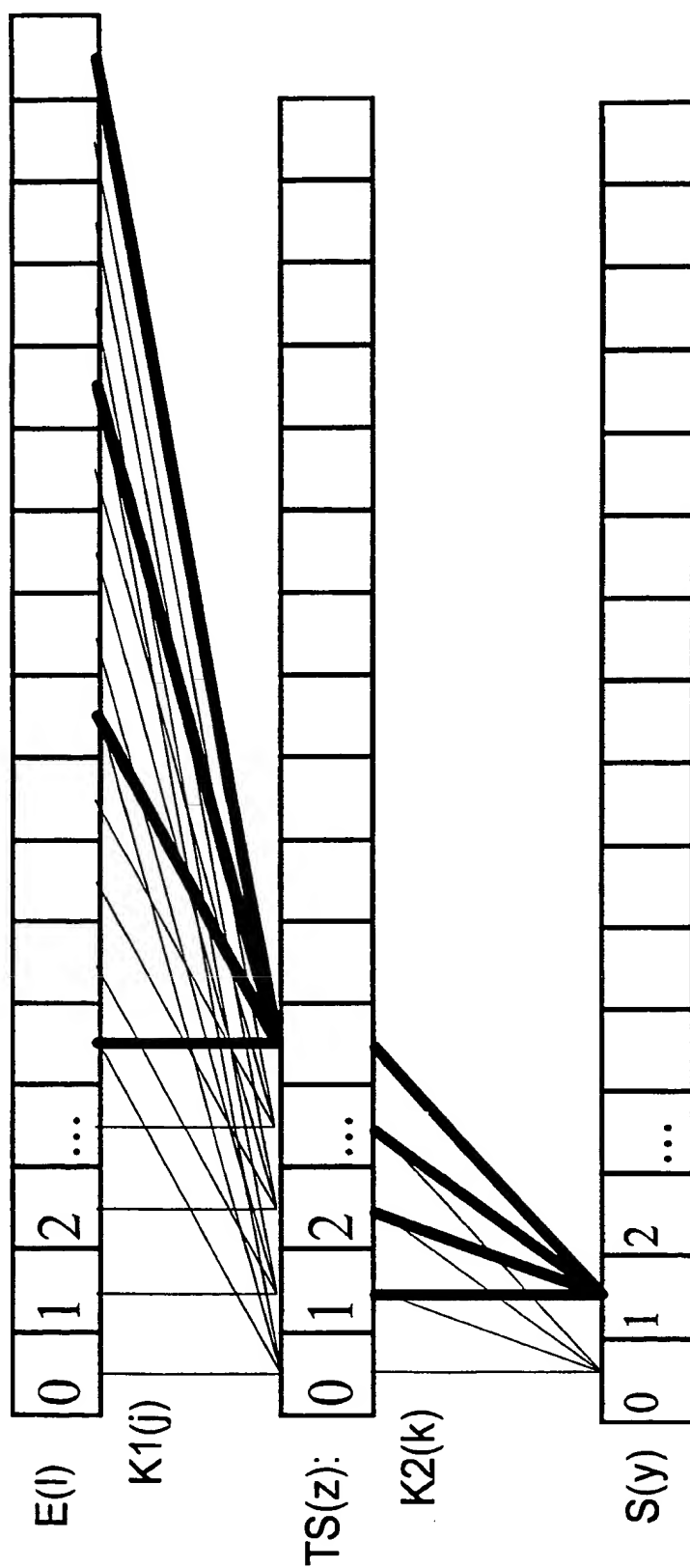
8/10



**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

FIG 9

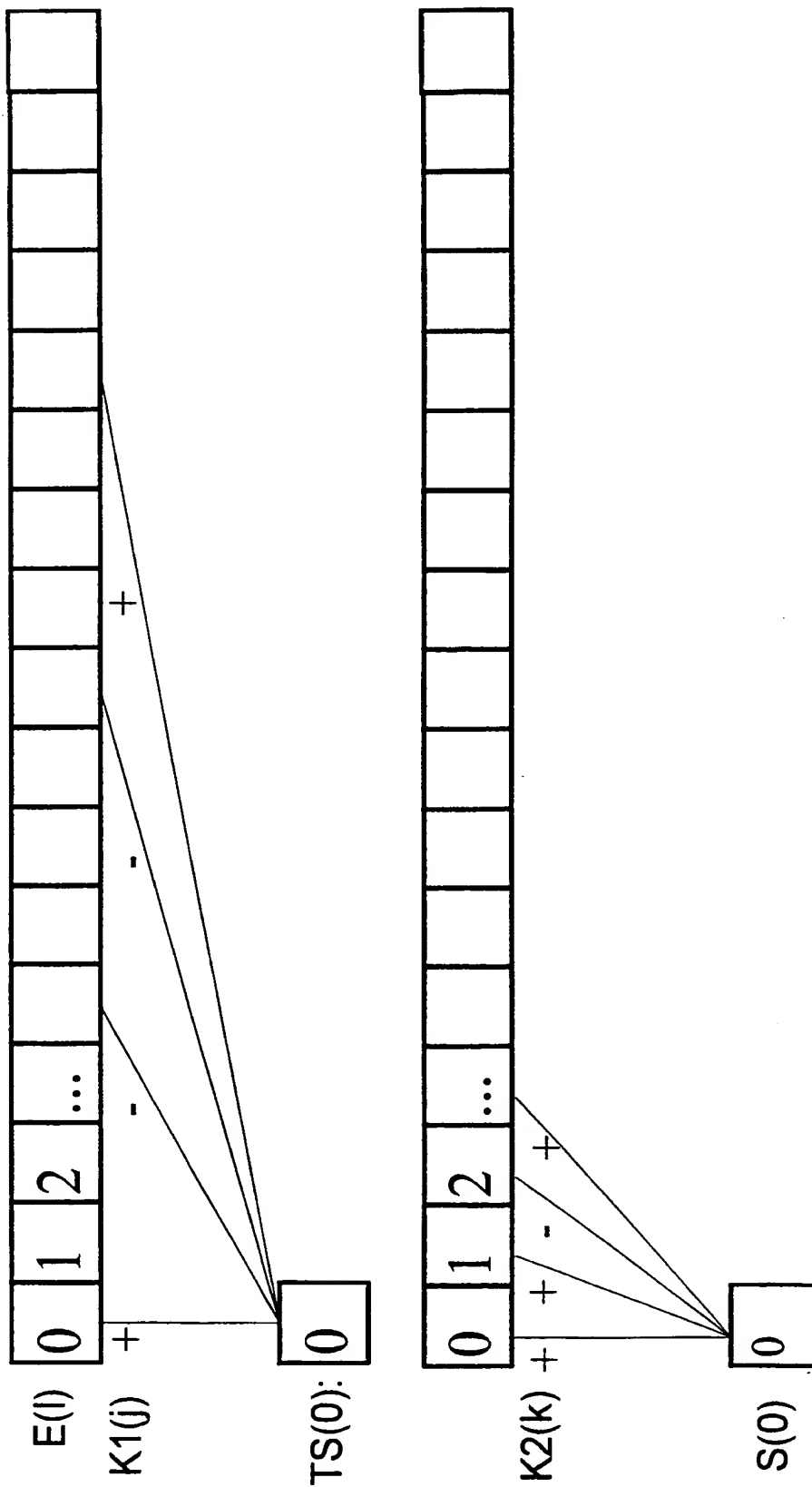
9/10



THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

FIG 10

10/10



THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)



PCT

WELTORGANISATION FÜR GEISTIGES EIGENTUM  
Internationales Büro

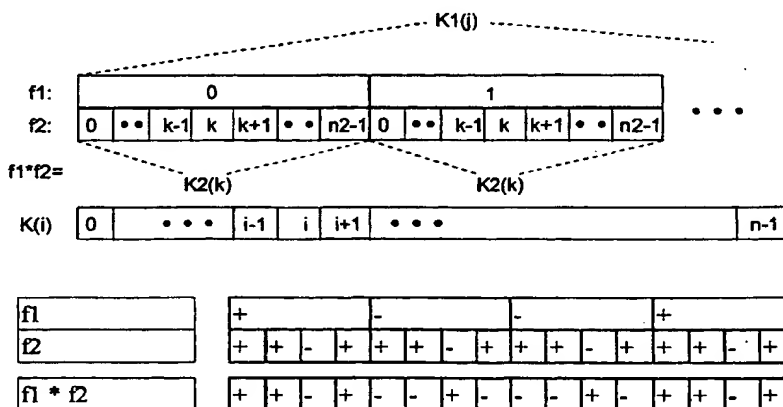


INTERNATIONALE ANMELDUNG VERÖFFENTLICHT NACH DEM VERTRAG ÜBER DIE  
INTERNATIONALE ZUSAMMENARBEIT AUF DEM GEBIET DES PATENTWESENS (PCT)

(51) Internationale Patentklassifikation <sup>7</sup> : <b>H04J 13/00, H04B 7/26, 1/707</b>		A3	(11) Internationale Veröffentlichungsnummer: <b>WO 00/14915</b>
		(43) Internationales Veröffentlichungsdatum:	16. März 2000 (16.03.00)
(21) Internationales Aktenzeichen: PCT/DE99/02779 (22) Internationales Anmeldedatum: 2. September 1999 (02.09.99) (30) Prioritätsdaten: 198 40 974.5      8. September 1998 (08.09.98)      DE 199 07 083.0      19. Februar 1999 (19.02.99)      DE (71) Anmelder (für alle Bestimmungsstaaten ausser US): SIEMENS AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT [DE/DE]; Wittelsbacherplatz 2, D-80333 München (DE). (72) Erfinder; und (75) Erfinder/Anmelder (nur für US): RAAF, Bernhard [DE/DE]; Maxhofstrasse 62, D-81475 München (DE). MICHEL, Jürgen [DE/DE]; Frundsbergstrasse 44, D-80634 München (DE). LOBINGER, Andreas [DE/DE]; Schlierseer Strasse 30, D-83734 Hausham (DE). BÖMER, Leopold [DE/US]; 12585 Swan Canyon Place, San Diego, CA 92131 (US). (74) Gemeinsamer Vertreter: SIEMENS AKTIENGE- SELLSCHAFT; Postfach 22 16 34, D-80506 München (DE).		(81) Bestimmungsstaaten: AU, BR, CN, IN, JP, KR, US, eu- ropäisches Patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE). Veröffentlicht Mit internationalem Recherchenbericht. (88) Veröffentlichungsdatum des internationalen Recherchenbe- richts: 2. Juni 2000 (02.06.00)	

(54) Title: METHOD FOR FORMING OR DETECTING A SIGNAL SEQUENCE AND TRANSMITTER UNIT AND RECEIVER UNIT

(54) Bezeichnung: VERFAHREN ZUR BILDUNG BZW. ERMITTLUNG EINER SIGNALFOLGE, SENDEEINHEIT UND EMPFANG-  
SEINHEIT



# (57) Abstract

The invention relates to the forming of signal sequences based on signal partial sequences, wherein the second signal partial sequence is repeated and modulated by the first signal partial sequence. The invention also relates to the utilization of said signal partial sequences to synchronize two transmission units with the purpose of simplifying calculation of correlation sums in a two-stage calculation method, wherein a partial correlation sum sequence is initially calculated.

(57) Zusammenfassung

Bildung von Signalfolgen, die auf Signalteilfolgen basieren, wobei die zweite Signalteilfolge wiederholt wird und dabei durch die erste Signalteilfolge moduliert wird. Verwendung dieser Signalteilfolgen bei der Synchronisation zweier Übertragungseinheiten zur vereinfachten Berechnung von Korrelationssummen in einem zweistufigen Berechnungsverfahren, wobei zunächst eine Teilkorrelationssummenfolge berechnet wird.

**LEDIGLICH ZUR INFORMATION**

Codes zur Identifizierung von PCT-Vertragsstaaten auf den Kopfbögen der Schriften, die internationale Anmeldungen gemäss dem PCT veröffentlichen.

AL	Albanien	ES	Spanien	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slowenien
AM	Armenien	FI	Finnland	LT	Litauen	SK	Slowakei
AT	Österreich	FR	Frankreich	LU	Luxemburg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australien	GA	Gabun	LV	Lettland	SZ	Swasiland
AZ	Aserbaidshjan	GB	Vereinigtes Königreich	MC	Monaco	TD	Tschad
BA	Bosnien-Herzegowina	GE	Georgien	MD	Republik Moldau	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagaskar	TJ	Tadschikistan
BE	Belgien	GN	Guinea	MK	Die ehemalige jugoslawische Republik Mazedonien	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Griechenland			TR	Türkei
BG	Bulgarien	HU	Ungarn	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad und Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Irland	MN	Mongolei	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brasilien	IL	Israel	MR	Mauretanien	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Island	MW	Malawi	US	Vereinigte Staaten von Amerika
CA	Kanada	IT	Italien	MX	Mexiko		
CF	Zentralafrikanische Republik	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	UZ	Usbekistan
CG	Kongo	KE	Kenia	NL	Niederlande	VN	Vietnam
CH	Schweiz	KG	Kirgisistan	NO	Norwegen	YU	Jugoslawien
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Demokratische Volksrepublik Korea	NZ	Neuseeland	ZW	Zimbabwe
CM	Kamerun			PL	Polen		
CN	China	KR	Republik Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Kuba	KZ	Kasachstan	RO	Rumänien		
CZ	Tschechische Republik	LC	St. Lucia	RU	Russische Föderation		
DE	Deutschland	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Dänemark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Schweden		
EE	Estland	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapur		

**International Application No**  
**PCT/DE 99/02779**

### A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 H04J13/00 H04B7/26 H04B1/707

**According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC**

### B. FIELDS SEARCHED

**Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)**

**IPC 7    H04J    H04L    H04B**

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

### C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US 5 559 829 A (OLIVIER RENE ET AL) 24 September 1996 (1996-09-24) column 2, line 25 - line 37 column 3, line 16 -column 4, line 5 column 7, line 44 - line 67; figure 1	1-3, 10, 12
X	WO 96 39749 A (SCOTT LOGAN ;OMNIPOINT CORP (US)) 12 December 1996 (1996-12-12) page 89, line 20 -page 90, line 7	1, 3, 10
A	figures 8A, 8B, 9, 13A, 13B	4-9, 11-21
	— —/—	

**X** Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

**X** Patent family members are listed in annex.

<sup>o</sup> Special categories of cited documents :

- "A"** document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E"** earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "I"** document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O"** document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P"** document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T"** later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X"** document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y"** document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&"** document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

**25 February 2000**

Date of mailing of the international search report

**15/03/2000**

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 851 epo nl,  
Fax (+31-70) 340-3018

**Authorized officer**

Pieper, T

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Application No  
PCT/DE 99/02779

**C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	MASKARA S L ET AL: "CONCATENATED SEQUENCES FOR SPREAD SPECTRUM SYSTEMS" IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON AEROSPACE AND ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS,US,IEEE INC. NEW YORK, vol. AES-17, no. 3, May 1981 (1981-05), pages 342-350, XP000791008 ISSN: 0018-9251 page 344, left-hand column, paragraph 2 -right-hand column, paragraph 3 page 345, right-hand column, last paragraph page 348, right-hand column, paragraph 2 figures 2A-4	1,3
A	DE 43 18 368 C (SIEMENS AG) 14 July 1994 (1994-07-14) abstract column 1, line 56 -column 2, line 55 column 3, line 23 - line 52 column 6, line 9 - line 16; figure 1	4-21
A	MILSTEIN L B: "Some statistical properties of combination sequences" IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON INFORMATION THEORY, MARCH 1977, USA, vol. IT-23, no. 2, pages 254-258, XP000877014 ISSN: 0018-9448 page 254, left-hand column, paragraph 1 -right-hand column, paragraph 5; table 1	4-9,11, 17-21
A	MILSTEIN L B: "Some statistical properties of combination sequences" IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON INFORMATION THEORY, MARCH 1977, USA, vol. IT-23, no. 2, pages 254-258, XP000877014 ISSN: 0018-9448 page 254, left-hand column, paragraph 1 -right-hand column, paragraph 5; table 1	1-3,12
A,P	NN: "UMTS ; Physical Channel Structure" ETSI TR 101 397 ; UMTS 20.04 VERSION 3.0.1,October 1998 (1998-10), pages 33-38, XP002131576 Nizza , FR the whole document	1-3,12

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Patent Application No

PCT/DE 99/02779

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
US 5559829 A	24-09-1996	FR 2712444 A	19-05-1995
		AU 683694 B	20-11-1997
		AU 7752994 A	18-05-1995
		CA 2135459 A	11-05-1995
		CN 1124439 A	12-06-1996
		EP 0652647 A	10-05-1995
		FI 945230 A	11-05-1995
		JP 7202752 A	04-08-1995
		NZ 264805 A	26-11-1996
WO 9639749 A	12-12-1996	US 5959980 A	28-09-1999
		US 5802046 A	01-09-1998
		US 5745484 A	28-04-1998
		US 5689502 A	18-11-1997
		AU 6025796 A	24-12-1996
		BR 9608548 A	06-07-1999
		CA 2223321 A	12-12-1996
		CN 1192300 A	02-09-1998
		EP 0873593 A	28-10-1998
		US 5987079 A	16-11-1999
DE 4318368 C	14-07-1994	WO 9428652 A	08-12-1994
		DE 59409009 D	20-01-2000
		EP 0700611 A	13-03-1996
		US 5727018 A	10-03-1998



A. KLASSTIFIZIERUNG DES ANMELDUNGSGEGENSTANDES IPK 7 H04J13/00 H04B7/26 H04B1/707		
Nach der Internationalen Patentklassifikation (IPK) oder nach der nationalen Klassifikation und der IPK		
B. RECHERCHIERTE GEBIETE		
Recherchierter Mindestprüfstoff (Klassifikationssystem und Klassifikationssymbole) IPK 7 H04J H04L H04B		
Recherchierte aber nicht zum Mindestprüfstoff gehörende Veröffentlichungen, soweit diese unter die recherchierten Gebiete fallen		
Während der Internationalen Recherche konsultierte elektronische Datenbank (Name der Datenbank und evtl. verwendete Suchbegriffe)		
C. ALS WESENTLICH ANGESEHENE UNTERLAGEN		
Kategorie*	Bezeichnung der Veröffentlichung, soweit erforderlich unter Angabe der in Betracht kommenden Teile	Betr. Anspruch Nr.
X	US 5 559 829 A (OLIVIER RENE ET AL) 24. September 1996 (1996-09-24) Spalte 2, Zeile 25 - Zeile 37 Spalte 3, Zeile 16 - Spalte 4, Zeile 5 Spalte 7, Zeile 44 - Zeile 67; Abbildung 1	1-3, 10, 12
X	WO 96 39749 A (SCOTT LOGAN ; OMNIPOINT CORP (US)) 12. Dezember 1996 (1996-12-12) Seite 89, Zeile 20 - Seite 90, Zeile 7 Abbildungen 8A, 8B, 9, 13A, 13B	1, 3, 10
A	---	4-9, 11-21
	---	-/-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Weitere Veröffentlichungen sind der Fortsetzung von Feld C zu entnehmen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Siehe Anhang Patentfamilie		
* Besondere Kategorien von angegebenen Veröffentlichungen : "A" Veröffentlichung, die den allgemeinen Stand der Technik definiert, aber nicht als besonders bedeutsam anzusehen ist "E" älteres Dokument, das jedoch erst am oder nach dem internationalen Anmeldedatum veröffentlicht worden ist "L" Veröffentlichung, die geeignet ist, einen Prioritätsanspruch zweifelhaft erscheinen zu lassen, oder durch die das Veröffentlichungsdatum einer anderen im Recherchenbericht genannten Veröffentlichung belegt werden soll oder die aus einem anderen besonderen Grund angegeben ist (wie ausgeführt) "O" Veröffentlichung, die sich auf eine mündliche Offenbarung, eine Benutzung, eine Ausstellung oder andere Maßnahmen bezieht "P" Veröffentlichung, die vor dem internationalen Anmeldedatum, aber nach dem beanspruchten Prioritätsdatum veröffentlicht worden ist "T" Spätere Veröffentlichung, die nach dem internationalen Anmeldedatum oder dem Prioritätsdatum veröffentlicht worden ist und mit der Anmeldung nicht kollidiert, sondern nur zum Verständnis des der Erfindung zugrundeliegenden Prinzips oder der ihr zugrundeliegenden Theorie angegeben ist "X" Veröffentlichung von besonderer Bedeutung; die beanspruchte Erfindung kann allein aufgrund dieser Veröffentlichung nicht als neu oder auf erfindertischer Tätigkeit beruhend betrachtet werden "Y" Veröffentlichung von besonderer Bedeutung; die beanspruchte Erfindung kann nicht als auf erfindertischer Tätigkeit beruhend betrachtet werden, wenn die Veröffentlichung mit einer oder mehreren anderen Veröffentlichungen dieser Kategorie in Verbindung gebracht wird und diese Verbindung für einen Fachmann naheliegend ist "&" Veröffentlichung, die Mitglied derselben Patentfamilie ist		
Datum des Abschlusses der Internationalen Recherche  25. Februar 2000		Absendedatum des Internationalen Recherchenberichts  15/03/2000
Name und Postanschrift der Internationalen Recherchenbehörde Europäisches Patentamt, P.B. 5818 Patentaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 851 epo nl, Fax (+31-70) 340-3016		Bevollmächtigter Bediensteter  Pieper, T

## C.(Fortsetzung) ALS WESENTLICH ANGESEHENE UNTERLAGEN

Kategorie*	Bezeichnung der Veröffentlichung, soweit erforderlich unter Angabe der in Betracht kommenden Teile	Betr. Anspruch Nr.
X	MASKARA S L ET AL: "CONCATENATED SEQUENCES FOR SPREAD SPECTRUM SYSTEMS" IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON AEROSPACE AND ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS,US,IEEE INC. NEW YORK, Bd. AES-17, Nr. 3, Mai 1981 (1981-05), Seiten 342-350, XP000791008 ISSN: 0018-9251 Seite 344, linke Spalte, Absatz 2 -rechte Spalte, Absatz 3 Seite 345, rechte Spalte, letzter Absatz Seite 348, rechte Spalte, Absatz 2 Abbildungen 2A-4	1,3
A	DE 43 18 368 C (SIEMENS AG) 14. Juli 1994 (1994-07-14) Zusammenfassung Spalte 1, Zeile 56 -Spalte 2, Zeile 55 Spalte 3, Zeile 23 - Zeile 52 Spalte 6, Zeile 9 - Zeile 16; Abbildung 1	4-21
A	MILSTEIN L B: "Some statistical properties of combination sequences" IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON INFORMATION THEORY, MARCH 1977, USA, Bd. IT-23, Nr. 2, Seiten 254-258, XP000877014 ISSN: 0018-9448 Seite 254, linke Spalte, Absatz 1 -rechte Spalte, Absatz 5; Tabelle 1	4-9,11, 17-21
A	MILSTEIN L B: "Some statistical properties of combination sequences" IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON INFORMATION THEORY, MARCH 1977, USA, Bd. IT-23, Nr. 2, Seiten 254-258, XP000877014 ISSN: 0018-9448 Seite 254, linke Spalte, Absatz 1 -rechte Spalte, Absatz 5; Tabelle 1	1-3,12
A,P	NN: "UMTS ; Physical Channel Structure" ETSI TR 101 397 ; UMTS 20.04 VERSION 3.0.1,Okttober 1998 (1998-10), Seiten 33-38, XP002131576 Nizza , FR das ganze Dokument	1-3,12



# INTERNATIONALER RECHERCHENBERICHT

Angaben zu Veröffentlichungen, die zur selben Patentfamilie gehören

als Aktenzeichen

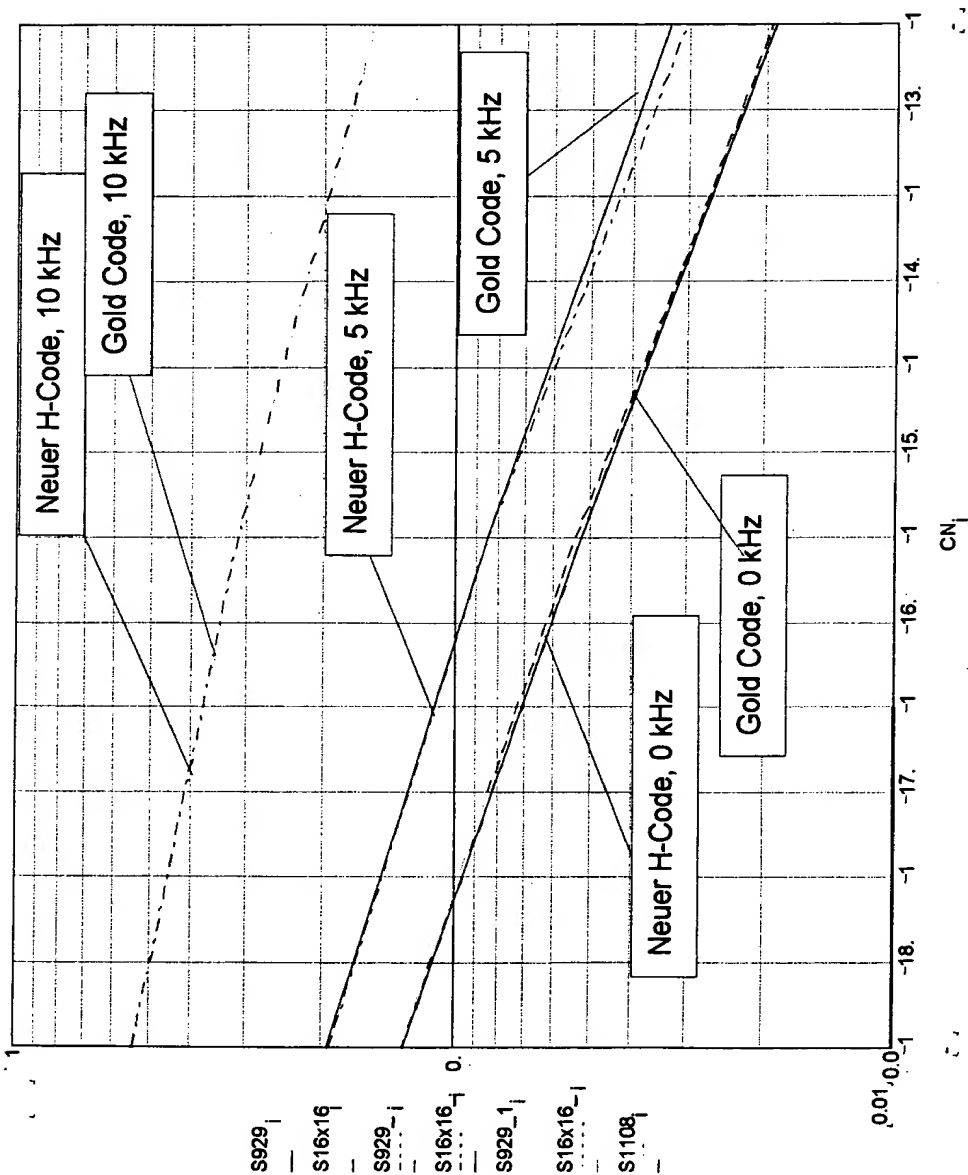
PCT/DE 99/02779

Im Recherchenbericht angeführtes Patentdokument	Datum der Veröffentlichung	Mitglied(er) der Patentfamilie	Datum der Veröffentlichung
US 5559829 A	24-09-1996	FR 2712444 A	19-05-1995
		AU 683694 B	20-11-1997
		AU 7752994 A	18-05-1995
		CA 2135459 A	11-05-1995
		CN 1124439 A	12-06-1996
		EP 0652647 A	10-05-1995
		FI 945230 A	11-05-1995
		JP 7202752 A	04-08-1995
		NZ 264805 A	26-11-1996
WO 9639749 A	12-12-1996	US 5959980 A	28-09-1999
		US 5802046 A	01-09-1998
		US 5745484 A	28-04-1998
		US 5689502 A	18-11-1997
		AU 6025796 A	24-12-1996
		BR 9608548 A	06-07-1999
		CA 2223321 A	12-12-1996
		CN 1192300 A	02-09-1998
		EP 0873593 A	28-10-1998
		US 5987079 A	16-11-1999
DE 4318368 C	14-07-1994	WO 9428652 A	08-12-1994
		DE 59409009 D	20-01-2000
		EP 0700611 A	13-03-1996
		US 5727018 A	10-03-1998

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

FIG 11

11/11



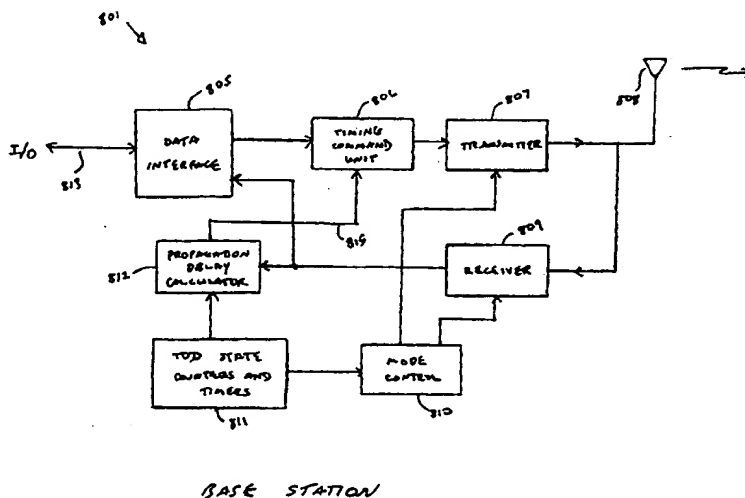




## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>H04B 1/00, H04J 1/00, 3/06, 3/12, 3/16, 3/24, H04M 3/42, 9/00, 11/00, H04Q 9/00</b>		<b>A1</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 96/39749</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 12 December 1996 (12.12.96)
(21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US96/07905</b>		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(22) International Filing Date: 28 May 1996 (28.05.96)			
(30) Priority Data: 08/464,285 5 June 1995 (05.06.95) US 08/465,555 5 June 1995 (05.06.95) US 08/465,137 5 June 1995 (05.06.95) US 08/463,220 5 June 1995 (05.06.95) US			
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): OMNIPOINT CORPORATION [US/US]; 1365 Garden of the Gods Road, Colorado Springs, CO 80907 (US).		Published With international search report.	
(72) Inventor; and (75) Inventor/Applicant (for US only): SCOTT, Logan [US/US]; 132 North Fuller Place, Breckenridge, CO 80424 (US).			
(74) Agents: HEMMINGER, Steven, D. et al.; Lyon & Lyon, First Interstate World Center, Suite 4700, 633 West Fifth Street, Los Angeles, CA 90071-2066 (US).			

(54) Title: TIMING ADJUSTMENT CONTROL FOR EFFICIENT TIME DIVISION DUPLEX COMMUNICATION



## (57) Abstract

A system for time division duplex communication over a single frequency band wherein guard time overhead is reduced by active adjustment of reverse link transmission timing as a function of round trip propagation delay. Responding to a polling message from the base station, a user station seeking to establish communication transmits a reply message. The base station using a propagation delay calculator (812) calculates the distance of the user station by measuring the propagation delay with respect to receipt of the reply message and a timing control unit (806) and transmitter (807) for sending a timing adjustment command to the user station instructing it to advance or retard its timing. Thereafter, the base station monitors the user station transmissions and periodically commands it to adjust its timing in a like manner. The user station transmits a control preamble at the start of each time slot to allow the base station to perform round trip timing calculations and adjustment of the user station's power or antenna selection.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

DESCRIPTIONTiming Adjustment Control for Efficient  
Time Division Duplex CommunicationBackground of the InventionField of the Invention

The field of the present invention pertains to  
5 communications and, more particularly, to an air interface  
structure and protocol suitable for use in a cellular  
communication environment.

Description of Related Art

10 A growing demand for flexible, mobile communication  
has led to development of a variety of techniques for  
allocating available communication bandwidth among a  
steadily increasing number of users of cellular services.  
Two conventional techniques for allocating communication  
15 bandwidth between a cellular base station and a set of  
cellular user stations (also called "mobile stations") are  
frequency division duplex (FDD) and time division duplex  
(TDD).

As used herein, FDD refers to a technique for  
20 establishing full duplex communications having both  
forward and reverse links separated in frequency, and TDD  
refers to a technique for establishing full duplex  
communications having both forward and reverse links  
occurring on the same frequency but separated in time to  
25 avoid collisions. Other techniques for communication are  
time division multiple access (TDMA), wherein  
transmissions by a plurality of users are separated in  
time to avoid conflicts, frequency division multiple  
access (FDMA), wherein transmissions by a plurality of  
30 users are separated in frequency to avoid conflicts, and  
time division multiplex (TDM), wherein multiple data  
streams are time multiplexed together over a single

carrier. Various combinations of FDD, TDD, FDMA, and TDMA may also be utilized.

In a particular FDD technique, a base station is allocated a set of frequencies over which it may transmit, using a different frequency slot for each user station, and each user station is allocated a different frequency over which it may transmit to the base station. For each new user in contact with a base station, a new pair of frequencies is required to support the communication link between the base station and the new user station. The number of users that can be supported by a single base station is therefore limited by the number of available frequency slots.

In a particular TDD technique, the same frequency is used for all user stations in communication with a particular base station. Interference between user stations is avoided by requiring that user stations transmit at different times from one another and from the base station. This is accomplished by dividing a time period into a plurality of time frames, and each time frame into a plurality of time slots. Typically, the base station communicates with only one user station during a time slot, and communicates with all the user stations sequentially during different time slots over a single time frame. Thus, the base station communicates with a particular user station once during each time frame.

In one version of the described system, the base station is allocated a first portion of each time slot during which the base station transmits to a particular user station, and the user station is allocated a second portion of the time slot during which the user station responds to the base station. Thus, the base station may transmit to a first user station, await a response, and, after receiving a response from the first user station, transmit to a second user station, and so on, until the base station has communicated with all user stations sequentially over a particular time frame.



Time division duplex has an advantage over FDD and FDMA of requiring use of only a single frequency bandwidth. However, a drawback of many conventional TDD or TDMA systems is that their efficiency suffers as cell size increases. The reduction in efficiency stems from the relatively unpredictable nature of propagation delay times of transmissions from the base station over air channels to the user stations, and from the user stations over air channels back to the base station. Because user stations are often mobile and can move anywhere within the radius of the cell covered by a base station, the base station generally does not know in advance how long the propagation delay will be for communicating with a particular user station. In order to plan for the worst case, conventional TDD systems typically provide a round-trip guard time to ensure that communication will be completed with the first user station before initiating communication with the second user station. Because the round-trip guard time is present in each time slot regardless of how near or far a user station is, the required round-trip guard time can add substantial overhead, particularly in large cells. The extra overhead limits the number of users, and hence the efficiency, of TDD systems.

Figure 1 is an illustration of the basic round trip timing for a TDD system from a base station perspective. A polling loop 101, or time frame, for a base station is divided into a plurality of time slots 103. Each time slot 103 is used for communication from the base station to a particular user station. Thus, each time slot comprises a base transmission 105, a user transmission 107, and a delay period 106 during which the base transmission 105 propagates to the user station, the user station processes and generates a responsive user transmission 107, and the user transmission 107 propagates to the base station.

If the user station is located right next to the base station, then the base station can expect to hear from the user station immediately after finishing its transmission and switching to a receive mode. As the distance between  
5 the user station and the base station grows, the time spent by the base station waiting for a response grows as well. The base station will not hear from the user station immediately but will have to wait for signals to propagate to the user station and back.

10 As shown in Fig. 1, in a first time slot 110 the user transmission 107 arrives at the base station at a time approximately equidistant between the end of the base transmission 105 and the start of the user transmission 107, indicating that the user station is about half a cell  
15 radius from the base station. In a second time slot 111, the user transmission 107 appears very close to the end of the base transmission 105, indicating that the user station is very close to the base station. In a third time slot 112, the user transmission 107 appears at the  
20 very end of the time slot 112, indicating that the user station is near or at the cell boundary. Because the third time slot 112 corresponds to a user station at the maximum communication distance for a particular base station, the delay 106 shown in the third time slot 112  
25 represents the maximum round-trip propagation time and, hence, the maximum round-trip guard time.

In addition to propagation delay times, there also may be delays in switching between receive and transmit mode in the user station, base station, or both, which are  
30 not depicted in Fig. 1 for simplicity. Typical transmit/receive switching times are about two microseconds, but additional allocations may be made to account for channel ringing effects associated with multipath.

35 As cell size increases, TDD guard time must increase to account for longer propagation times. In such a case, guard time consumes an increasingly large portion of the

available time slot, particularly for shorter round trip frame durations. The percentage increase in time spent for overhead is due to the fact that TDD guard time is a fixed length, determined by cell radius, while the actual round trip frame duration varies according to the distance of the user station. Consequently, as cells get larger, an increasing amount of time is spent on overhead in the form of guard times rather than actual information transfer between user stations and the base station.

One conventional TDD system is the Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) system developed by the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI). In the DECT system, a base station transmits a long burst of data segmented into time slots, with each time slot having data associated with a particular user station. After a guard time, user stations respond in a designated group of consecutive time slots, in the same order as the base station sent data to the user stations.

Another system in current use is the Global System for Mobile communications ("GSM"). Figure 4 illustrates a timing pattern according to certain existing GSM standards. According to these standards, communication between a base station and user stations is divided into eight burst periods 402. Up to eight different user stations can communicate with a base station, one in each burst period 402.

GSM standards require two separate frequency bands. The base station transmits over a first frequency  $F_A$ , while the user stations transmit over a second frequency  $F_B$ . After a user station receives a base transmission 405 on the first frequency  $F_A$  during a particular burst period 402, the user station shifts in frequency by 45 MHz to the second frequency  $F_B$  and transmits a user transmission 406 in response to the base transmission 405 approximately three burst periods 402 later. The three burst period delay is assumed to be large enough to account for

propagation time between the base station and the user station.

It is important in the GSM system that the user transmissions 406 received at the base station fit into the appropriate burst periods 402. Otherwise, the user transmissions 406 from user stations using adjacent burst periods 402 could overlap, resulting in poor transmission quality or even loss of communication due to interference between user stations. Accordingly, each burst period 402 is surrounded by a guard times 407 to account for uncertain signal propagation delays between the base station and the user station. By comparing the time of the signal actually received from the user station 302 to the expected receive time, the base station may command the user station to advance or retard its transmission timing in order to fall within the proper burst period 402, a feature known as adaptive frame alignment. A specification relating to adaptive frame alignment for the GSM system is TS GSM 05.10.

A drawback of the described GSM system is that it requires two separate frequency bands. It also has a relatively rigid structure, which may limit its flexibility or adaptability to certain cellular environments.

Another system in presence use is known as Wide Area Coverage System (WACS), a narrowband system employing aspects of both FDMA and TDMA. Under WACS, as in GSM, two distinct frequency bands are used. One frequency band is used for user station transmissions, and the other frequency band is used for base station transmissions. The user station transmissions are offset by one-half of a time slot from the corresponding base station transmissions, in order to allow for propagation time between the base station and the user station. Standard WACS does not support spread spectrum communication (a known type of communication wherein the bandwidth of the transmitted signal exceeds the bandwidth of the data to be

transmitted), and has an overall structure that may be characterized as relatively rigid.

In a number of systems, the channel structure is such that a user station may have to transmit a response to a base station while receiving information on another channel. The capability for simultaneous transmission and reception generally requires the use of a diplexer, which is a relatively expensive component for a mobile handset.

It would be advantageous to provide a flexible system having the benefits of time division duplex communication, particularly in large cells, but without having an overhead of a full round-trip guard time in every time slot. It would further be advantageous to provide such a system requiring only a single frequency band for communication. It would further be advantageous to provide a TDMA or combination TDMA/FDMA system wherein user stations are not required to be fitted with a diplexer. It would further be advantageous to provide a time frame structure readily adaptable to single or multiple frequency bands, and for use in either a variety of communication environments.

#### Summary of the Invention

The present invention in one aspect provides an efficient means for carrying out time division multiplexed communication, particularly in large cell environments.

In one embodiment, in a first portion of a time frame, a base station issues consecutive base transmissions directed to each of the communicating user stations. A single collective guard time is allocated while the base station awaits a response from the first user station. The user stations then respond, one by one, in allocated time slots on the same frequency as the base station, with only minimal guard times between each reception. In order to prevent interference among the user transmissions, the base station commands the user stations to advance or retard their transmission timing.

To initiate communication between a base station and a user station, each base transmission may have a header indicating whether or not the slot pair is unoccupied. If a slot pair is free, the user station responds with a brief message in its designated portion of the slot pair. The user portion of the slot pair includes a full round-trip guard time allowance to account for the uncertain distance between the base station and the user station upon initial communication. The base station compares the actual time of receiving the user transmission with the expected time of reception, and determines how far away the user station is. In subsequent time frames, the base station may command the user station to advance or retard its timing as necessary so that full information messages may thereafter be sent without interference among user stations.

In another aspect of the invention, base transmissions are alternated with user transmissions over the same frequency band. The base station and user stations may precede their main data transmissions with a preamble, such as, for example, where desired for synchronization of spread spectrum communication signals or for conducting power control. The preamble may be transmitted at a designated time interval between two data transmissions. The base station may command the user station to advance or retard its timing based on a calculated round-trip propagation time.

In other embodiments of the invention, multiple frequency bands are utilized. For example, one frequency band may be used for base station transmissions, and another frequency band may be used for user station transmissions. Reverse-link user station transmissions are offset from the base station transmissions by a predetermined amount. A base station and user stations may transmit a preamble prior to a time slot designated for a main data transmission, and may interleave the preamble in a designated time interval between two time

other time slots. The preamble may consist of multiple bursts, one burst from each a different antenna, to allow channel sounding at the target. The base station may command the user station to advance or retard its timing based on a calculation of round-trip propagation delay time.

In another aspect of the present invention, a universal frame structure is provided for use in a TDMA or TDMA/FDMA system. A suitable frame structure employing ranging capability may be constructed from timing elements which may include provision for data transmissions, preambles, guard times, and the like. A frame structure may be constructed suitable for operation in various embodiments in either a high tier or a low tier environment, by selecting an appropriate combination of the generic timing elements.

A dual-mode base station structure is also provided capable of multiple frequency band operation. The base station takes advantage of a low IF digital correlator design.

Further variations, adaptations, details and refinements of the embodiments generally described above are also disclosed in herein.

## Brief Description of the Drawings

The various objects, features and advantages of the present invention may be better understood by examining the Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiments found below, together with the appended figures, wherein:

Figure 1 is an illustration of the basic round trip timing for a prior art TDD system, from a base station perspective.

Figure 2 is a graph of round-trip guard time as a percentage of the actual round trip frame duration in the prior art TDD system of Fig. 1.

Figures 3A and 3B are diagrams of cellular environments for communication.

Figure 4 is an illustration of a timing pattern according to existing GSM standards.

Figure 5A is an illustration of the basic round trip timing of a TDD/TDM/TDMA system, from a base station perspective, in accordance with one embodiment of the present invention.

Figure 5B is a timing diagram showing an initial communication link-up between a base station 304 and a user station 302.

Figure 5C is a timing diagram showing a variation of the TDD/TDM/TDMA system of Fig. 5A using an interleaved symbol transmission format.

Figure 5D is a chart comparing performance of the system of Fig. 5A, without forward error correction, and the system of Fig. 5C, with forward error correction.

Figure 6 is a graph of round-trip guard time as a percentage of the actual round trip frame duration in the embodiment of Fig. 5A.

Figure 7 is an illustration of an alternative timing protocol for reducing total round trip guard time.

Figure 8A is a hardware block diagram of a base station in accordance with an embodiment of the invention.

Figure 8B is a hardware block diagram of an alternative embodiment of a base station.

Figure 9 is a hardware block diagram of a user station in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention.

Figure 10A is a diagram of timing sub-elements in accordance with another embodiment of the present invention, and Figures 10B through 10E are diagrams of time frame structures expressed in terms of the timing sub-elements of Fig. 10A.

Figure 11A is a diagram of timing sub-elements in accordance with another embodiment of the present invention, and Figures 11B through 11D are diagrams of time frame structures expressed in terms of the timing sub-elements of Fig. 10A.



Figures 12A-C are tables of a preferred message formats for base station and user station transmissions.

Figures 13A-B are diagrams showing the construction of concatenated preambles, and Figure 13C is a chart comparing preamble performance. Figures 13D-E are graphs comparing preamble performance using matched and mismatched filters.

Figures 14-17 are charts comparing various performance aspects of high tier and low tier air interfaces incorporating selected features of the embodiments described herein.

Figure 18 is a block diagram of a low IF digital correlator.

Figure 19A is a block diagram of a dual-mode base station capable of operating over multiple frequencies and having both spread spectrum and narrowband communication capabilities, and Fig. 19B is a chart showing selected frequencies and other parameters for use in the dual-mode base station of Fig. 19A.

#### Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiments

The present invention provides in one aspect an efficient means for carrying out time division duplex communication, and is well suited for a large cell environment. Embodiments of the invention may take advantage of spread spectrum communication techniques, such as, for example, code division multiple access (CDMA) techniques in which communication signals are encoded using a pseudo-random coding sequence, or may be used in conjunction with frequency division multiple access (FDMA) techniques in which communication signals are multiplexed over different frequencies, or may be used in conjunction with a combination of CDMA, FDMA or other communication techniques.

Figure 3A is a diagram of a cellular environment for a communication system having base stations and user stations.

In Fig. 3A, a communication system 301 for communication among a plurality of user stations 302 includes a plurality of cells 303, each with a base station 304, typically located at the center of the cell 303. Each station (both the base stations 304 and the user stations 302) generally comprises a receiver and a transmitter. The user stations 302 and base stations 304 may communicate using time division duplex or any of the other communication techniques disclosed herein.

Figure 3B is a diagram of a cellular environment in which the invention may operate. As shown in Fig. 3B, a geographical region 309 is divided into a plurality of cells 303. Associated with each cell 303 is an assigned frequency F1, F2 or F3 and an assigned spread spectrum code or code set C1 through C7. In order to minimize interference between adjacent cells 303, in a preferred embodiment three different frequencies F1, F2 and F3 are assigned in such a manner that no two adjacent cells 303 have the same assigned frequency F1, F2 or F3.

To further reduce the possibility of intercell interference, different orthogonal spread spectrum codes or code sets C1 through C7 are assigned as shown in adjacent clusters 310. Although seven spread spectrum codes or code sets C1 through C7, which are convenient to form a 7-cell repeated pattern, are shown in Fig. 3B, the number of spread spectrum codes or code sets may vary depending upon the particular application. Further information regarding a particular cellular communication environment may be found in U.S. Application Serial No. 07/682,050 entitled "Three Cell Wireless Communication System" filed on April 8, 1991 in the name of Robert C. Dixon, and in U.S. Application Serial No. 08/284,053 entitled "PCS Pocket Phone/Microcell Communication Over-Air Protocol" filed on August 1, 1994 in the name of Gary B. Anderson et al., each of which is hereby incorporated by reference as if fully set forth herein.

While the use of spread spectrum for carrier modulation is not a requirement for practicing the invention, its use in the cellular environment of Fig. 3B may permit a very efficient frequency reuse factor of  $N = 3$  for allocating different carrier frequencies  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  and  $F_3$  to adjacent cells 303. Interference between cells 303 using the same carrier frequency  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  or  $F_3$  is reduced by the propagation loss due to the distance separating the cells 303 (no two cells 303 using the same frequency  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  or  $F_3$  are less than two cells 303 in distance away from one another), and also by the spread spectrum processing gain of cells 103 using the same carrier frequencies  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  or  $F_3$ . Additional interference isolation is provided through CDMA code separation. TDD or TDMA communication techniques may also be used in conjunction with the cellular architecture of Fig. 3B.

In a preferred embodiment of the invention using time division duplex, the same frequency  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  or  $F_3$  is used for all user stations 302 in communication with a particular base station 304. Interference between user stations 302 is avoided by requiring that different user stations 302 do not transmit at the same time, or at the same time as the base station 304. The base station 304 is allocated a first portion of a time slot during which the base station 304 transmits to a particular user station, and each user station 302 is allocated a second portion of the time slot during which it responds. Thus, the base station 304 may transmit to a first user station 302, await a response, and, after receiving a response from the first user station 302, transmit to a second user station 302, and so on.

As noted previously with respect to Fig. 1, the mobility of user stations 302 leads to unpredictability in the propagation delay times of transmissions from the base station 304 over air channels to the user stations 302, and from the user stations 302 over air channels back to the base station 304. Thus, the base station 304

generally does not know in advance how long the propagation delay will be for communicating with a particular user station 302. In order to plan for the worst case, conventional TDD systems provide a round-trip guard time in each time slot to ensure that communication will be completed with the first user station 302 before initiating communication with the second user station 302.

Typical round trip guard times are 6.7 microseconds per kilometer of cell radius; thus, for a cell 303 of 3 kilometer radius, a round trip guard time of 20 microseconds is needed. In conventional systems, the round-trip guard time is applied in each time slot regardless of how near or far a user station 302 is from the base station 304. The required round-trip guard time therefore increases timing overhead and inherently limits the number of users in such conventional TDD systems.

As cell size increases, TDD guard time must increase to account for longer propagation times. The relationship between cell radius and guard time can be established as follows:

$$\text{TDD Guard Time} = 2 \times (\text{Cell Radius}) / (\text{Speed of Light})$$

Figure 2 is a graph of round-trip guard time as a percentage of the actual round trip frame duration (i.e., the amount of time actually necessary for a base transmission 105, a propagation delay time 106, and a user transmission 107) for a conventional TDD system such as depicted in Fig. 1. Four microseconds have been added to account for transmit/receive switching delays. The graph of Fig. 2 illustrates that, because TDD guard time is a fixed length, determined by the cell radius, while actual round trip transmission time varies according to the distance of the user station 302, an increasing amount of time is spent on overhead in the form of guard times rather than actual information transfer between user stations 302 and the base station 304 as cell radius increases. The efficiency of conventional TDD systems,

especially those with large cells, therefore suffers as a consequence of round trip guard times.

Figure 5A is an illustration of the basic round trip timing of a TDD/TDM/TDMA system, from a base station perspective, for reducing total round trip guard time in accordance with one or more aspects of the present invention.

In the Fig. 5A embodiment, a time frame 501 is divided into a transmission portion 502, a collective guard time portion 503, and a receiving portion 504. The transmission portion 502 comprises a plurality of transmit time slots 510. The receiving portion 504 comprises a plurality of receive time slots 504.

In the transmission portion 502, the base station 304 transmits to a plurality of user stations 302, one in each of the transmit time slots 510 of the transmission portion 502 of the time frame 501. During the collective guard time portion 503, the base station 304 waits for the last base transmission from the last transmit time slot 510 to be received by the appropriate user station 302, and for the first user transmission to arrive from a user station 302. In the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501, the base station 304 receives user transmissions, one in each receive time slot 511 of the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501.

A particular transmit time slot 510 and its corresponding receive time slot 511 may be thought of as collectively comprising a duplex time slot analogous to time slots 110, 111 and 112 shown in Fig. 1. Although there are eight time slots 510, 511 shown in Fig. 5A, more than eight or fewer than eight time slots 510, 511 can be used as needed for a particular application.

The base station 304 preferably transmits messages to and receives messages from each of the user stations 302 in a duplex fashion once during each time frame 501. In one embodiment of the invention, the user station 302 receiving a base transmission from the first transmit time

slot 510 is the first to send a responsive user transmission in the first receive time slot 511, the user station 302 receiving the base transmission from the second transmit time slot 510 is the second to send a responsive user transmission in the second receive time slot 511, and so on. In this manner, the base station 304 sends a series of consecutive base transmissions, each directed to a separate user station 302, and receives a series of consecutive user transmissions in matching return order.

Although the user stations 302 may respond in the same order as the base transmissions, alternatively the base station may include a command, in a header or otherwise, instructing a particular user station 302 to respond in a different position.

The collective guard time portion 503 of the time frame 501 is essentially a single collective idle time during which the base station 304 awaits a response from the first user station 302. The collective guard time portion 503 is necessary to allow the base transmission in the last transmit time slot 510 to reach the intended user station 302, which could be located at the cell periphery, before the first user station 302 responds. If the first user station 302 were permitted to respond before the expiration of the collective guard time portion 503, then its transmission could interfere with the last base transmission. The collective guard time portion 503 therefore needs to be roughly the same length as the delay 106 shown in the third time slot 112 of Fig. 1, which, as noted, represents the maximum round-trip guard time of the Fig. 1 system. However, unlike the Fig. 1 system, only one maximum round-trip guard time (i.e., the collective guard time portion 503) is needed in the Fig. 5A embodiment.

It should be noted that there are slight delay times, such as with the Fig. 1 system, for the base station 304 and the user stations 302 to switch from a transmit mode

to a receive mode, or from a receive mode to a transmit mode. These delays are roughly 2 microseconds for each switching operation. Unlike the conventional Fig. 1 system, wherein the base station needs to switch modes in each time slot 103, the base station 304 in the Fig. 5A embodiment may need to only switch once from transmit to receive mode and back again in a given time frame 501. Also unlike the Fig. 1 system, in which the base station must wait in each time slot 103 for the user station to switch from receive to transmit mode, only the first user station 302 responding in the time frame 501 of the Fig. 5A embodiment potentially adds a receive/transmit switching delay to the system.

In the Fig. 5A embodiment, the timing structure is preferably organized such that user-to-base messages from the user stations 302 arriving at the base station 304 during the receiving portion 504 do not overlap. If each user station 302 were to begin reverse link transmissions at a fixed offset from the time of forward link data reception according to its time slot number, overlapping messages and resulting interference would occasionally be seen by the base station 304. To prevent such interference of incoming user transmissions, each user station 302 biases its transmission start timing as a function its own two-way propagation time to the base station 304, as further explained below. Reverse link messages thus arrive in the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501 at the base station 304 in sequence and without overlap. In order to allow for timing errors and channel ringing, abbreviated guard bands 512 are provided between each pair of receive time slots 511. These abbreviated guard bands 512 are significantly shorter than the maximum round trip guard time 106 as described with respect to Fig. 1.

To bias its transmission start timing, in a preferred embodiment the base station 304 is provided with means for determining round trip propagation delay to each user

station 302. A round trip timing (RTT) measurement is preferably accomplished as a cooperative effort between the base station 304 and the user station 302 and therefore comprises a communication transaction between  
5 the base station 304 and the user station 302. An RTT transaction may be done upon initial establishment of communication between a base station 304 and a user station 302, and periodically thereafter as necessary. The measured round-trip time from the RTT transaction may  
10 also be averaged over time.

In an RTT transaction, the base station 304 sends an RTT command message instructing the user station 302 to return a short RTT reply message a predetermined delay period  $\Delta T$  after reception. The predetermined delay period  
15  $\Delta T$  may be sent as part of the RTT command message, or may be pre-programmed as a system parameter. The base station 304 measures the time at which it receives the RTT reply message. The base station 304 then computes the propagation delay to the user station 302 based on the  
20 time of sending the RTT command message, the predetermined delay period  $\Delta T$ , and the time of receiving the short RTT reply message.

Once the base station 304 has computed the propagation delay to the user station 302, the base  
25 station 304 then sends a bias time message to the user station 302 either informing the user station 302 of the propagation delay measured in the RTT transaction, or providing a specific timing adjustment command. The user station 302 thereafter times its transmissions based on  
30 the information contained in the bias time message. Once timing has been established in such a manner, the base station 304 may periodically command the user station 302 to advance or retard its transmission timing to keep reverse link TDMA time slots aligned. The mechanics of  
35 adjusting the timing responsive to the timing adjustment commands may be similar to the techniques conventionally employed in the GSM system generally described elsewhere



herein. Timing adjustment command control may be carried out, for example, according to the techniques described in GSM specification TS GSM 05.10, which is incorporated by reference as if set forth fully herein. After a response  
5 from the user station 302 is received at the base station 304, the base station 304 may maintain closed loop control over the timing of the user station 302 by adjusting timing of the user station transmission as often as each time frame 501 if necessary.

10 For precise timing measurements in the RTT transaction, communication between the user station 302 and the base station 304 is preferably carried out using a direct sequence spread spectrum modulation format. Other formats can be used but may result in less accurate  
15 RTT measurements, leading to larger allowances needed in the abbreviated guard bands 512 for timing errors in the user station 302 transmissions.

Figure 5B is a timing diagram showing an example of initial communication link-up between a base station 304 and a user station 302 in accordance with the system of Fig. 5A. To facilitate initial communication between a base station 304 and a user station 302, each base transmission during a transmit time slot 510 may have a brief header 550 preceding a data link message 551  
20 indicating whether or not the particular slot pair 510, 511 is available. If a slot pair 510, 511 is available, a user station 302 desiring to establish communication with the base station 304 responds with a brief reply message 562 in the receive time slot 511 of the slot pair  
25 510, 511. The receive time slot 511 should have a duration of at least a full round-trip guard time, plus the length of a reply message 562, to account for the initial maximum distance uncertainty between the base station 304 and the user station 302 upon initial  
30 communication.

The base station 304 compares the actual time of receiving the reply message 562 with the expected time of

reception, and determines how far away the user station 302 is. In subsequent time frames 501, the base station 304 may command the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing as necessary so that full length information messages may thereafter be sent without interference among user stations 302.

The timing protocol illustrated in Fig. 5B will now be explained in greater detail. A user station 302 desiring to establish communication with a base station 304 listens to the headers 550 transmitted from a base station 304 at the start of each transmit time slot 510. When the user station 302 detects a header 550 containing a status message indicating that the corresponding time slot pair 510, 511 is available or unoccupied, the user station 302 attempts to respond with a reply message. The header 550 may contain bits which define a delay time  $\Delta T$  and indicate to the responding user station 302 a predetermined delay time before it should transmit in reply. The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be measured with respect to a variety of references, but is preferably measured relative to the start of the corresponding receive time slot 511. The user station 302 preferably comprises means (such as timers and/or counters) for keeping track of the relative position and timing of the time slots 510 and 511 in order to respond accurately.

In the example of Fig. 5B, the delay time  $\Delta T$  represents a relative delay time measured from the start of the appropriate receive time slot 511. An exploded view of the receive time slot 511 is shown in Fig. 5B. At the appropriate receive time slot 511, the user station 302 delays for a delay time  $\Delta T$  before sending a reply message 562. The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be used by the user station 302 for error processing or other internal housekeeping tasks. As Fig. 5B is illustrated from the perspective of the base station 304 awaiting receipt of the reply message 562, the base station 304 will perceive a propagation delay 561 from the time the user station 302

transmits the reply message 362 until the time of actual receipt of the reply message 362. By measuring the difference in time between the end of the delay time  $\Delta T$  and the start of the reply message 562, the base station  
5 304 may ascertain the propagation delay 561.

The reply message 562 may therefore serve the function of the RTT reply message described earlier, in that the base station 304 ascertains the proper timing for the user station 302 by measuring the propagation delay  
10 561 in receiving the reply message 562.

Once the propagation delay 561 has been determined, the base station 304 can command the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing by a desired amount. For example, the base station 304 in the exemplary Fig. 5B  
15 system may command the user station 302 to advance its timing by an amount of time equal to the propagation delay time 561, so that the user station 302 transmits essentially at the very end of the abbreviated guard band 512. Thus, when the user station 302 is at the maximum  
20 range, the timing advance command will be set to zero (not including the delay  $\Delta T$ , which is implicit in the user station transmissions). Conversely, when the user station 302 is very close to the base station, the timing advance command will be set close to the full guard time provided  
25 (i.e., the maximum propagation delay time). The timing advance command may be expressed as a number of bits or chips, so that the user station 302 will respond by advancing or retarding its timing by the number of bits or chips specified. Alternatively, the timing advance  
30 command may be expressed as a fractional amount of seconds (e.g., 2 microseconds). As noted, the user station 302 may advance or retard its timing using techniques already developed and conventionally used for the GSM system described earlier, or by any other suitable means.

35 In one embodiment, the delay time  $\Delta T$  is preferably set equal to the receive/transmit switching time of the user station 302. Thus, the delay associated with a user

station 302 switching from a receive mode to a transmit mode is not included in the RTT measurement. The delay time  $\Delta T$  should also be selected short enough so that there will be no overlap between the reply message 562 of a particular user station 302 and the user-to-base transmissions in other receive time slots 511.

If two user stations 302 attempting to establish communication transmit in the same receive time slot 511 using short reply messages 562, the reply messages 562 may or may not overlap depending on how far each user station 302 is positioned from the base station 304. In some situations the simultaneous reply messages 562 will cause jamming. Should the base station 304 receive two reply messages 562 in the same receive time slot 511, the base station 304 may select the user station 302 with the stronger signal for communication.

Alternatively, the base station 304 may initiate a backoff procedure or otherwise resolve the conflict as appropriate for the particular application. For example, the base station 304 may issue a backoff command which causes each user station 302 to back off for a variable period based on an internal programming parameter unique to each user station 302 (e.g., such as a unique user identification number). As another alternative, if the base station 304 can discriminate between the two reply messages 562, then the base station 304 may instruct one or both user stations 302 to relocate to a different slot pair 510, 511.

The system of Figs. 5A-5B thus depicts in one aspect a combined TDD/TDM/TDMA message structure that adjusts reverse link transmission timing so that user-to-base messages transmitted from user stations 302 arrive at the base station 304 sequentially and do not overlap. The base station 304, using a TDM technique, transmits during the transmission portion 502 of a time frame 501 a single, long burst of data comprising a plurality of base-to-user messages, one base-to-user message per transmit time slot

510. After the transmission portion 502, the base station 304 switches to a receive mode. Each user station 302 extracts from the long base station burst the particular data that is intended for it. Reverse link transmissions  
5 are not allowed to commence until all user stations 302 have had a chance to receive their forward link data. The user stations 302 then respond, one by one, in allocated receive time slots 511 on the same frequency as used by the base station 304, with only minimal guard times 512  
10 between each reception. In order to prevent interference among the user transmissions, the base station 304 commands the user stations 302 to advance or retard their transmission timing as necessary.

Figure 6 is a graph of total round trip guard time  
15 (i.e., the collective guard portion 503 plus abbreviated guard bands 512 and transmit/receive switching delays) as a percentage of frame time for the system of Figs. 5A-5B. Four microseconds has been added to account for  
transmit/receive switching delays, and it is assumed that  
20 reverse link TDMA time slots are separated by 2 microseconds to allow for timing errors. A time frame 501 having a duration of 4 milliseconds is selected for the example of Fig. 6. The graph of Fig. 6 illustrates that relatively modest overhead requirements are possible even  
25 with cell diameters approaching 25 miles. The graph of Fig. 6 also shows that, as the number of time slots increases, more total time per time frame 501 is allocated for user station timing errors, but that total overhead is nevertheless held to less than 10% for a 25 mile radius  
30 cell.

Figure 7 is an illustration of a TDD/TDM/TDMA timing structure having an alternative initial timing protocol for reducing total round trip guard time. Like Figs. 5A-5B, the TDM aspect of Fig. 7 relates to the base  
35 transmissions, while the TDMA aspect relates to the user transmissions.

The Fig. 7 embodiment uses the collective guard portion 503 (as previously shown in Fig. 5A) for initial establishment of communication and RTT measurement. The approach of Fig. 7 contrasts with the approach described with respect to Fig. 5B, wherein each of the receive time slots 511, as noted, are preferably of a duration no less than the maximum round-trip guard time (plus reply message length) due to the initial round trip timing uncertainty. In a Fig. 5B system wherein the time frame 501 comprises many receive time slots 511 of relatively short duration, then, for very large cells, the initial round trip timing uncertainty may cover several receive time slots 511. In such a case, attempts to send a reply message 562 during initial link-up by one user station 302 could interfere with the data link transmissions from other user stations 302, leading to interference or overlapping messages received by the base station 304 during the receive time slots 511.

In order to prevent such a situation, each of the receive time slots in the Fig. 5B system should, as noted, be of a duration no less than the sum of the maximum round-trip guard time plus the duration of a reply message 562. The maximum round trip propagation time therefore places a maximum limit on the number of time slots (and hence users) in the Fig. 5B system.

The Fig. 7 system resolves this same problem by using a designated portion of the time frame 501 for initial establishment of communication. In the system of Fig. 7, in order to prevent the possibility of RTT reply message overlap or interference yet provide the capability of handling more time slots (particularly in larger cells), initial communication link-up (including RTT transactions) are conducted during the idle time of the collective guard portion 503 between the end of transmission portion 502 of the time frame 501 up to and, if necessary, including the first receive time slot 511 of the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501. The collective guard portion 503

is thereby utilized in the Fig. 7 system for conducting RTT measurements and to assist in establishing an initial communication link between the base station 304 and a new user station 302.

5 In the Fig. 7 system, a transmission time slot 510 may comprise a header, similar to the header 550 shown in Fig. 5B. The header may indicate whether a particular time slot pair 510, 511 is free. If a time slot pair 510 is free, a user station 302 desiring to establish  
10 communication responds with a message indicating the desired time slot of communication. If no header is used, the user station 302 responds with a general request for access, and the base station 304 may in the following time frame 501 instruct the user station 302 to use a  
15 particular time slot pair 510, 511 for communication. The general request for access by the user station 302 may comprise a user station identifier, to allow the base station 304 to specifically address the user station 302 requesting access.

20 The header 550 in the Fig. 7 system may include a command indicating a delay time  $\Delta T$  after which a user station 302 desiring to establish communication may respond. Alternatively, such a delay time  $\Delta T$  may be pre-programmed as a system parameter, such that the user  
25 station 302 delays its response until the delay time  $\Delta T$  elapses. After detecting the end of the base transmission 502 and waiting for the delay time  $\Delta T$  to elapse, the user station 302 transmits an RTT reply message 701 or 702.

If the user station 302 is very close to the base  
30 station 304, then the RTT reply message 701 will appear to the base station 304 immediately after the end of the base transmission 502, and presumably within the collective guard portion 503.

If the user station 302 is near the cell periphery,  
35 then the RTT reply message 702 will appear to the base station 304 either towards the end of the collective guard portion 503 or within the first receive time slot 511 of

the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501, depending on the particular system definition and timing. The first receive time slot 511 available for established data link communication is the first receive time slot 511  
5 designated after the maximum round-trip propagation delay (including message length) of a reply message from a user station 302 at the maximum cell periphery. Some guard time allowance may also be added to ensure that reply messages from more distant user stations 302 will not  
10 interfere with the reverse data link transmissions from user stations 302 in established communication.

In an embodiment wherein the headers 550 contain information as to the availability of time slot pairs 510, 511, the RTT reply message 701 or 702 may contain a time  
15 slot identifier indicating which available time slot the user station 302 desires to use for communication. The user station 302 may also determine time slot availability by monitoring the base transmission 502 and/or user transmissions 504 for a period of time, and thus transmit  
20 a RTT reply message 701 or 702 containing a time slot identifier indicating which available time slot pair 510, 511 the user station 302 desires to use for communication. In response, during the first transmit time slot 510 of the transmission portion 502, the base station 304 may  
25 issue a command approving the user station 302 to use the requested time slot pair 510, 511 for communication, instructing the user station 302 to use a different time slot pair 510, 511 for communication, or informing the user station 302 that the base station 304 is busy.

30 If no headers are used, or if the user station 302 does not have specific information as to the availability of time slot pairs 510, 511, the user station 302 may still transmit an RTT reply message 701 or 702 as a general request for access. In response, during the first  
35 transmit time slot 510 of the transmission portion 502, the base station 304 may issue a command instructing the user station 302 to use a specific time slot pair 510, 511



for communication, or informing the user station 302 that the base station 304 is busy. The general request for access by the user station 302 may comprise a user station identifier, to allow the base station 304 to specifically  
5 address the user station 302 requesting access.

In one embodiment of the Fig. 7 system, the first receive time slot 511 of the receiving portion 504 is used solely for receiving RTT reply messages 701 or 702 to establish communication, unless all the other time slot  
10 pairs 510, 511 are busy, in which case the first receive time slot 511 could be used for data link communication. In the latter case, if another time slot pair 510, 511 becomes available as a result of communication terminating with a different user station 302, the user station 302  
15 occupying the first receive time slot 511 may be transferred to the available receive time slot 511, thus opening up the first receive time slot 511 for access by a new user station 302 seeking to establish communication with the same base station 304.

20 In the described embodiment, wherein both the collective guard portion 503 and the first receive time slot 511 of the receiving portion 504 are being used to receive RTT reply messages 701 or 702, the combined length of the collective guard time 503 and the first receive  
25 time slot 511 should be no less than the sum of the maximum round trip propagation time plus the duration of an RTT reply message 701 or 702.

In a variation of the Fig. 7 embodiment, only the collective guard portion 503 is used for initial  
30 communication link-up, and for receiving RTT reply messages 701. The first receive time slot 511 in this embodiment is not used for such a purpose. In this variation, the length of the collective guard portion 503 should be no less than the sum of the maximum round trip  
35 propagation time plus the duration of an RTT reply message 701.

After receiving an RTT reply message 701 or 702 at the base station 304, the manner of response of the base station 304 depends on the particular system protocol. As noted, the base station 304 may transmit using headers 550, but need not; the user station 302 may respond with an RTT reply message 701 or 702, with or without a specific time slot request; and the first receive time slot 511 may or may not be used to receive RTT reply messages 701 or 702. The manner of response of the base station 304 therefore depends on the particular structure of the system, and the particular embodiments described herein are not meant to limit the possible base/user station initial communication processes falling within the scope of the invention.

Where the first receive time slot 511 is being used along with the collective guard time 503 to receive RTT reply messages 701, 702, then the base station 304 may respond to an RTT reply message 701 or 702 with an initial communication response message in the first transmit time slot 510 of the transmit portion 502 of the immediately following time frame 501. The base station 304 may utilize a particular transmit time slot 510 (e.g., the first transmit time slot 510) for assisting in the initiation.

If an RTT reply message 701 or 702 identifies a specific time slot pair 510, 511 which the user station 302 desires to use for communication, then the base station 304 may respond to the user station 302 in either the header 550, the data message portion 551, or both, of the designated transmit time slot 510 in the next immediate time frame 510. If two user stations 302 send RTT reply messages 701 or 702 requesting the initiation of communication in the same time slot pair 510, 511, the base station 304 may send a response in the header 550 of the designated transmit time slot 510 selecting one of the two user stations 302 and instructing the other user station 302 to use a different time slot pair 510, 511 or

instruct it to backoff for a period of time, and may in the same time frame 501 transmit a data message in the data message portion 551 of the designated transmit time slot 510 intended for the selected user station 302.

5 If two user stations 302 attempt to access the base station 304 simultaneously (that is, within the same time frame 501), then the base station 304 may select the user station 302 with the stronger signal.

Alternatively, the base station 304 may initiate a  
10 backoff procedure or otherwise resolve the conflict as appropriate for the particular application. For example, the base station 304 may issue a backoff command which causes each user station 302 to back off for a variable period based on an internal programming parameter unique  
15 to each user station 302 (e.g., such as a unique user identification number).

As another alternative, the base station 304 may instruct one or both user stations 302 to relocate to a different slot pair 510, 511. If the reply messages 701,  
20 702 each contain a different time slot identifier (assuming that the user stations 302 had information as to which time slots were open, such as from the base station headers 550), then the base station 304 could initiate communication simultaneously with both user stations 302  
25 provided the reply messages 701, 702 were not corrupted by mutual interference (which may occur, for example, when the different user stations 302 are the same distance away from the base station 504).

As with the Fig. 5B embodiment, in the Fig. 7  
30 embodiment the RTT reply message 701 or 702 may be used by the base station 304 to ascertain the proper timing for the user station 302 by measuring the propagation delay in receiving the reply message 701 or 702. A user station 302 seeking to establish communication delays for a delay  
35 time  $\Delta T$  before sending a reply message 701 or 702 after receiving the base transmission 502. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the user station 302

to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the base transmission 502 to the time of actual receipt of the reply message 701 or 702, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

5        Once the propagation delay time has been determined, the base station 304 can command the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing by a desired amount, relative to the appropriate time slot pair 510, 511 to be used for communication. For example, the base station 304 may  
10        command the user station 302 to advance its timing by an amount of time equal to the round trip propagation time, so that the user station 302 transmits essentially at the very end of the abbreviated guard band 512. The user  
15        station 302 may, for example, advance or retard its timing using techniques developed and conventionally used in the GSM system described earlier, or by any other suitable means.

      The time delay  $\Delta T$  in Fig. 7 is preferably set equal to the larger of the transmit/receive switching time of  
20        the base station 304 and the receive/transmit switching time of the user station 302. This is to ensure that if the responding user station 302 is located extremely close to the base station 304, the delay of the user station 302 in switching from a receive mode to a transmit mode will  
25        not be included in the RTT measurement, and to allow the user station 302 adequate processing time. Once the user station 302 desiring to establish communication has detected the end of the base transmission 502, the user station 302 may commence its reply message 562 immediately  
30        after the delay time  $\Delta T$  without fear of interference, as it is not physically possible for the reply message 562 to overtake the outward-radiating forward link message so as to cause interference with the forward link reception by other user stations 302.

35        Figure 8A is an hardware block diagram of a base station 304 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. The base station 304 of Fig. 8A comprises a

data interface 805, a timing command unit 806, a transmitter 807, an antenna 808, a receiver 809, a mode control 810, a TDD state control 811, and a propagation delay calculator 812.

5       Timing control for the system of Fig. 8A is carried out by the TDD state control 811. The TDD state control 811 comprises appropriate means, such as counters and clock circuits, for maintaining synchronous operation of the TDD system. The TDD state control 811 thereby  
10       precisely times the duration of the time frame 501 and its constituent parts, including each of the transmit time slots 510, the receive time slots 511, the abbreviated guard bands 512, and the collective guard portion 503.

15       The TDD state control 811 may be synchronized from time to time with a system clock such as may be located in a base station controller, a cluster controller, or an associated network, so as to permit global synchronization among base stations in a zone or cluster.

20       The mode control 810 selects between a transmit mode and a receive mode of operation. The mode control 810 reads information from the TDD state control 811 to determine the appropriate mode. For example, at the end of the transmission portion 502, as indicated by status bits in the TDD state control 811, the mode control 810  
25       may switch modes from transmit mode to receive mode. At the end of the receiving portion 504, as indicated by status bits in the TDD state control 811, the mode control 810 may switch modes from receive mode to transmit mode.

30       During the transmit mode, data to be transmitted is provided to the data interface 805 from a data bus 813. The data interface 805 provides the data to be transmitted to a timing command unit 806. As explained in more detail herein, the timing command unit 806 formats the data to be transmitted to include, if desired, a timing adjustment  
35       command 815. The data output by the timing command unit 806 may be in a format such as the transmission portion

502 shown in Fig. 5A, whereby data targeted for each user station 302 is properly segregated.

The output of the timing command unit 806 is provided to the transmitter 807, which modulates the data for communication and transmits the data targeted for each user station 302 in the proper transmit time slot 510. The transmitter 807 obtains necessary timing information from either the mode control 810, or directly from the TDD state control 811. The transmitter 807 may comprise a spread spectrum modulator such as is known in the art. The data is transmitted by transmitter 807 from antenna 808.

The user stations 302 receive the transmitted data, formulate responsive user-to-base messages, and send the user-to-base messages in return order. A structure of a user station 302, whereby receipt of the transmissions from the base station 304 and formulation of responsive messages is carried out, is shown in Fig. 9 and described further below. The messages from the user stations 302 appear at the base station 304 in the receive time slots 511.

After switching from transmit mode to receive mode, the antenna 808 is used to receive data from the user stations 302. Although a single antenna 808 is shown in the Fig. 8A embodiment, different antennas may be used for transmit and receive functions, and multiple antennas may be used for purposes of achieving the benefits of antenna diversity. The antenna 808 is coupled to a receiver 809. The receiver 809 may comprise a demodulator or a spread spectrum correlator, or both. Demodulated data is provided to the data interface 805 and thereupon to the data bus 813. Demodulated data is also provided to the propagation delay calculator 812, which calculates the propagation delay time for the RTT transaction.

In operation, the timing command unit 806 inserts a timing adjustment command, such as a time period  $T$  (which may or may not include the delay period  $\Delta T$  used in the

initial round trip timing transaction), into the transmit time slot 510 instructing the user station 302 to delay sending its response by an amount of time equal to the time period T. The timing adjustment command may be placed at a designated position in a base-to-user message sent during the appropriate transmit time slot 510. For example, the timing adjustment command may be placed in a header 550 or a data message portion 551 of the transmit time slot 510. At initial communication link-up, the timing adjustment command is preferably set to the receive/transmit switching delay time of a user station 302, and is thereafter adjusted based on a calculated propagation delay time.

The user station 302 receiving the timing adjustment command delays sending its response by an amount of time designated thereby. The responsive message sent by the user station 302 is received by the receiver 809 and provided to the propagation delay calculator 812. The propagation delay calculator 812 obtains precise timing information from the TDD state control 811, so that the propagation delay calculator 812 may accurately determine the over-air propagation delay of the responsive message sent from the user station 302. Specifically, the propagation delay may be calculated as the difference in time between the time of actual receipt of the responsive message from the user station 302, and the amount of time equal to the time T past the beginning of the appropriate receive time slot 511 (plus the delay period  $\Delta T$  if such a delay is programmed into each user response).

In a preferred embodiment, the propagation delay calculator 812 then calculates a new timing adjustment command 815 for the particular user station 302. The new timing adjustment command 815 is preferably selected so that the responsive message from the user station 302 in the following time frame 501 begins at the end of the abbreviated guard band 512 and does not overlap with the responsive message from any other user station 302. For

example, the new timing adjustment command 815 may be equal to the calculated round-trip propagation time for the particular user station 302.

The timing adjustment command 815 may be updated as often as necessary to maintain a sufficient quality of communication between the base station 304 and all of the user stations 302. The propagation delay calculator 812 therefore preferably stores the calculated timing adjustment command 815 for each independent user station 302. As the user station 302 moves closer to the base station 304, the timing adjustment command 815 is increased, while as the user station 302 moves farther away from the base station 304, the timing adjustment command 815 is decreased. Thus, in a dynamic manner, the timing of the user stations 302 is advanced or retarded, and the ongoing communications between the base station 304 and the user stations 302 will not be interrupted by overlapping responsive user-to-base messages received from the user stations 302.

Figure 8B is a hardware block diagram of an alternative embodiment of a base station 304. The Fig. 8B base station is similar to that of Fig. 8A, except that a start counter command and a stop counter command are employed as follows. At the start of a base transmission from the transmitter 807, a start counter command 830 is sent from the transmitter 807 to the TDD state control 811 for the target user station 302. When the receiver 809 receives a response from the target user station 302, the user station sends a stop counter command 831 to the TDD state control 811 for the target user station 302. The value stored in the counter for the particular user station 302 represents the round trip propagation delay time. A separate counter may be employed for each user station 302 with which the base station 304 is in contact.

Figure 9 is a hardware block diagram of a user station 302 in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention. The user station 302 of Fig. 9



comprises a data interface 905, a timing command interpreter 906, a transmitter 907, an antenna 908, a receiver 909, a mode control 910, and a TDD state control 911.

5       Timing control for the system of Fig. 9 is carried out by the TDD state control 911. The TDD state control 911 comprises appropriate means, such as counters and clock circuits, for maintaining synchronous operation of the user station 302 within the TDD system. The TDD state  
10 control 911 thereby precisely times the duration of the time frame 501 and its constituent parts, including each of the transmit time slots 510, the receive time slots 511, the abbreviated guard bands 512, and the collective guard portion 503.

15       The mode control 910 selects between a transmit mode and a receive mode of operation. The mode control 910 reads information from the TDD state control 911 to determine the appropriate mode. For example, the mode control 910, in response to status bits in the TDD state  
20 control 911, may switch modes to a receive mode during the appropriate transmit time slot 510 of the time frame 501. The mode control 910 may switch modes, in response to status bits in the TDD state control 911, to transmit mode during the appropriate receive time slot 511. At other  
25 times, the mode control 910 may maintain a dormant mode, or may be kept in a receive mode in order to monitor transmissions from the base station 304, to monitor the activity of other nearby base stations 304, or for other purposes.

30       During the transmit mode, data to be transmitted is provided to the data interface 905 from a data bus 913. The data interface 905 provides the data to be transmitted to the transmitter 907, which modulates the data for communication and transmits the data in the appropriate  
35 receive time slot 511. The transmitter 907 obtains necessary timing information from either the mode control 910, or directly from the TDD state control 911. The

transmitter 907 may (but need not) comprise a spread spectrum modulator such as is known in the art. The data is transmitted by transmitter 907 from antenna 908.

5 The base station 304 receives the transmitted data, formulates responsive base-to-user messages as desired, and sends the base-to-user messages in the appropriate transmit time slot 510.

10 In receive mode, the antenna 908 is used to receive data from the base station 304. Although a single antenna 908 is shown in the Fig. 9 embodiment, different antennas may be used for transmit and receive functions, or multiple antennas may be used to obtain antenna diversity. The antenna 908 is coupled to a receiver 909. The receiver 909 may comprise a demodulator or a spread  
15 spectrum correlator, or both. Demodulated data is provided to the data interface 905 and thereupon to the data bus 913. Demodulated data is also provided to the timing command interpreter 906, which applies the timing adjustment command received from the base station 304.

20 In operation, the timing command interpreter 906 parses the data received from the base station 304 to determine the timing adjustment command. Assuming the timing adjustment command comprises a time  $T$  equal to the calculated round-trip propagation (RTT) time, the timing  
25 command interpreter 906 may reset the clocks and/or timers in the TDD state control 911 at the appropriate instant (such as around the start of the next time frame 501) so as to achieve global re-alignment of its timing. If the timing adjustment command is an instruction to advance  
30 timing by an amount of time  $T$ , then the timing command interpreter 906 may reset the TDD state control 911 at a period of time  $T$  just prior to the elapsing of the current time frame 501. If the timing adjustment command is an instruction to retard timing by an amount of time  $T$ , then  
35 the timing command interpreter 906 may reset the TDD state control 911 at a period of time  $T$  just after the elapsing of the current time frame 501.

The timing adjustment command may, as noted, be expressed in terms of a number of bits or chips by which the user station 302 should advance or retard its timing. The timing adjustment command may also be expressed in terms of a fractional timing unit (e.g., milliseconds).

Alternatively, the timing command interpreter 906 may maintain an internal timing adjustment variable, thereby utilizing a delta modulation technique. The internal timing adjustment variable is updated each time a timing adjustment command is received from the base station 304. If the timing adjustment command is an instruction to advance timing, then the timing adjustment variable is decreased by an amount  $T$ . If the timing adjustment command is an instruction to retard timing, then the timing adjustment variable is increased by an amount  $T$ . The timing adjustment variable may be added to the output of the TDD state control 511 in order to synchronize to the base station timing. Alternatively, the timing adjustment variable may be provided directly to the transmitter 907 and the receiver 909, which alter the timing of their operations accordingly.

The timing command interpreter 906 may comprise a first order tracking circuit which integrates the requested change in transmission timing from time period to time period, and adjusts the timing of the user station 302 transmission on such a basis.

Figure 5C is a timing diagram, illustrated from a base station perspective, showing a variation of the TDD/TDM/TDMA system of Fig. 5A using an interleaved symbol transmission format. In Fig. 5C, a time frame 570 is divided into a transmission portion 571, a collective guard time portion 576, and a receiving portion 572, similar to Fig. 5A or Fig. 7. During the transmission portion 571, the base station 304 transmits to a plurality of user stations 302 during a plurality of transmit time slots 574. In each transmit time slot 574, rather than sending a message directed to a single user station 302,

the base station 304 sends an interleaved message 578 containing a sub-message 589 for each of the user stations 302 (or a sub-message 589 for general polling or other functions if the receive time slot is unoccupied). The  
5 user stations 302 therefore receive a portion of their total incoming message from each of the transmit time slots 574, and must listen over the entire transmission portion 571 to obtain their entire message for the time frame 570.

10 In more detail, as shown in Fig. 5C, each transmit time slot 574 comprises a plurality of sub-messages 589, preferably one sub-message 589 for each receive time slot 575 (and therefore one sub-message 589 for each potential user station 302). For example, if there are 16 transmit  
15 time slots 574 and 16 receive time slots 575, each transmit time slot 574 would comprises 16 sub-messages 589, denoted in order 589-1, 589-2, ... 589-16. Each sub-message 589 preferably comprises the same number of symbols, e.g. 40 symbols. The first sub-message 589-1 is  
20 intended for the first user station 302, the second sub-message 589-2 is intended for the second user station 302, and so on, up to the last sub-message 589-16. A user station 302 reads part of its incoming message from the appropriate sub-message 589 in the first transmit time  
25 slot 574, the next part of its incoming message from the appropriate sub-message 589 of the second transmit time slot, and so on, until the last transmit time slot 574, in which the user station 302 receives the last part of its message.

30 In each transmit time slot 574, preceding the interleaved message 578 is a preamble 577. The preamble 577 assists the user station 302 in synchronization, and may comprise a spread spectrum code. Preambles 577 appear  
35 throughout the transmission portion 574, therefore allowing the user station 302 to support channel sounding operations useful for setting up a rake receiver (e.g.,

synchronization) and/or selection diversity. Because the user station 302 obtains its information over the entire transmission portion 571, the communication path is less sensitive to sudden fading or interference affecting only a relatively brief period of the transmission portion 571. Thus, if interference or fading corrupt information in a particular transmit time slot 574 (e.g., the second transmit time slot 574), the user station 302 would still have 15 sub-messages 589 received without being subject to such interference or fading.

By employing forward error correction techniques, the user station 302 can correct for one or more sub-messages 589 received in error. A preferred forward error correction technique utilizes Reed-Solomon codes, which can be generated by algorithms generally known in the art. The number of erroneous sub-messages 589 that can be corrected is given by the equation  $\text{INT}[(R - K)/2]$ , where  $R$  = the number of symbols sent to a user station 302 over a burst period,  $K$  = the number of symbols used for traffic information (i.e., non-error correction), and  $\text{INT}$  represents the function of rounding down to the nearest integer. Thus, for a Reed-Solomon code designated  $R(N, K)$  =  $R(40, 31)$ , up to  $\text{INT}[(40 - 31)/2] = 4$  erroneous sub-messages 589 can be corrected.

Although a particular symbol interleaving scheme is shown in Fig. 5C, other symbol interleaving techniques, such as diagonal interleaving, may also be used.

The user stations 302 respond over the reverse link in generally the same manner as described with respect to Figs. 5A or 7. Thus, the user stations 302 respond with a user transmission in a designated receive time slot 575 of the receive portion 572. The receive time slot 575 comprises a preamble 579 and a user message 580. The receive time slots 575 are separated by abbreviated guard times 573, and ranging may be used to instruct the user stations 302 to advance or retard their timing as previously mentioned.

Figure 5D is a chart comparing performance of a particular TDD/TDM/TDMA system in accordance with Fig. 5A, without forward error correction, and a particular system in accordance with Fig. 5C, with forward error correction. Figure 5D plots frame error probability against signal-to-noise ratio ( $E_b/N_o$ ), in dB. In Fig. 5D are shown separate plots for different rake diversity channels  $L$  (i.e., resolvable multipaths) of 1, 2 and 4. The solid plot lines in Fig. 5D represent the performance of the Fig. 5A system without forward error correction, while the dotted plot lines represent the performance of the Fig. 5C system with Reed-Solomon forward error correction. Figure 5D thus illustrates a substantial reduction in frame error probability over the Fig. 5A system by use of interleaved symbol transmission and forward error correction.

Another embodiment of a time frame structure and associated timing components for carrying out communication between a base station and multiple user stations is shown in Figs. 10A-E. Figure 10A is a diagram of timing sub-elements having predefined formats for use in a time division duplex system. The three timing sub-elements shown in Fig. 10A may be used to construct a time division duplex frame structure, such as the frame structures shown in Figs. 10B-E. Although systems constructed in accordance with Figs. 10A-E preferably use spread spectrum for communication, spread spectrum is not required. However, the following description assumes the use of spread spectrum techniques. For the present example, a chipping rate of 5 MHz is preferred.

In Fig. 10A are shown a base timing sub-element 1001, a user datalink timing sub-element 1011, and a range timing sub-element 1021. For each of these sub-elements 1001, 1011, and 1021, as explained more fully below, timing is shown from the perspective of the base station 304 with the initial range of the user station 302 at zero for range timing sub-element 1021.

The base timing sub-element 1001 comprises a base preamble interval 1002, a base message interval 1003, and a transmit/receive switch interval 1004. The base preamble interval 1002 may be 56 chips in length. The  
5 base message interval 1003 may be 205 bits in length (or, equivalently, 1312 chips if using 32-ary encoding). In a preferred 32-ary encoding technique, each sequence of five data bits is represented by a unique spread spectrum code of 32 chips in length. The number of spread spectrum  
10 codes used is 32, each the same number of chips long (e.g., 32 chips), to represent all possible combinations of five data bits. From the set of 32 spread spectrum codes, individual spread spectrum codes are selectively combined in series to form a transmission in the base  
15 message interval 1003. The base message interval 1003 comprises a total of up to 41 5-bit data sequences, for a total of 205 bits; thus, a transmission in the base message interval 1003 may comprise a series of up to 41 spread spectrum codes, each selected from the set of 32  
20 spread spectrum codes, for a total of 1312 chips.

Although the present preferred system of Figs 10A-E is described using a 32-ary spread spectrum coding technique, other spread spectrum techniques, including other M-ary encoding schemes (such as 4-ary, 16-ary, etc.)  
25 may also be used, depending on the particular system needs.

The transmit/receive switch interval 1004 is preferably selected as a length of time sufficient to enable the switching of the base station 304 from a  
30 transmit mode to a receive mode or, in some embodiments, to enable the switching of a user station 302 from a receive mode to a transmit mode, and may be, for example, two microseconds in length.

The user datalink timing sub-element 1011 and the  
35 range timing sub-element 1021 each generally provide for transmissions by more than one user station 302. As explained further below, each of these timing sub-elements

1011, 1021 provides for transmission by a first user station 302 of a data message or a ranging message in the first part of the timing sub-element 1011 or 1021, and transmission by a second user station 302 of a control pulse preamble in the latter part of the timing sub-  
5 element 1011 or 1021. The control pulse preamble, as further described below, generally allows the base station 304 to carry out certain functions (e.g., power control) with respect to the second user station 302.

10 The user datalink timing sub-element 1011 comprises a datalink preamble interval 1012, a user message interval 1013, a guard band 1014, a transmit/receive switch interval 1015, a second preamble interval 1016, an antenna adjustment interval 1017, a second guard band 1018, and a  
15 second transmit/receive switch interval 1019. The preamble intervals 1012, 1016 may each be 56 chips in length. The user message interval 1013 may be 205 bits in length, or 1312 chips, using the 32-ary spread spectrum coding technique described above with respect to the base  
20 timing sub-element 1001. The guard bands 1014, 1018 may each be 102.5 chips in length. The transmit/receive switch intervals 1015, 1019 may each be of a duration sufficient to allow proper switching between transmit and receive modes, or between receive and transmit modes, as  
25 the case may be. The antenna adjustment interval 1017 may be of sufficient duration to allow transmission of a data symbol indicating selection of a particular antenna beam or permitting minor adjustments to the angle of a directional antenna at the base station 302, or permitting  
30 selection of one or more antennas if the base station 302 is so equipped.

The range timing sub-element 1021 comprises a ranging preamble interval 1022, a user ranging message interval 1023, a ranging guard band 1024, a transmit/receive switch  
35 interval 1025, a second preamble interval 1026, an antenna adjustment interval 1027, a second guard band 1028, and a second transmit/receive switch interval 1029. The



preamble intervals 1022, 1026 may each be 56 chips in length. The user ranging message interval 1023 may be 150 bits in length, or 960 chips, using the 32-ary spread spectrum coding technique described above with respect to  
5 the base timing sub-element 1001. The ranging guard band 1024 may be 454.5 chips in length. The other guard band 1028 may be 102.5 chips in length. The transmit/receive switch intervals 1025, 1029 may each be of a duration sufficient to allow proper switching between transmit and  
10 receive modes, or between receive and transmit modes, as the case may be. The antenna adjustment interval 1027 may be of sufficient duration to allow transmission of a data symbol for selecting a particular antenna beam or permitting minor adjustments to the angle of a directional  
15 antenna at the base station 302, or permitting selection of one or more antennas if the base station 302 is so equipped.

The total length of the base timing sub-element 1001 may be 1400 chips. The total length of each of the user  
20 datalink timing sub-element 1011 and the range timing sub-element 1021 may be 1725 chips. For these particular exemplary values, a chipping rate of 5 MHz is assumed.

Figure 10B is a timing diagram for a fixed time division duplex frame structure (or alternatively, a zero  
25 offset TDD frame structure) using the timing sub-elements depicted in Fig. 10A. The frame structure of Fig. 10B, as well as of Figs. 10C-E described below, is shown from the perspective of the base station 304.

In Fig. 10B, a time frame 1040 comprises a plurality  
30 of time slots 1041. For convenience, time slots are also designated in sequential order as TS1, TS2, TS3, etc. Each time slot 1041 comprises a base timing sub-element 1001 and either a user datalink timing sub-element 1011 or a range timing sub-element 1021. While the frame  
35 structure of Fig. 10B supports range timing sub-elements 1021, it is contemplated that communication in the Fig. 10B system, which may be denoted a fixed framing

structure, will ordinarily occur using user datalink timing sub-elements 1011.

It may be noted that the designated starting point of the time slots TS1, TS2, TS3, etc. is to some degree arbitrary in the Fig. 10B frame structure and various of the other embodiments as are described further herein. Accordingly, the frame structure may be defined such that time slots each start at the beginning of the user timing sub-elements 1011 or 1021, or at the start of the preamble interval 1016, or at the start or end of any particular timing interval, without changing the operation of the system in a material way.

In operation, the base station 304 transmits, as part of the base timing sub-element 1001 of each time slot 1041, to user stations 302 in sequence with which it has established communication. Thus, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the preamble interval 1002 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003. In the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, the base station 304 switches from a transmit mode to a receive mode. Likewise, the user station 302 during the transmit/receive switch interval 1004 switches from a receive mode to a transmit mode.

In the first time slot TS1, the base-to-user message transmitted in the base message interval 1003 is directed to a first user station M1, which may be mobile. After the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, the first user station M1 responds with a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1012 and with a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1013. Proper timing is preferably set upon initial establishment of communication, and the transmissions from the user stations, such as the first user station M1, may be maintained in time alignment as seen at the base station 304 by timing adjustment commands from the base station 304, such as the timing adjustment commands described with respect to Figs. 8-9 and elsewhere herein. However, a

round-trip guard time must be included in each time slot 1041 so as to allow the base-to-user message to propagate to the user station 302 and the user-to-base message to propagate to the base station 304. The depiction of the exploded time slot TS1 in Fig. 10B is generally shown with the assumption that the user station M1 is at zero distance from the base station 304; hence, the user-to-base messages appear in Fig. 10B directly after the transmit/receive switch interval 1004 of the base timing sub-element 1001. However, if the user station M1 is not immediately adjacent to the base station 304, then part of guard time 1014 will be consumed in the propagation of the user-to-base message to the base station 304. Thus, if the user station M1 is at the cell periphery, then the user-to-base message will appear at the base station 304 after the elapsing of a time period equal at most to the duration of guard time 1014. Timing adjustment commands from the base station 304 may allow a shorter maximum necessary guard time 1014 than would otherwise be possible.

After the transmission of the user-to-base message from the first user station M1, which may, as perceived by the base station 304, consume up to all of the user message interval 1013 and the guard band 1014, is another transmit/receive switch interval 1015. Following the transmit/receive switch interval 1015, a control pulse preamble is received from a second user station M2 during the preamble interval 1016. The function of the control pulse preamble is explained in more detail below. Following the preamble interval 1016 is an antenna adjustment interval 1017, during which the base station 304 adjusts its transmission antenna, if necessary, so as to direct it towards the second user station M2. Following the antenna adjustment interval 1017 is another guard band 1018, which accounts for the propagation time of the control pulse preamble to the base station 304. After the preamble interval is another transmit/receive

switching interval 1019 to allow the base station 304 opportunity to switch from a receive mode to a transmit mode, and to allow the second user station M2 opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

5       The control pulse preamble received during the preamble interval 1016 preferably serves a number of functions. The control pulse preamble may be used by the base station 304 to determine information about the communication link with the user station 302. Thus, the  
10       control pulse preamble may provide the base station 304 with a power measurement indicative of the path transmission loss and link quality over the air channel. The base station 304 may determine the quality of the received signal, including the received power and the  
15       signal-to-noise ratio. The base station 304 may also determine, in response to the power, envelope, or phase of the control pulse preamble, the direction or distance of the user station 302, and the degree of noise or multipath error to which the communication link with the user  
20       station 302 may be prone.

      In response to receiving the control pulse preamble in the preamble interval 1016 and determining the quality of the received signal and other operating parameters, the base station 304 may if necessary send a message  
25       commanding the user station 302 to adjust its power. Based on the quality of the received signal, the base station 304 may command the user station 302 to change (i.e., increase or decrease) its transmit power by a discrete amount (e.g, in minimum steps of 3 dB) relative  
30       to its current setting, until the quality of the control pulse preamble as periodically received by the base station 304 in the preamble interval 1016 is above an acceptable threshold.

      After the base station 304 determines the power  
35       setting of the user station 302, the base station 304 may adjust its own power as well. The base station 304 may adjust its power separately for each time slot 1041.

A preferred power control command from the base station 304 to the user station 302 may be encoded according to the Table 10-1 below:

Table 10-1

<u>Power Control Command</u>	<u>Adjustment</u>
000	No change
001	-3 dB
010	-6 dB
011	-9 dB
100	+3 dB
101	+6 dB
110	+12 dB
111	+21 dB

15

Although preferred values are provided in Table 10-1, the number of power control command steps and the differential therebetween may vary depending upon the particular application and the system requirements. Further details regarding the use of a control pulse preamble (i.e., control pulse) as a power control mechanism, and other related details, may be found in copending Application Serial Nos. 08/215,306 and 08/293,671, filed March 21, 1994 and August 1, 1994, respectively, both in the name of inventors Gary B. Anderson, Ryan N. Jensen, Bryan K. Petch, and Peter O. Peterson, both entitled "PCS Pocket Phone/Microcell Communication Over-Air Protocol," and both of which are hereby incorporated by reference as if fully set forth herein.

Returning to Fig. 10B, in the following time slot TS2 after time slot TS1, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the base preamble interval 1002 and transmits a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003, both directed to the second user station M2. The base station 304 thereby rapidly responds to the control pulse preamble sent by the user station M2. As with the first time slot TS1, following the base message

interval 1003 is a transmit/receive switch interval 1004 during which the base station 304 switches to a receive mode and the user station M2 switches to a transmit mode. The user station M2 then responds with a preamble in the  
5 datalink preamble interval 1012 and a user-to-base message in the user message interval 1013. The remaining steps in time slot TS2 are similar to those of the first time slot TS1, except with respect to the preamble interval 1016 as noted below.

10 It is assumed in the exemplary time frame 1040 of Fig. 10B that there is no established communication link in the third time slot TS3, and therefore the third time slot TS3 is free for communication. Because no user station 302 is in established communication during time  
15 slot TS3, no control pulse preamble is transmitted during the preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2. The base station 304 may indicate that a particular time slot 1041, such as time slot TS3, is available for communication by, for example, transmitting a general  
20 polling message during the base message interval 1003 of the time slot TS3.

Should a third user station M3 desire to establish communication with the base station 304, then, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling  
25 message during the base message interval 1003 of the third time slot TS3, the third user station M3 sends a general polling response message in a user message interval 1013 of the time slot TS3. When the third user station M3 responds with the general polling response message, the  
30 base station 304 may determine the range of the user station M3 and thereby determine a required timing adjustment for subsequent transmissions by the user station M3.

For efficiency reasons, the guard times 1014 and 1018  
35 are preferably kept to a minimum. The smaller the guard times 1014, 1018, the more user stations 302 may be supported by the frame structure of Fig. 10B. Typically,

therefore, the guard times 1014, 1018 will not be of sufficient duration to allow a full ranging transaction to occur. In particular, a ranging transaction (such as may be carried out using timing sub-element 1021 instead of timing sub-element 1011) may result in interference between the transmission of a user station 302 seeking to establish communication and the control pulse preamble of the user station 302 already in communication in the immediately following time slot 1041 with the base station 304. If the guard times are lengthened to permit ranging transactions, then fewer user stations 302 can be supported, particularly in a large cell environment. An alternative structure having improved efficiency in a large cell environment, along with the flexibility of ranging transactions, is shown in Figs. 10D and 10E and explained in more detail below.

It may be possible to minimize potential interference between ranging messages and control pulse preambles by using a particular designated spread spectrum code for only ranging messages, or for only control pulse preambles. However, code division multiplexing in such a manner may not provide satisfactory isolation between the interfering signals.

If a ranging transaction is supported in the Fig. 10B environment, then the latter portion of the time slot TS3 may comprise a range timing sub-element 1021, as described previously with respect to Fig. 10A, during which a ranging transaction is carried out between the base station 304 and user station M3, instead of timing sub-element 1011. In such a case, the user station M3 transmits a preamble during a ranging preamble interval 1022 of time slot TS3, and transmits a ranging message during the user ranging message interval 1023 of time slot TS3. The user station M3 delays transmitting the preamble and ranging message for an amount of time  $\Delta T$ . The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be communicated by the base station 304 as part of the general polling message, or may be a pre-

programmed system parameter. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the user station M3 to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the base message interval 1003 (i.e., the earliest possible receipt of the preamble and ranging message) to the time of actual receipt of the responsive preamble and ranging message from the user station M3, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

10 The ranging guard band 1024 in time slot TS3 is preferably of sufficient length to allow the ranging transaction between the base station 304 and the user station M3 to occur. Thus, the length of the ranging guard band 1024 is determined in part by the radius of the cell 303 in which the base station 304 is located, or may  
15 be determined in part by the maximum cell radius of the cellular system.

In response to receiving the ranging message from the user station M3 and determining the distance of the user station 302 and/or the propagation delay time thereto, the  
20 base station 304 may issue a timing adjustment command to the user station M3 in the next time frame 1040 instructing the user station M3 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount. For the time frame 1040  
25 immediately after communication with the user station M3 is established, the timing adjustment command may be set equal to the round-trip propagation time as determined by the base station 304 during the ranging transaction. Preferably, the timing adjustment command is selected so  
30 as to cause the user transmission from the user station M3 to the base station 304 in the subsequent time frame 1040 to be received by the base station 304 immediately after the end of the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, as described with respect to Fig. 10A.

35 In addition to its use for ranging purposes, the ranging message may also contain other information to assist the base station 304 in handshaking with the user



station M3. For example, the ranging message may contain as data a user identifier for the user station M3 seeking to establish communication. The ranging message may also indicate a preferred spread spectrum code to be used by the base station 304 and the particular user station M3 in subsequent communications.

The base station 304 may determine the range of the user station 302 by using the reception time of the control pulse preamble (or, alternatively, the user-to-base message) and periodically issue a timing adjustment command during the base-to-user message interval directed to the user station 302.

Figure 10C shows a subsequent time frame 1040 after communication has been established between the base station 304 and the third user station M3, with or without the use of a ranging transaction. In Fig. 10C, the transactions occurring in the first time slot TS1 between the user station M1 and the base station 304 are the same as those for Fig. 10B. Also, the transactions occurring in the second time slot TS2 between the user station M2 and the base station 304 are the same as those for Fig. 10B. However, during the second time slot TS2, instead of there being no transmitted control pulse preamble in the preamble interval 1016, the third user station M3 transmits a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2. Alternatively, the user station M3 may wait until the base station 304 acknowledges its ranging message, sent in the prior time frame 1040, before transmitting a control pulse preamble in each time slot TS2 preceding its designated time slot TS3 for communication.

The base station 304 may use the control pulse preamble for a variety of purposes, including power control and other purposes, as previously described. In the third time slot TS3 of Fig. 10C, the base station 304 may send an acknowledgment signal to the user station M3 during the base message interval 1003. The acknowledgment

signal may be sent using a spread spectrum code determined by a user identifier sent by the user station M3 as part of the ranging message. As part of the acknowledgment signal, or in addition thereto, the base station 304 sends  
5 a timing adjustment command instructing the user station M3 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount.

In the following time frames 1040, after establishing communication with the third user station M3 in the manner described above, communication may be carried out between  
10 the base station 304 and the third user station M3 in time slot TS3. In each preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2, the user station M3 transmits a control pulse preamble allowing the base station 304 to exercise power control, synchronize to the user station M3, or  
15 determine the distance of the user station M3. The base station 304 then sends a transmission directed to the user station M3 in the first portion of the third time slot TS3, and the user station M3 responds with a transmission directed to the base station 304 in the latter portion of  
20 the third time slot TS3. As part of each transmission from the base station 304, the base station 304 may update the timing adjustment command to the user station M3.

Should a user station 302 terminate communication in a time slot 1041 or be handed off to a new base station  
25 304, then the base station 304 may begin to transmit a general polling message during the newly opened time slot 1041, indicating that the time slot 1041 is free for communication. New user stations 302 may thereby establish communication with the same base station 304.

30 Figure 10D is a timing diagram for another embodiment of a frame structure in accordance with certain aspects of the present invention. Figure 10D shows an interleaved time division duplex frame structure using the timing sub-elements depicted in Fig. 10A. A time frame 1050  
35 comprises a plurality of time slots 1051. For convenience, time slots 1051 are designated in sequential order as TS1', TS2', TS3', etc. Each time slot 1051

comprises a base timing sub-element 1001 and either a user datalink timing sub-element 1011 or a user ranging sub-element 1021, as described in more detail below.

The primary difference between the frame structure of Figs. 10B-C and the frame structure of Fig. 10D is that the frame structure of Fig. 10D may be considered interleaved in the sense that each user station 302 does not respond immediately to the communication from the base station 304 intended for it, but rather delays its response until a subsequent time slot 1051. The effect of the interleaved frame structure of Fig. 10D is that guard times can be shorter, allowing more time slots 1051 per time frame 1050, and therefore more user stations 302 per base station 304. The interleaved frame structure of Fig. 10D also allows efficient use of ranging transactions between the base station and the user stations, particularly upon initial link-up of communication. Because the frame structure of Fig. 10D is interleaved, the first time slot TS1' comprises a transmission from the base station 304 to the first user station M1 and a responsive transmission, not from the first user station M1, but from the last user station MN.

In operation of the Fig. 10D system, the base station 304 transmits, as part of the base timing sub-element 1001 of each time slot 1051, to user stations 302 with which it has established communication. The base station 304 thus transmits a preamble during the preamble interval 1002 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003. In the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, the base station 304 switches from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

In the first time slot TS1', the base-to-user message transmitted in the base message interval 1003 is directed to a first user station M1, which may be mobile. After the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, the last user station MN to have been sent a message from the base station in the last time slot TSN' of the prior time frame

1050 transmits a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1012 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1013. The frame structure of Fig. 10D, as noted previously, is shown from a perspective of the base station 304, and the transmissions from the user stations, such as user station MN, are maintained in time alignment as seen by the base station 304 by timing adjustment commands from the base station 304, similar to the timing adjustment commands described elsewhere herein. Proper timing is preferably set upon initial establishment of communication, by use of a ranging transaction.

After the transmission of the user-to-base message from the first user station M1, which may, as perceived by the base station 304, consume up to all of the user message interval 1013 and the guard band 1014, is another transmit/receive switch interval 1015. Following is another transmit/receive switch interval 1015 to allow appropriate switching of modes. Following the transmit/receive switch interval 1015, a control pulse preamble is received from a second user station M2 during the preamble interval 1016. The control pulse preamble sent during the preamble interval 1016 may serve functions such as those described with respect to the Fig. 10B-C embodiments. Thus, the base station 304 may determine, in response to the power, envelope, or phase of the control pulse preamble, the direction or distance of the user station M2, and/or the degree of noise or multipath error to which the communication link with the user station M2 may be prone. The base station 304 may command the user station M2 to adjust its power based on the quality and strength of the received control pulse preamble.

After the preamble interval 1016 is an antenna adjustment interval 1017 during which the base station 304 has opportunity to adjust its transmission antenna, if necessary, to direct it towards the second user station M2. Following the preamble interval 1016 is an antenna adjustment interval 1017, during which the base station

304 adjusts its transmission antenna, if necessary, so as to direct it towards the second user station M2. Following the antenna adjustment interval 1017 is another guard band 1018, which accounts for the propagation time of the control pulse preamble to the base station 304. After the preamble interval is another transmit/receive switching interval 1019 to allow the base station 304 opportunity to switch from a receive mode to a transmit mode, and to allow the second user station M2 opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

In the following time slot TS2 after time slot TS1, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the base preamble interval 1002 and transmits a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003, both directed to the second user station M2. The base station 304 thereby rapidly responds to the control pulse sent by the user station M2. As with the first time slot TS1', following the base message interval 1003 occurs a transmit/receive switch interval 1004 during which the base station 304 switches to a receive mode. Unlike the Fig. 10B-C embodiment, in which the latter portion of the time slot TS2' is used for receiving a transmission from the second user station M2, in the Fig. 10D embodiment the latter portion of the time slot TS2' is used for receiving a transmission from the first user station M1. While the first user station M1 is in the process of transmitting, the second user station M2 thus has the opportunity to process the data received from the base station 304 during the same time slot TS2', and to transmit a responsive transmission timed to arrive at the base station 304 in the following time slot TS3' without interfering with other transmissions from either the base station 304 or other user stations 302.

Thus, in the second time slot TS2', the base station receives from the first user station M1 a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1012 and a user-to-base message in the user message interval 1013.

It is assumed in the exemplary time frame 1050 shown of Fig. 10D that there is no established communication link in the duplex channel comprising the base portion of the third time slot TS3' and the user portion of the fourth time slot TS4', and therefore that particular duplex channel is free for communication. Because no user station 302 is in established communication during the duplex channel, no control pulse preamble is transmitted during the preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2'. The base station 304 may indicate that a particular duplex channel is available for communication by, for example, transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1003 of the duplex channel, such as during the base message interval 1003 of time slot TS3'.

Should a new user station M3 desire to establish communication with the base station 304, then the new user station M3 waits until an open user portion of a time slot 1051, such as the fourth time slot TS4' in the present example, to take action. Thus, ordinary communication is carried out between the base station 304 and the second user station M2 in the latter portion of the third time slot TS3' in a manner similar to that of the first user station M1. Moreover, because another user station M4 is in established communication with the base station 304, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1016 of the third time slot TS3' from the next user station M4. In the subsequent time slot TS4', the base station 304 sends a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003 to the user station M4. The user station M4 responds with a user-to-base message in the following time slot TS5'.

In the meantime, during the fourth time slot TS4', the new user station M3 attempts to establish communication with the base station 304. Thus, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1003 of the third time slot TS3', the new user station M3 sends a

general polling response message in a user message interval 1013 of the following time slot TS4'. When the new user station M3 responds with the general polling response message, the base station 304 may determine the range of the user station M3 and thereby determine a required timing adjustment for subsequent transmissions by the user station M3.

The latter portion of the time slot TS4' preferably comprises a range timing sub-element 1021 as previously described with respect to Fig. 10A. Thus, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling message in the base message interval 1003 of the third time slot TS3', the new user station M3 sends a ranging message in a user ranging message interval 1023 of the following time slot TS4'. The depiction of the exploded time slot TS4' in frame structure in Fig. 10D assumes that the user station M3 is at zero distance from the base station 304; hence, the user-to-base messages appear in Fig. 10D directly after the transmit/receive switch interval 1004 of the base timing sub-element 1001. However, if the user station M3 is not immediately adjacent to the base station 304, then part of guard time 1014 will be consumed in the propagation of the user-to-base message to the base station 304. Thus, if the user station M3 is at the cell periphery, then the user-to-base message will appear at the base station 304 after the elapsing of a time period equal at most to the duration of guard time 1014. Timing adjustment commands from the base station 304 may allow a shorter maximum necessary guard time 1014 than would otherwise be possible.

When the base station 304 receives the response from the new user station M3, the base station 304 may determine the range of the user station M3 and thereby determine a required timing advance for subsequent transmissions by the user station M3.

In more detail, a ranging transaction is carried out between the base station 304 and the user station M3,

whereby the user station M3 transmits a preamble during a ranging preamble interval 1022 of time slot TS4' and a ranging message during the user ranging message interval 1023 of time slot TS4'. The user station M3 delays  
5 transmitting the preamble and ranging message for an amount of time  $\Delta T$ . The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be communicated by the base station 304 as part of the general polling message, or may be a pre-programmed system parameter. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the  
10 user station M3 to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the base message interval 1003 in the fourth time slot TS4' (i.e., the earliest possible receipt of the preamble and ranging message) to the time of actual receipt of the responsive  
15 preamble and ranging message from the user station M3, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

The ranging guard band 1024 in time slot TS4' is preferably of sufficient length to allow the ranging transaction between the base station 304 and the user  
20 station M3 to occur. Thus, the length of the ranging guard band 1024 is determined in part by the radius of the cell 303 in which the base station 304 is located, or may be determined in part by the maximum cell radius of the cellular system.

25 In response to receiving the ranging message from the user station M3 and determining the distance of the user station 302 and/or the propagation delay time thereto, the base station 304 may issue a timing adjustment command to the user station M3 in the next time frame 1050  
30 instructing the user station M3 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount. For the time frame 1050 immediately after communication with the user station M3 is established, the timing adjustment command may be set equal to the round-trip propagation time as determined by  
35 the base station 304 during the ranging transaction. Preferably, the timing adjustment command is selected so as to cause the user transmission from the user station M3



to the base station 304 in the subsequent time frame 1050 to be received by the base station 304 immediately after the end of the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, as described with respect to Fig. 10A, giving the base station 304 an opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode, but not interfering with the base-to-user message sent in the base message interval 1003.

The base station 304 may periodically instruct a user station 302 to adjust its timing by issuing subsequent timing adjustment commands, e.g., as often as each time frame. The base station 304 may monitor the distance of the user station 302 by measuring the time of receipt of the user-to-base message. Preferably, however, the base station 304 monitors the range of the user station 302 by using the reception time of the control pulse preamble, because of the preamble's known timing and message structure, and responds during the base-to-user message interval with a timing adjustment command.

In addition to being used for ranging purposes, the ranging message may also contain other information to assist the base station 304 in handshaking with the user station M3. For example, the ranging message may contain as data a user identifier for the user station M3 seeking to establish communication. The ranging message may also indicate a preferred spread spectrum code to be used by the base station 304 and the particular user station M3 in subsequent communications.

Figure 10E shows a subsequent time frame 1050 after a ranging transaction has been completed with the third user station M3. In Fig. 10E, the transactions between the user stations M1, MN and the base station 304 occurring in the first time slot TS1' are the same as for Fig. 10D. Also, the transactions between the user stations M1, M2 and the base station 304 occurring in the second time slot TS2 are the same as for Fig. 10D. However, during the second time slot TS2', instead of there being no transmitted control pulse preamble in the

preamble interval 1016, the third user station M3 may transmit a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2'. Alternatively, the user station M3 may wait until the base station 304 acknowledges its ranging message sent in the prior time frame 1050 before transmitting a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1016 of each preceding time slot TS2'.

The base station 304 may use the control pulse preamble for a variety of purposes, including power control and other purposes, as previously described. In the third time slot TS3' of Fig. 10E, the base station 304 may respond by sending an acknowledgment signal to the user station M3 during the base message interval 1003. The acknowledgment signal may be sent using a spread spectrum code determined by a user identifier sent by the user station M3 as part of the ranging message. As part of the acknowledgment signal, or in addition thereto, the base station 304 preferably sends a timing adjustment command instructing the user station M3 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount.

In following time frames 1050, communication may be carried out between the base station 304 and the user station M3 in an interleaved fashion in time slots TS3' and TS4' (in addition to the receipt of the control pulse preamble in the second time slot TS2' each time frame 1050). In each preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2', the user station M3 transmits a control pulse preamble allowing the base station 304 to take certain actions -- for example, to exercise power control, synchronize to the user station M3, or determine the distance of the user station M3. The base station 304 then sends a communication directed to the user station M3 in the first portion of the third time slot TS3', and the user station M3 responds with a communication directed to the base station 304 in the latter portion of the following time slot TS4'. During each communication from

the base station 304, the base station 304 may update the timing adjustment command to the user station M3.

Should a user station 302 terminate communication in a time slot 1051 or be handed off to a new base station 304, then the base station 304 may begin to transmit a general polling message during the newly opened time slot 1051, indicating that the time slot 1051 is free for communication. New user stations 302 may thereby establish communication with the same base station 304.

10 In another embodiment of the present invention, described with respect to Figs. 11A-D, two frequency bands are used for communication instead of a single frequency band.

Figure 11A is a diagram of timing sub-elements having predefined formats for use in an FDD/TDMA system. The three timing sub-elements shown in Fig. 11A may be used to construct an FDD/TDMA frame structure, such as the frame structures shown in Figs. 11B-D. Although systems constructed in accordance with Figs. 11A-D preferably use spread spectrum for communication, spread spectrum is not required. The following description, however, assumes the use of spread spectrum techniques. For the present example, unless otherwise specified, a chipping rate of 2.8 MHz is preferred, although the chipping rate selected depends upon the application.

In Fig. 11A are shown a base timing sub-element 1101, a user datalink timing sub-element 1110, and a range timing sub-element 1121. For each of these sub-elements 1101, 1110, and 1121, as explained more fully below, timing is shown from the perspective of the base station 304 with the range of the user station 302 at zero.

The base timing sub-element 1101 comprises a base preamble interval 1102, a base message interval 1103, three more preamble burst intervals 1104, 1105, and 1106 (collectively referred to as a 123-preamble burst interval 1109), a base fill code interval 1107, and a transmit/receive switch interval 1108. The base preamble

interval 1102 may be 56 chips in length. The base message interval 1103 may be 205 bits in length, or 1312 chips using 32-ary coding, as described previously herein with respect to Figs. 10A-E. The base message interval 1103  
5 comprises a total of up to 41 5-bit data sequences, for a total of 205 bits; thus, a transmission in the base message interval 1103 may comprise a series of up to 41 spread spectrum codes, each selected from the set of 32 spread spectrum codes, for a total of 1312 chips.

10 Although the present preferred system of Figs 11A-E is described using 32-ary spread spectrum coding techniques, other spread spectrum techniques, including other M-ary coding schemes (such as 4-ary, 16-ary, etc.) may also be used, depending on the particular system  
15 requirements.

The three preamble burst intervals 1104, 1105, and 1106 are each preferably 56 chips in length; thus, the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 is preferably 168 chips in length. The transmit/receive switch interval 1108 is  
20 preferably selected as a length of time sufficient to enable the switching of the base station 304 from a transmit mode to a receive mode and may be, for example, 32 chips or 11.43 microseconds in length. The transmit/receive switch interval 1108 and the base fill  
25 code interval 1107 collectively comprise, in a preferred embodiment, a length of 189 chips.

Thus, the total length of the base timing sub-element 1101 is preferably 1750 chips (for the assumed 2.8 MHz chipping rate), which matches the length of the user  
30 datalink timing sub-element 1110 and the range timing sub-element 1121 as described below. In the Figs. 11A-D embodiment, it is preferred to have the base timing sub-element 1101 equal in length to the user timing sub-elements 1110, 1121 to maintain synchronicity in the dual-  
35 frequency band system described in Figs. 11A-D, wherein the base station 304 communicates over one frequency band and the user stations 302 over another frequency band.

The user datalink timing sub-element 1110 and the range timing sub-element 1121 each generally provide for transmissions by more than one user station 302. As explained further below, these timing sub-elements 1110, 1121 provide for transmission by a first user station 302 of a data message or a ranging message in the first part of the timing sub-element 1110 or 1121, and transmission by a second user station 302 of a control pulse preamble in the latter part of the timing sub-element 1110 or 1121. The control pulse preamble, as further described below, generally allows the base station 304 to carry out certain functions (e.g., power control) with respect to the second user station 302.

The user datalink timing sub-element 1110 comprises a datalink preamble interval 1112, a user message interval 1113, a guard band 1114, a transmit/receive switch interval 1115, a second preamble interval 1116, an antenna adjustment interval 1117, a second guard band 1118, and a second transmit/receive switch interval 1119. The preamble intervals 1112, 1116 may each be 56 chips in length. The user message interval 1113 may be 205 bits in length, or 1312 chips, using the 32-ary spread spectrum coding technique described previously herein. The length of the guard bands 1114, 1118 may vary, but should be sufficient to allow receipt of the pertinent message transmissions without interference. The transmit/receive switch intervals 1115, 1119 may each be of a duration sufficient to allow proper switching between transmit and receive modes, or between receive and transmit modes, as the case may be. The antenna adjustment interval 1117 may be of sufficient duration to allow transmission of a data symbol for selecting a particular antenna beam or permitting minor adjustments to the angle of a directional antenna at the base station 302, or permitting selection of one or more antennas if the base station 302 is so equipped.

The range timing sub-element 1121 comprises a ranging preamble interval 1122, a user ranging message interval 1123, a ranging guard band 1124, a transmit/receive switch interval 1125, a second preamble interval 1126, an antenna  
5 adjustment interval 1127, a second guard band 1128, and a second transmit/receive switch interval 1129. The preamble intervals 1122, 1126 may each be 56 chips in length. The user ranging message interval 1123 may be 150 bits in length, or 960 chips, using the 32-ary spread  
10 spectrum coding technique described previously herein. The length of the ranging guard band 1124 may vary depending, for example, on cell radius, but should be sufficient to allow receipt of a ranging message without interference. The other guard band 1128 should likewise  
15 be of sufficient length to allow receipt of the pertinent information without interference. The transmit/receive switch intervals 1125, 1129 may each be of a duration sufficient to allow proper switching between transmit and receive modes, or between receive and transmit modes, as  
20 the case may be. The antenna adjustment interval 1127 may be of sufficient duration to allow transmission of a data symbol for selecting a particular antenna beam or permitting minor adjustments to the angle of a directional antenna at the base station 302, or permitting selection  
25 of one or more antennas if the base station 302 is so equipped.

The total length of each of the user datalink timing sub-element 1110 and the range timing sub-element 1121 may be 1750 chips, or the same length as the base timing sub-  
30 element 1101. These particular exemplary values assume a chipping rate of 2.8 MHz.

Figure 11B is a timing diagram for a fixed or zero offset FDD/TDMA frame structure using the timing sub-  
elements depicted in Fig. 11A. The frame structures of  
35 Figs. 11B-E are shown from the perspective of the base station 304.

Figure 11B is a frame structure for a system using two frequency bands for communication in addition to certain aspects of time division multiple access. A first frequency band 1170, also referred to as a base station frequency band, is used primarily for communication from a base station 304 to user stations 302. A second frequency band 1171, also referred to as a user station frequency band, is used primarily for communication from the user stations 302 to the base station 304. The two frequency bands 1170, 1171 are preferably located 80 MHz apart. The 80 MHz frequency separation helps to minimize co-channel interference and allows easier construction of filters in the receiver for filtering out potentially interfering signals from the reverse path communication.

In the frame structure of Fig. 11B, a time frame 1140 comprises a plurality of time slots 1141. For convenience, time slots are designated in sequential order as TS1", TS2", TS3", and so on. Each time slot 1141 comprises a base timing sub-element 1101 on the base station frequency band 1170, and either a user datalink timing sub-element 1110 or a range timing sub-element 1121 on the user station frequency band 1171. The time slots 1141 are shown from the perspective of the base station 304, so that the base timing sub-elements 1101 and the user timing sub-elements 1110, 1121 appear lined up in Fig. 11B. While the frame structure of Fig. 11B supports range timing sub-elements 1121 on the user station frequency band 1171, it is contemplated that communication from the user stations 302 to the base station 304 in the Fig. 11B system will ordinarily occur using user datalink timing sub-elements 1110.

In operation, the base station 304 transmits, as part of the base timing sub-element 1101 of each time slot 1141, in sequence to user stations 302 with which the base station 304 has established communication. More specifically, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user

message during the base message interval 1103. After the base message interval 1103, the base station 304 transmits three short preamble bursts in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 directed to a different user station 302.

5 In the exemplary system of Fig. 11B, the three preamble bursts in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 are directed to the user station 302 to which the base station 304 will be sending a main data message two time slots 1141 later.

10 The three short preamble bursts sent in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 may be used for forward link diversity sensing and forward link power control purposes. Each of these three preamble bursts may be transmitted on a different antenna to allow receiving user stations 302  
15 an opportunity to make a diversity selection for an upcoming forward link data message in a subsequent time slot 1141.

Following the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 is the base fill code interval 1107, during which the base  
20 station 304 transmits a fill code. Following the base code fill interval 1107 is the transmit/receive switch interval 1104, during which the base station 304 may switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode. If the base station 304 has separate transmit and receive  
25 hardware, however, then the base station need not switch modes, and may instead continue to transmit a fill code during the transmit/receive switch interval 1104.

The specific communication exchanges shown in the example of Fig. 11B will now be explained in more detail.  
30 In the first time slot TS1", on the base station frequency band 1170, the base station transmits a base-to-user message in the base message interval 1103 directed to a first user station M1. The base station 304 then transmits a 123-preamble burst during the 123-preamble  
35 burst interval 1109, directed to another user station M3. Simultaneous with the base station transmissions, the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band



1171, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the last user station MN with which the base station 304 is in communication. During the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the first time slot TS1" on the user station frequency band 1171, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble from the user station M2 to which the base station 304 is to transmit in the following time slot TS2".

10 The functions of the control pulse preamble sent during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 are similar to those described earlier with respect to the control pulse preamble of Figs. 10A-E (e.g., power control, antenna adjustment, etc.). Following the  
15 preamble interval 1116 is an antenna adjustment interval 1117, during which the base station 304 has an opportunity to adjust its transmission antenna, if necessary, so as to direct it towards the second user station M2 based upon information acquired from receipt of the control pulse  
20 preamble. Following the antenna adjustment interval 1117 is another guard band 1118, which accounts for the propagation time of the control pulse preamble to the base station 304. After the preamble interval is another transmit/receive switching interval 1119 to allow the base  
25 station 304 opportunity to switch from a receive mode to a transmit mode (if necessary), and to allow the second user station M2 opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

In the following time slot TS2" after the first time  
30 slot TS1", the base station 304 transmits, using the base station frequency band 1170, a preamble during the base preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103, both directed to the second user station M2. The base station 304 thereby  
35 rapidly responds to the control pulse preamble sent by the user station M2. It is assumed, however, in the exemplary time frame 1140 of Fig. 11B that the base station 304 is

not in established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot TS4" over the base station frequency band 1170. Thus, in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 following the base message interval 1103, the base station 304 does not transmit a 123-preamble burst directed to a user station 302.

Simultaneous with the base station transmissions in the second time slot TS2", the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1171, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the user station M1 with which the base station 304 communicated in the first time slot TS1". Similar to the first time slot TS1", during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the second time slot TS2" on the user station frequency band 1171, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble from the user station M3 to which the base station 304 is to transmit in the following time slot TS3".

In the third time slot TS3", the base station 304 transmits, using the base station frequency band 1170, a preamble during the base preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103, both directed to the third user station M3. Following the base message interval 1103 is a 123-preamble burst interval 1109 during which the base station 304 transmits three short preamble bursts (i.e., the 123-preamble burst) directed to a different user station M5, with which the base station 304 intends to communicate two time slots 1141 later.

Simultaneous with the base station transmissions, the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1171, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the user station M2 with which the base station 304 communicated in the previous time slot TS2". Because the base station 304 is not in

established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot TS4" over the base station frequency band 1170, the base station 304 does not receive a control pulse preamble during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the third time slot TS3" on the user station frequency band 1171.

A similar exchange is carried out in the fourth time slot TS4", and in subsequent time slots 1141 as well. Whether or not particular user-to-base message, base-to-user messages, and preambles or control pulse preambles are transmitted depends on whether or not the base station 304 is in communication with a user station 302 requiring such exchanges at the particular time.

Thus, in general, to support communication between a user station 302 and base station 304 communicating during a single time slot 1141, four messages are exchanged in each time frame 1140 between the particular user station 302 and the base station 304. The base station 304 first sends a 123-preamble in a 123-preamble interval 1109 of the time slot 1141 two slots 1141 prior to which the base station 304 intends to transmit to the user station 302. In the following time slot 1141, on a different frequency band 1171, the user station 302 responds by sending a control pulse preamble, which is received at the base station 304 during the control pulse preamble interval 1116. In the following time slot 1141, after making determinations as to power adjustment and/or timing adjustment, the base station 304 transmits to the user station 304 a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103 on the base station frequency band 1170. In the following time slot 1141, after adjusting its power and/or timing, the user station 304 responds with a user-to-base message, which is received at the base station 304 during the user message interval 1113.

As noted, it is assumed in the exemplary time frame 1140 of Fig. 11B that the base station 304 is not in established communication with any user station 302 during

the fourth time slot TS4" over the base station frequency band 1170. The base station 304 may indicate that a particular time slot 1141, such as time slot TS4", is available for communication by, for example, transmitting  
5 a general polling message during the base message interval 1103 of the time slot TS4".

Should a user station 302 desire to establish communication with the base station 304 (such as in the fourth time slot TS4"), then, in response to the base  
10 station 304 transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1103 of the fourth time slot TS4", the new user station 302 may send a general polling response message during a user message interval 1113 of the following time slot TS5" (not shown). When the new  
15 user station 302 responds with a general polling response message, the base station 304 may determine the range of the user station 302 and thereby determine a required timing adjustment for subsequent transmissions by the user station 302. The base station 304 may thereafter issue  
20 periodic timing adjustment commands to maintain receipt of user-to-base transmissions at the start of each user timing interval. The base station 304 may monitor the distance of the user station 302 by looking to the time of receiving either the control pulse preamble or the user-  
25 to-base message from a user station 302.

For efficiency reasons, the guard times 1114 and 1118 are preferably kept to a minimum. The smaller the guard times 1114, 1118, the more user stations 302 may be supported by the frame structure of Fig. 11B. Typically,  
30 therefore, the guard times 1114, 1118 will not be of sufficient duration to allow a full ranging transaction to occur. In particular, a ranging transaction may result in interference between the transmission of a user station 302 seeking to establish communication and the control  
35 pulse preamble of the user station 302 already in communication in the immediately following time slot 1141 with the base station 304. If the guard times are

lengthened to permit ranging transactions, then fewer user stations 302 can be supported, particularly in a large cell environment. An alternative structure having improved efficiency in a large cell environment, along with the flexibility of ranging transactions, is shown in Figs. 11C and 11D and explained in more detail below.

Proper timing is preferably set upon initial establishment of communication, and the transmissions from the user stations, such as the first user station M1, may be maintained in time alignment as seen at the base station 304 by timing adjustment commands from the base station 304, similar to the timing adjustment commands described elsewhere herein. A full round-trip guard time need not be included in each time slot 1141 because the user stations 302 and base station 304 transmit on different frequency bands, preventing interference between base-to-user messages and user-to-base messages.

The depiction of the frame structure in Figs. 11A-B assumes that the user stations 302 are at zero distance from the base station 304, and therefore the user-to-base message appears immediately after the preamble interval 1112 or 1122. However, if the user station 302 is not immediately adjacent to the base station 304, then part of guard time 1114 shown in Fig. 11A will be consumed in the propagation of the preamble and user-to-base message to the base station 304. Thus, if the user station 302 is at the cell periphery, then the user-to-base message will appear at the base station 304 after the elapsing of a time period equal at most to the duration of guard time 1114. In order to ensure that the guard times 1114 and 1118 are kept to a minimum, timing adjustment commands are preferably transmitted from the base station 304 periodically so as to keep the user preambles and user-to-base messages arriving at the base station 304 as close to the start of the user timing sub-element 1110 as possible, without interfering with the transmissions of the previous use station 302.

If a ranging transaction is supported in the Fig. 11B environment, then the portion of a time slot 1141 on the user station frequency band 1171 may comprise a range timing sub-element 1121, as described previously with respect to Fig. 11A, during which a ranging transaction is carried out between the base station 304 and a new user station 302. Thus, the user station 302 transmits a preamble during a ranging preamble interval 1122 of time slot 1141, and transmits a ranging message during the user ranging message interval 1123 of time slot 1141. The user station 302 delays transmitting the preamble and ranging message for an amount of time  $\Delta T$ . The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be communicated by the base station 304 as part of the general polling message, or may be a pre-programmed system parameter. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the user station 302 to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the previous time slot 1141 to the time of actual receipt of the responsive preamble and ranging message from the user station 302, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

In the above described embodiment supporting ranging transactions, the ranging guard band 1124 is preferably of sufficient length to allow the ranging transaction between the base station 304 and the user station 302 to occur. Thus, the length of the ranging guard band 1124 is determined in part by the radius of the cell 303 in which the base station 304 is located, or may be determined in part by the maximum cell radius of the cellular system.

In response to receiving the ranging message from the user station 302 and determining the distance of the user station 302 and/or the propagation delay time thereto, the base station 304 may issue a timing adjustment command to the user station 302 in the next time frame 1140 instructing the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount. For the time frame 1140 immediately after communication with the user station 302

is established, the timing adjustment command may be set equal to the round-trip propagation time as determined by the base station 304 during the ranging transaction. Preferably, the timing adjustment command is selected so  
5 as to cause the user transmission from the user station 302 to the base station 304 in the subsequent time frame 1140 to be received by the base station 304 immediately after the end of the previous time slot 1141.

In addition to being used for ranging purposes, the  
10 ranging message may also contain other information to assist the base station 304 in handshaking with the user station 302. For example, the ranging message may contain as data a user identifier for the user station 302 seeking to establish communication. The ranging message may also  
15 indicate a preferred spread spectrum code to be used by the base station 304 and the particular user station 302 in subsequent communications.

It may be possible to minimize potential interference between ranging messages and control pulse preambles by  
20 using a particular designated spread spectrum code for only ranging messages, or for only control pulse preambles. However, code division multiplexing in such a manner may not provide satisfactory isolation between the interfering signals, or may require unacceptably long time  
25 slots.

In the following time frames 1140, after establishing communication with user station M3 in the manner described above, communication may be carried out between the base station 304 and the user station M3 in an interleaved  
30 fashion over several time slots 1140. As part of each transmission from the base station 304, the base station 304 may update the timing adjustment command to the user station M3.

Should a user station 302 terminate communication in  
35 a time slot 1141 or be handed off to a new base station 304, then the base station 304 may begin to transmit a general polling message during the newly opened time slot

1141, indicating that the time slot 1141 is free for communication. New user stations 302 may thereby establish communication with the same base station 304.

A simple means to adapt an FDD/TDMA system such as shown in Fig. 11B to emulate a TDD system is to alternately black out time slots on each of the two frequency bands 1170 and 1171. Thus, during time slot TS1", the base station 304 transmits to a user station M<sub>1</sub> over frequency band 1170, while no transmission is conducted over frequency band 1171. During the next time slot TS2", the user station M<sub>1</sub> responds over frequency band 1171, while no transmission is conducted over frequency band 1170. The next two time slots TS3" and TS4" are used for duplex communication between the base station 304 and the next user station M<sub>2</sub>, with the user slot in TS3" and the base slot in TS4" being dormant. The described frame structure generally supports fewer user stations 302 than the frame structure shown in Fig. 11B due to the dormancy of alternating time slots on each frequency band 1170 and 1171, but allows a TDD interface such as shown in Fig. 10B to be emulated with minimal modification to the base and user stations (e.g., by transmitting and receiving on different frequency bands). If both frequency bands 1170 and 1171 are selected to be the same, then the system will be true TDD, thus allowing the same hardware to be capable of either FDD/TDMA or TDD operation simply by appropriate selection of the frequency bands and appropriate selection of the time slots (i.e., by selecting in an alternating manner) on the forward and reverse links during which to transmit.

Figure 11C is a timing diagram for an offset interleaved FDD/TDMA frame structure using the timing sub-elements depicted in Fig. 11A, as shown from the perspective of the base station 304. As described further below, the offset interleaved FDD/TDMA frame structure of Fig. 11C permits larger cells by allowing time for user stations 302 to receive base station transmissions



intended for them before having to reply, and may prevent the need for a costly diplexer in the user station 302.

Figure 11C is a frame structure for a system using two frequency bands for communication in addition to certain aspects of time division multiple access. A first frequency band 1172, also referred to as a base station frequency band, is used primarily for communication from a base station 304 to user stations 302. A second frequency band 1173, also referred to as a user station frequency band, is used primarily for communication from the user stations 302 to the base station 304. The two frequency bands 1172, 1173 are preferably located 80 MHz apart. The 80 MHz frequency separation helps to minimize co-channel interference and allows easier construction of filters in the receiver for filtering out potentially interfering signals from the reverse path communication.

In the frame structure of Fig. 11C, a time frame 1150 comprises a plurality of time slots 1151. For convenience, time slots are designated in sequential order as OTS1, OTS2, OTS3, and so on. Each time slot 1151 comprises a base timing sub-element 1101 on the base station frequency band 1170, and either a user datalink timing sub-element 1110 or a range timing sub-element 1121 on the user station frequency band 1171. The time slots 1151 are shown from the perspective of the base station 304, so that the base timing sub-elements 1101 and the user timing sub-elements 1110, 1121 appear staggered in Fig. 11C by a predetermined offset time 1160. The frame structure of Fig. 11C supports both range timing sub-elements 1121 and user datalink timing sub-elements 1110 on the user station frequency band 1171.

In operation, the base station 304 transmits, as part of the base timing sub-element 1101 of each time slot 1151, in sequence to user stations 302 with which the base station 304 has established communication. Thus, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base

message interval 1103. After the base message interval 1103, the base station 304 transmits three short preamble bursts in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 directed to a different user station 302. In the exemplary system of  
5 Fig. 11C, the three preamble bursts in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 are directed to the user station 302 to which the base station 304 will be sending a main data message two time slots 1151 later.

As with the system of Fig. 11B, the three short  
10 preamble bursts sent in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 may be used for forward link diversity sensing and forward link power control purposes. Each of these three preamble bursts may be transmitted on a different antenna to allow receiving user stations 302 an opportunity to  
15 make a diversity selection for an upcoming forward link data message in a subsequent time slot 1151.

Following the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 is the base fill code interval 1107, during which the base station 304 transmits a fill code. Following the base  
20 code fill interval 1107 is the transmit/receive switch interval 1104, during which the base station 304 may switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode. Preferably, however, the base station 304 has separate transmit and receive hardware, and therefore does not need  
25 to switch modes. Instead, the base station 304 may continue to transmit a fill code during the transmit/receive switch interval 1104.

The specific communication exchanges shown in the example of Fig. 11C will now be explained in more detail.  
30 In the first time slot OTS1, on the base station frequency band 1172, the base station transmits a base-to-user message in the base message interval 1103 directed to a first user station M1. The base station 304 then transmits a 123-preamble burst during the 123-preamble  
35 burst interval 1109, directed to another user station M3. Simultaneous with the base station transmissions, but offset therefrom by an offset time 1160, the base station

304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1173, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the last user station MN with which the base station 304 is in communication. During the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the first time slot OTS1 on the user station frequency band 1173, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble from the user station M2 to which the base station 304 is to transmit in the following time slot OTS2.

The functions of the control pulse preamble sent during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 are similar to those described earlier with respect to the control pulse preamble of Figs. 10A-E and 11B (e.g., power control, antenna adjustment, etc.). Following the preamble interval 1116 is an antenna adjustment interval 1117, during which the base station 304 has an opportunity to adjust its transmission antenna, if necessary, so as to direct it towards the second user station M2 based upon information acquired from receipt of the control pulse preamble. Following the antenna adjustment interval 1117 is another guard band 1118, to allow for propagation of the control pulse preamble to the base station 304. After the preamble interval is another transmit/receive switching interval 1119 to allow the base station 304 opportunity to switch from a receive mode to a transmit mode (if necessary), and to allow the second user station M2 opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

In the following time slot OTS2 after the first time slot OTS1, the base station 304 transmits, using the base station frequency band 1172, a preamble during the base preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103, both directed to the second user station M2. The base station 304 thereby rapidly responds to the control pulse preamble sent by the user station M2. It is assumed, however, in the exemplary

time frame 1150 of Fig. 11C that the base station 304 is not in established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot OTS4 over the base station frequency band 1172. Thus, in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 following the base message interval 1103 in the second time slot OTS2, the base station 304 does not transmit a 123-preamble burst directed to a user station 302.

Simultaneous with the base station transmissions in the second time slot OTS2 but offset therefrom by an offset time 1160, the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1173, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the user station M1 with which the base station 304 communicated in the first time slot OTS1. As with the first time slot OTS1, during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the second time slot OTS2 on the user station frequency band 1173, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble from the user station M3 to which the base station 304 is to transmit in the following time slot OTS3.

In the third time slot OTS3, the base station 304 transmits, using the base station frequency band 1172, a preamble during the base preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103, both directed to the third user station M3. Following the base message interval 1103 is a 123-preamble burst interval 1109 during which the base station 304 transmits three short preamble bursts (i.e., the 123-preamble burst) directed to a different user station M5, with which the base station 304 will communicate two slots 1151 later.

Simultaneous with the base station transmissions but offset therefrom by an offset time 1160, the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1173, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a

user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the user station M2 with which the base station 304 communicated in the previous time slot OTS2. Because the base station 304 is not in established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot OTS4 over the base station frequency band 1172, the base station 304 does not receive a control pulse preamble during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the third time slot OTS3 on the user station frequency band 1173.

10 A similar exchange is carried out in the fourth time slot OTS4, and in subsequent time slots 1151 as well. Whether or not particular user-to-base message, base-to-user messages, and preambles or control pulse preambles are transmitted depends on whether or not the base station 15 304 is in communication with a user station 302 requiring such exchanges at the particular time.

Thus, in general, to support communication between a user station 302 and base station 304 communicating during a single time slot 1151, four messages are exchanged in 20 each time frame 1150 between the particular user station 302 and the base station 304. The base station 304 first sends a 123-preamble in a 123-preamble interval 1109 of the time slot 1151 two slots 1151 prior to which the base station 304 intends to transmit to the user station 302. 25 In the following time slot 1151, on a different frequency band 1173 and delayed by an offset time 1160, the user station 302 responds by sending a control pulse preamble, which is received at the base station 304 during the control pulse preamble interval 1116. In the following 30 time slot 1151, after making determinations as to power adjustment and/or timing adjustment, the base station 304 transmits to the user station 304 a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103 on the base station frequency band 1172. In the following time slot 1151, 35 after adjusting its power and/or timing, the user station 304 responds with a user-to-base message, which is

received at the base station 304 during the user message interval 1113.

It is assumed in the exemplary time frame 1150 of Fig. 11C that the base station 304 is not in established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot OTS4 over the base station frequency band 1172. The base station 304 may indicate that a particular time slot 1151, such as time slot OTS4, is available for communication by, for example, transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1103 of the time slot OTS4.

Should a user station 302 desire to establish communication with the base station 304 (such as in the fourth time slot OTS4), then, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1103 of the fourth time slot OTS4, the new user station 302 may send a general polling response message during a user message interval 1113 of the following time slot OTS5. When the new user station 302 responds with a general polling response message, the base station 304 may determine the range of the user station 302 and thereby determine a required timing adjustment for subsequent transmissions by the user station 302.

For efficiency reasons, the guard times 1114 and 1118 are preferably kept to a minimum. The smaller the guard times 1114, 1118, the more user stations 302 may be supported by the frame structure of Fig. 11C.

Proper timing is preferably set upon initial establishment of communication, and the transmissions from the user stations, such as the first user station M1, may be maintained in time alignment as seen at the base station 304 by timing adjustment commands from the base station 304, similar to the timing adjustment commands described elsewhere herein. A full round-trip guard time need not be included in each time slot 1151 because the user stations 302 and base station 304 transmit on

different frequency bands, preventing interference between base-to-user messages and user-to-base messages.

The depiction of the frame structure in Fig. 11C (i.e., the exploded time slots 1151) assumes that the user stations 302 are at zero distance from the base station 304. However, if the user station 302 is not immediately adjacent to the base station 304, then part of guard time 1114 (as shown in Fig. 11A) will be consumed in the propagation of the preamble and user-to-base message to the base station 304. Thus, if the user station 302 is at the cell periphery, then the user-to-base message will appear at the base station 304 after the elapsing of a time period equal at most to the duration of guard time 1114. In order to ensure that the guard times 1114 and 1118 are kept to a minimum, timing adjustment commands are preferably transmitted from the base station 304 periodically so as to keep the user preambles and user-to-base messages arriving at the base station 304 as close to the start of the user timing sub-element 1110 as possible, without interfering with the transmissions of the previous use station 302.

When a user station 302 first establishes communication with the base station 304 in the Fig. 11C frame structure, a ranging transaction is carried out. The time slot 1151 on the user station frequency band 1173 during which the ranging transaction is initiated preferably comprises a range timing sub-element 1121, as described previously with respect to Fig. 11A. The user station 302 transmits a preamble during a ranging preamble interval 1122 of time slot 1151, and transmits a ranging message during the user ranging message interval 1123 of time slot 1151. The user station 302 delays transmitting the preamble and ranging message for an amount of time  $\Delta T$ . The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be communicated by the base station 304 as part of the general polling message, or may be a pre-programmed system parameter. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the user station 302

to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the previous time slot 1151 to the time of actual receipt of the responsive preamble and ranging message from the user station 302, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

The ranging guard band 1124 should be of sufficient length to allow the ranging transaction between the base station 304 and the user station 302 to occur. Thus, the length of the ranging guard band 1124 is determined in part by the radius of the cell 303 in which the base station 304 is located, or may be determined in part by the maximum cell radius of the cellular system.

In response to receiving the ranging message from the user station 302 and determining the distance of the user station 302 and/or the propagation delay time thereto, the base station 304 may issue a timing adjustment command to the user station 302 in the next time frame 1150 instructing the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount. For the time frame 1150 immediately after communication with the user station 302 is established, the timing adjustment command may be set equal to the round-trip propagation time as determined by the base station 304 during the ranging transaction. Preferably, the timing adjustment command is selected so as to cause the user transmission from the user station 302 to the base station 304 in the subsequent time frame 1150 to be received by the base station 304 immediately after the end of the previous time slot 1151.

In addition to being used for ranging purposes, the ranging message may also contain other information to assist the base station 304 in handshaking with the user station 302. For example, the ranging message may contain as data a user identifier for the user station 302 seeking to establish communication. The ranging message may also indicate a preferred spread spectrum code to be used by the base station 304 and the particular user station 302 in subsequent communications.



It may also be possible to minimize potential interference between ranging messages and control pulse preambles by using a particular designated spread spectrum code for only ranging messages, or for only control pulse preambles. However, it is anticipated that in most cases the use of an offset time 1160 between time slots 1151 on the base frequency band 1172 and the user frequency band 1173 should sufficiently separate the relevant transmissions in time so as to result in a system having minimal interference between user stations 302.

An advantage of the frame structure of Figs. 11C-D utilizing the offset time 1160 is that a diplexer, a device which allows simultaneous transmission and reception of signals, is generally not necessary in the user station 302. With the fixed offset frame structure of Fig. 11B, on the other hand, a diplexer may be necessary to support a high density of users, particularly in a large cell environment, because a user station 302 may need to transmit in a time slot 1141 prior to receiving the entire base-to-user message intended for it sent in the previous time slot 1141. Because Fig. 11B is constructed from a perspective of the base station 304, the time slots 1141 appear lined up to the base station 304, but the user station 302 is required to send its information in advance of the user portion of the time slot 1141 in order for the information to arrive at the base station 304 lined up as shown in Fig. 11B. In a large cell environment, where a user station 302 is distant, the user station 302 may be required to send its information prior to receiving the entire base-to-user message. In order to do so, the user station 302 may require the capability to transmit and receive information simultaneously, and may thus require a diplexer. In a protocol requiring that the user station 302 receive the base message before responding, the Fig. 11B system may thus not be suitable in a very large cell environment.

In the Fig. 11C-D embodiment, time slots 1151 on the user frequency band 1173 are offset from those on the base frequency band 1172 by an offset time 1160. The offset time 1160 allows the base-to-user message to propagate to the user station 302 prior to transmission of the user-to-base message by the user station 302. The user station 302 therefore does not need a diplexer, which can be a relatively expensive component. Operation without a diplexer is particularly beneficial where the user station 302 is embodied as a mobile handset, because it is often important to keep manufacturing costs of the handset as low as possible. Other hardware efficiency may also be achieved by not requiring simultaneous transmission and reception; for example, the user station 302 could use the same frequency synthesizer for both transmitting and receiving functions.

Figure 11D shows a subsequent time frame 1150 after a ranging transaction has been completed with the third user station M3. In Fig. 11D, the transactions between the user stations M1, MN and the base station 304 occurring in the first time slot OTS1 are the same as for Fig. 11C. Also, the transactions between the user stations M1, M2 and the base station 304 occurring in the second time slot OTS2 are the same as for Fig. 11C. However, during the second time slot OTS2, instead of there being no transmitted control pulse preamble in the preamble interval 1116, the third user station M3 may transmit a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1116 of the second time slot OTS2. Alternatively, the user station M3 may wait until the base station 304 acknowledges its ranging message sent in the prior time frame 1150 before transmitting a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1116 of each preceding time slot OTS2.

In the following time frames 1150, after establishing communication with the third user station M3 in the manner described above, communication may be carried out between

the base station 304 and the user station M3 as shown in Fig. 11D. As part of each transmission from the base station 304, the base station 304 may update the timing adjustment command to the user station M3.

5       Should a user station 302 terminate communication in a time slot 1151 or be handed off to a new base station 304, then the base station 304 may begin to transmit a general polling message during the newly opened time slot 1151, indicating that the time slot 1151 is free for  
10 communication. New user stations 302 may thereby establish communication with the same base station 304.

Figures 12A-C are tables showing preferred message formats for base station and user station transmissions. Tables 12B-1 through 12B-3 show message formats for  
15 transmissions used in handshaking or an acquisition mode. Tables 12C-1 through 12C-4 show message formats (both symmetric and asymmetric) after acquisition when in traffic mode. It should be noted that the asymmetric message formats are intended for use in the TDD based  
20 system variants, but not the FDD based systems. Tables 12A-1 through 12A-4 show the header format for each of the different message types in Tables 12B-1 through 12C-4.

For example, Table 12A-1 shows a header format for a base polling transmission (general or specific) as  
25 described earlier. The header format of Table 12A-1 comprises 21 bits. The particular header format comprises 10 fields totalling 19 bits, leaving two spare bits. The fields include a B/H field of 1 bit identifying whether the transmission source is a base station or a user  
30 station; an E field of 1 bit which may be used as an extension of the B/H field; a G/S field of 1 bit indicating whether the polling message is general or specific; a P/N field of 1 bit indicating whether the transmission is in a polling or traffic message; an SA  
35 field of 1 bit used for identification checking and verification; a PWR field of 3 bits used for power control; a CU field of 2 bits indicating slot utilization;

an opposite link quality field of 2 bits indicating how well the sending unit is receiving the opposite sense link; a timing adjustment command of 3 bits providing a command to the user station to adjust its timing if  
5 necessary; and a header FCW (frame check word) field of 4 bits used for error detection (similar to a CRC).

A header format for a base traffic transmission is shown in Table 12A-2. The header format is the same as that of Table 12A-1, except that an additional B/W grant  
10 field of 2 bits for the allocation of additional bandwidth to the user station 302 through time slot aggregation or asymmetric time slot use. The header format of Table 12A-2 utilizes 21 bits.

A header format for a mobile or user polling  
15 transmission is shown in Table 12A-3. The header format is similar to that of Table 12A-1, except that it does not include a CU field or a timing command field. Also, the header format of Table 12A-3 includes a B/W request field of 1 bit for a request of additional bandwidth or time  
20 slots. The Table 12A-3 header format includes 6 spare bits.

A header format for a mobile or user traffic transmission is shown in Table 12A-4. The header format of Table 12A-4 is the same as that of Table 12A-3, except  
25 that the B/W request field is designated in place of a B/W grant field.

Thus, the header formats for user stations 302 and base stations 304 are selected to be the same length in the exemplary embodiment described with respect to Figs.  
30 12A-C, whether or not in polling or traffic mode, and whether or not the polling message is general or specific.

Tables 12B-1 through 12B-3 show message formats for transmissions used in handshaking or an acquisition mode. Table 12B-1 shows a message format of 205 bits for a base  
35 general polling transmission. The message format of Table 12B-1 includes a header field of 21 bits, which comprises fields shown in Table 12A-1; a base ID field of 32 bits

for identifying the base station 304 transmitting the general polling message; various network and system identification fields, such as a service provider field of 16 bits which may be used to indicate, e.g., a telephone network or other communication source, a zone field of 16 bits which may be used to identify, e.g., a paging cluster, and a facility field of 32 bits; a slot number field of 6 bits indicating the slot number of the associated general polling transmission so as to assist the user station 302 in synchronization; and a frame FCW field of 16 bits for error correction and transmission integrity verification.

A message format of 150 bits for a mobile or user station response transmission is shown in Table 12B-3. The message format of Table 12B-3 includes a header field of 21 bits, which comprises fields shown in Table 12A-3; a PID field of 40 bits for identifying the user station 302 responding to the general polling message; a service provider field of 16 bits; a service request field of 16 bits indicating which of a variety of available services from the base station 304 is being sought; a mobile capability field of 8 bits; and a frame FCW field of 16 bits. The mobile capability field comprises two sub-fields, a type or capability sub-field of 2 bits indicating the user station's capability (e.g., diplexer, interleaving of traffic slots), and a home base slot number field of 6 bits for echoing the slot number received from the slot number field of the base general polling transmission. The user station polling response transmission, at 150 bits, is substantially shorter than a base station polling transmission or a traffic message transmission so as to accommodate ranging transactions and allow for uncertain initial propagation delay time from the user station 302 seeking to establish communication.

A message format of 205 bits for a base station specific polling transmission is shown in Table 12B-2. The message format of Table 12B-2 includes a header field

of 21 bits, which comprises fields shown in Table 12A-1; a correlative ID field of 8 bits indicating the relative slot location; a result field of 8 bits; a PID field of 40 bits for echoing the identification number received from the user station 302; a map type field of 8 bits for indicating, e.g., the number of time slots for the particular base station 304; a map field of 32 bits, indicating which slots are in use (which the user station 302 may evaluate in gauging potential slot aggregation); a slot number field of 6 bits; and a frame FCW field of 16 bits.

Tables 12C-1 through 12C-4 show message formats (both symmetric and asymmetric) after acquisition when in traffic mode. Tables 12A-1 and 12A-2 are base station traffic mode message formats; the message format of Table 12A-1 is used for a symmetric frame structure, and the format of Table 12A-2 is used for an asymmetric frame structure. Similarly, Tables 12A-3 and 12A-4 are mobile or user station traffic mode message formats; the message format of Table 12A-3 is used for a symmetric frame structure, and the format of Table 12A-4 is used for an asymmetric frame structure.

In a symmetric frame structure, each of the traffic mode messages is 205 bits in length. Each of the traffic mode message comprises a D-channel field (or data field) of 8 bits in length for slow data rate messaging capability, and a B-channel field (or bearer field) of 160 or 176 bits in length, depending on whether or not a frame FCW field of 16 bits is used.

In an asymmetric frame structure, used only in TDD system variants, the traffic mode message from one source is a different length, usually much longer, than the traffic mode message from the other source. The asymmetric frame structure allows a much higher data bandwidth in one direction of the communication link than the other direction. Thus, one of the traffic mode messages is 45 bits in length, while the other traffic

mode messages is 365 bits in length. The total length for a forward and reverse link message still totals 410 bits, as with the symmetric frame structure. Each of the traffic mode message comprises a D-channel field (or data field) of 8 bits in length for slow data rate messaging capability, and a B-channel field (or bearer field) of either 0, 16, 320 or 336 bits in length, depending on which source has the higher transmission rate, and depending on whether or not a frame FCW field of 16 bits is used.

Base and user messages are preferably sent using an M-ary encoding technique. The base and user messages are preferably comprised of a concatenated sequence of data symbols, wherein each data symbol represents 5 bits. A spread spectrum code, or symbol code, is transmitted for each data symbol. Thus, a transmitted symbol code may represent a whole or a portion of a data field, or multiple data fields, or portions of more than one data field, of a base or user message.

Because processing load generally increases proportionally to the length of preambles, which often require asynchronous processing, concatenated preamble code structures similar to those used in MPRF modes of the APG-63 radar may be used in the various communication interfaces described herein. A general description of APG-63 radar may be found in Morris, Airborne Pulsed Doppler Radar (Artech House 1988).

Figures 13A-B are diagrams showing the construction of concatenated preambles. In Fig. 13A, a length 112 preamble code is formed by taking a kronecker product between a Barker-4 (B4) code 1302 and a Minimum Peak Sidelobe-28 (MPS28) code 1301. In one sense, the resultant preamble can be thought of as an MPS28 code wherein each "chip" is in actuality a B4 sequence. One advantage of this preamble structure is that correlation processing can be accomplished using a 4-tap B4 matched filter 1310 followed by a 28 non-zero tap MPS28 @

[1,0,0,0] matched filter 1311, as shown in Fig. 13B. In terms of processing complexity, the technique of Figs. 13A-B is roughly the equivalent of a 32-tap matched filter, except with a higher memory requirement.

5 Performance can be enhanced by embodying the first stage filter 1310 as a mismatched filter instead of a matched filter, thereby reducing sidelobes in the filter response.

Figures 13D and 13E are graphs comparing the filter response for concatenated preambles using matched filters and mismatched filters, respectively. For the purposes of Figs. 13D and 13E, a length 140 preamble is assumed. The preamble comprises a kronecker product between a Barker-5 (B5) code and an MPS28 code. Figure 13D shows a composite filter response for the MPS28  $\otimes$  B5, length 140 preamble processed by a 5-tap B5 matched filter 1310 followed by a 28-tap MPS28 matched filter 1311. Four sidelobe spikes 1320 of about -14 dB are apparent in the graph of Fig. 13D. Figure 13E shows a composite filter response for the same preamble processed by a 17-tap B5 mismatched filter 1310 followed by a 28-tap MPS28 matched filter 1311, showing elimination of the sidelobe spikes 1320 shown in Fig. 13D.

As an alternative processing mechanism, M of N detectors can be used for detection alert purposes while the full length preamble is used for detection confirmation and channel sensing/equalization purposes. Code sets may be created having preambles using different MPS28 codes exhibiting low cross-correlation. A potential limitation with this approach is that there are only two MPS28 codewords. Thus, to create an N=7 code reuse pattern, "near" MPS28 codewords may be included so as to enlarge the potential available preambles exhibiting favorable cross-correlation characteristics. The two MPS28 codewords have peak temporal sidelobe levels of -22.9 dB, while the near MPS28 codewords have peak temporal sidelobe levels of -19.4 dB.



Preamble processing may further be augmented by taking advantage of the control pulse preamble (e.g., in preamble interval 1016) and 123-preamble message transmissions described earlier herein with respect to Figs. 10A-11D. The control pulse preamble and 123-preamble transmissions generally have fixed timing with respect to the initial preamble transmissions (e.g., in preamble intervals 1002 or 1102) preceding each main user or base transmission, and can be used to aid in synchronization particularly on the reverse link where two full-length preamble transmissions are associated with each main user or base transmission. Preamble length is effectively doubled by processing both the control pulse preamble or 123-preamble, and the preambles preceding the main user or base transmission.

Figures 14-17 are charts comparing various performance aspects of selected high tier and low tier air interfaces incorporating designated features of the embodiments described herein. By the term "high tier" is generally meant system coverage over a wide area and hence low capacity. Conversely, the term "low tier" is generally applied to communication services for localized high capacity and/or specialized needs. In one scheme, users are assigned to the lowest tier possible to preserve capacity in higher tiers.

In general, high tier applications are characterized by relatively large cells to provide umbrella coverage and connectivity, wherein users tend to have high measured mobility factors (e.g., high speed vehicular). High tier operations may also be characterized by high transmit power at the base station, high gain receive antennas, and high elevation antenna placement. Factors such as delay spread (resulting from multiple propagation delays due to reflections) and horizontal phase center separation as applied to multipath and antenna diversity can be quite important. For example, increased antenna complexity and aperture size may weigh against the use of large numbers

of diversity antennas in high tier applications. Receiver sensitivity may also be an important limiting factor. Small coherence bandwidths make spread spectrum waveforms favored in high tier applications.

5 Low tier applications are generally characterized by smaller cells with coverage limited by physical obstructions and number of radiating centers rather than receiver sensitivity. Small delay spreads allow for higher symbol rate and favor antenna diversity techniques  
10 for overcoming multipath fading. Either spread spectrum or narrowband signals may be used, and narrowband signals may be advantageous for achieving high capacity spot coverage and dynamic channel allocation. Dynamic channel assignment algorithms are favored to provide rapid  
15 response to changing traffic requirements and to permit relatively small reuse patterns by taking advantage of physical obstructions. Low tier applications may include, for example, wireless local loop, spot coverage for "holes" in high tier coverage, localized high capacity,  
20 and wireless Centrex.

While certain general characteristics of high tier and low tier applications have been described, these terms as applied herein are not meant to restrict the applicability of the principles of the present invention  
25 as set forth in its various embodiments. Categorization as high or low tier is merely intended to facilitate illustration of the exemplary embodiments described herein, and provide useful guideposts in system design. The designations of high or low tier are not necessarily  
30 exclusive of one another, nor do they necessarily encompass all possible communication systems.

High tier and low tier designations may be applied to operations in either the licensed or unlicensed frequency bands. In the unlicensed isochronous band (1910-1920  
35 MHz), FCC rules essentially require a TDD or TDMA/FDD hybrid because of the narrow available frequency range, with a maximum signal bandwidth of 1.25 MHz. "Listen

before talk" capability is commonly required in order to sense and avoid the transmissions of other users prior to transmitting. Applications in the isochronous band are typically of the low tier variety, and include wireless  
5 PBX, smart badges (e.g., position determining devices and passive RF radiating devices), home cordless, and compressed video distribution. Dynamic channel allocation and low tier structure is preferred due to the FCC requirements. Further, power limitations generally  
10 preclude large cells.

In the Industrial Scientific Medical (ISM) band (2400-2483.5 MHz), applications are similar to the unlicensed isochronous band, except that the federal regulations are somewhat less restrictive. Spread  
15 spectrum techniques are preferred to minimize transmission power (e.g., to 1 watt or less), with a minimum of 10 dB processing gain typically required. A TDD or TDMA/FDD hybrid structure is preferred due to the small frequency range of the ISM band.

20 Figure 14 is a summary chart comparing various air interfaces, generally grouped by high tier and low tier designations. The first column of Fig. 14 identifies the air interface type. The air interface type is identified by the chipping rate, tier, and frame structure -- either  
25 TDD (single frequency band with time division) or FDD/TDMA (multiple frequency bands with time division), such as described earlier with respect to Figs. 10A-E and 11A-D. Thus, for example, the identifier "5.00HT" appearing in the first row of the first column of the chart of Fig. 14  
30 identifies the air interface as having a chipping rate of 5.00 Megachips (Mcp), being high tier, and having a TDD structure. Similarly, the identifier "0.64LF" appearing in the sixth row of column one identifies the air interface as having a chipping rate of 0.64 Mcp, being low  
35 tier, and having an FDD/TDMA structure. A total of 16 different air interfaces (10 high tier, 6 low tier) are summarized in Fig. 14.

The second column of the chart of Fig. 14 identifies the duplex method, which is also indicated, as described above, by the last initial of the air interface type. The third column of the chart of Fig. 14 identifies the number of time slots for each particular air interface type. For the particular described embodiments, time slots range from 8 to 32. The fourth column of the chart of Fig. 14 identifies the chipping rate (in MHz) for each particular air interface type. The fifth column of the Fig. 14 chart indicates the number of channels in each allocation, which is an approximation of the number of supportable RF channels given a particular bandwidth allocation (e.g., 30 MHz), and may vary according to a chosen modulation technique and the chipping rate. The sixth column of the Fig. 14 chart indicates the sensitivity (in dBm) measured at the antenna post. The seventh and eighth columns of the Fig. 14 chart indicate the number of base stations required in different propagation environments, with 100% being a reference set with respect to the 5.00HT air interface. The propagation environments considered in the Fig. 14 chart include  $R^2$  (open area),  $R^4$  (urban), and  $R^7$  (low antenna urban), as listed.

The air interface types in Fig. 14 are also broken into four general categories, including high tier, low tier, unlicensed isochronous, and ISM air interface types. High tier operation assumes antenna diversity ( $L_{ant}$ ) using two antennas, a number of resolvable multipaths ( $L_{rake}$ ) of two, and a 30 MHz bandwidth allocation. The number of resolvable multipaths is generally a function of receiver capability, delay spread and antenna placement. Low tier operation assumes antenna diversity using three antennas, a single resolvable communication path, and a 30 MHz bandwidth allocation. Unlicensed isochronous operation assumes antenna diversity using three antennas, a single resolvable communication path, and a 1.25 MHz channel bandwidth. ISM operation assumes antenna diversity using

three antennas, a single resolvable communication path, and an 83.5 MHz bandwidth allocation.

Figure 15 compares the digital range limits (in miles) for the air interfaces described in Fig. 14. Digital range depends in part upon the number of time slots employed and whether ranging (i.e., timing adjustment control) is used. The multiple columns under the heading "Ranging Used" indicate whether or not timing control is implemented in the system, and correspond in the same order to the multiple columns under the "Time Slots" heading, which indicates the number of time slots used. The multiple columns under the "Digital Range" heading correspond in the same order to the columns under the "Ranging Used" and the "Time Slots" headings. Thus, for example, with the 5.00HT air interface, there are three possible embodiments shown. A first embodiment uses 32 time slots and ranging (timing adjustment), leading to a digital range of 8.47 miles. A second embodiment uses 32 time slots and no ranging, leading to a digital range of 1.91 miles. A third embodiment uses 25 time slots and no ranging, leading to a digital range of 10.06 miles.

It may be observed from the exemplary system parameters shown in the Fig. 15 chart that digital range may be increased either by reducing the number of time slots used, increasing the chipping rate, utilizing multiple frequency bands (i.e., using FDD and TDD techniques), or using ranging (timing adjustment).

Figure 16 is a chart describing the impact of various air interface structures on base-user initial handshaking negotiations and on time slot aggregation. The variables considered in Fig. 16 are whether the base station operates in a ranging or non-ranging mode, whether the user station 302 has a diplexer, whether a forward link antenna probe signal is employed, and whether interleaved traffic streams are supported. The number of base time slots which must occur between each communication are shown under the heading "Number of Base Slots Forbidden

Between." The number is different for initial acquisition transactions, which appear under the sub-heading "GP/SP Negotiations" (GP referring to general polling messages, and SP referring to specific polling messages, as explained previously herein), and for traffic mode transactions, which appear under the heading "Same Mobile Traffic Slots." The latter number determines maximum slot aggregation, which appears in the last column (as a percentage of the total time frame).

From the Fig. 16 chart, it can be seen that supporting ranging transactions may require a system to take into consideration delays in initial acquisition transactions. Further, the ability to support ranging transactions may also impact slot aggregation potential. This impact may be mitigated or eliminated if the user station 302 is outfitted with a diplexer, allowing the user station 302 to transmit and receive signals simultaneously.

Tables A-1 through A-28 (pp. 103-130) set forth illustrative high tier and low tier air interface specifications in more detail. In particular, specifications are provided for the air interfaces designated as 5.00 HT, 2.80 HF, 1.60 HF, 1.40 HF, 0.64 LF, 0.56 LF, and 0.35 LF in various configurations.

Figure 13C is a chart comparing preamble detection performance in high tier and low tier environments for a number of different air interfaces previously described. Longer preambles may be desired for asynchronous code separation, particularly in high tier applications. Shorter preambles may suffice for selected non-spread low tier and unlicensed isochronous environments, particularly where larger average N reuse patterns are employed.

The Fig. 13C chart tabulates preamble detection performance in Rayleigh fading assuming use of three antennas and employment of antenna diversity techniques, wherein the strongest of the three antenna signals is selected for communication. For preamble detection, it is

desirable to have at least a 99.9% detection probability to ensure reliable communications and to prevent the preamble from becoming a link performance limiting factor. Antenna probe detections are not required to be as  
5 reliable because they are used only in diversity processing, so a failure to detect an antenna probe signal merely leads to a power increase command for the forward link.

Associated with each air interface type listed in the  
10 Fig. 13C chart is an exemplary preamble codeword length in the second column thereof, and an exemplary antenna probe codeword length (for each of three antenna probe signals in three-antenna diversity) in the fourth main column thereof. Codeword length is given in chips. The third  
15 main column and the fifth main column of the Fig. 13C chart compare detection performance for a 99.9% detection threshold and a 90% detection threshold, respectively, for the case of no sidelobe and a -7 dB peak sidelobe. As preamble codeword length decreases, relative cross-  
20 correlation power levels (i.e., the power difference between the peak autocorrelation power level and the cross-correlation power level) increase. Thus, the Fig. 13C chart shows that raising detection thresholds to reject cross-correlation sidelobes from other transmitters  
25 also leads to degraded preamble detection performance. A higher signal-to-noise ratio for the system may be necessary where preamble detection thresholds are raised.

A flexible, highly adaptable air interface system has thus far been described, having application to TDD and  
30 FDD/TDMA operations wherein either spread spectrum or narrowband signal techniques, or both, are employed. Basic timing elements for ranging transactions and traffic mode exchanges, including a provision for a control pulse preamble, are used in the definition of a suitable frame  
35 structure. The basic timing elements differ slightly for TDD and FDD/TDMA frame structures, as described with respect to Figs. 10A and 11A. The basic timing elements

may be used in either a fixed or interleaved format, and either zero offset format or an offset format, as previously described. The frame structures are suitable for use in high tier or low tier applications, and a single base station or user station may support more than one frame structure and more than one mode (e.g., spread spectrum or narrowband, or low or high tier).

Advantages exist with both the TDD and FDD/TDMA air interface structures. A TDD structure more readily supports asymmetric data rates between forward and reverse links by shifting a percentage of the timeline allocated to each link. A TDD structure allows for antenna diversity to be accomplished at the base station 304 for both the forward and reverse links since the propagation paths are symmetric with respect to multipath fading (but not necessarily interference). A TDD structure also permits simpler phased array antenna designs in high-gain base station installations because separate forward and reverse link manifold structures are not needed. Further, TDD systems are more able to share frequencies with existing fixed microwave (OFS) users because fewer frequency bands are needed.

An FDD/TDMA structure may reduce adjacent channel interference caused by other base or mobile transmissions. An FDD/TDMA system generally has 3 dB better sensitivity than a comparable TDD system, therefore potentially requiring fewer base stations and being less expensive to deploy. An FDD/TDMA structure may lessen sensitivity to multipath induced intersymbol interference because half the symbol rate is used as compared with TDD. Further, mobile units in an FDD/TDMA system may use less power and be cheaper to manufacture since bandwidths are halved, D/A and A/D conversion rates are halved, and RF related signal processing elements operate at half the speed. An FDD/TDMA system may require less frequency separation between adjacent high and low tier operations, and may allow base stations to operate without global



synchronization, particularly when in low tier modes. Digital range may also be increased in an FDD/TDMA system because the timelines are twice as drawn out.

Figure 18 is a block diagram of a particular low IF digital correlator for use in a receiver operating in conjunction with the air interface structures disclosed herein, although it should be noted that a variety of different correlators may be suitable for use in the various embodiments disclosed herein. In the Fig. 18 correlator, a received signal 1810 is provided to an analog-to-digital (A/D) converter 1811. The A/D converter 1811 preferably performs one or two bit A/D conversion and operates at roughly four times the code rate or higher. Thus, code rates of 1.023 MHz to 10.23 MHz result in sample rates for A/D converter 1811 in the range of 4 to 50 MHz.

The A/D converter 1811 outputs a digitized signal 1812, which is connected to two multipliers 1815 and 1816. A carrier numerically controlled oscillator (NCO) block 1821 and a vector mapping block 1820 operate in conjunction to provide an appropriate frequency for demodulation and downconversion to a low IF frequency. The vector mapping block 1820 outputs a sine signal 1813 and a cosine signal 1814 at the selected conversion frequency. The sine signal 1813 is connected to multiplier 1815, and the cosine signal 1816 is connected to multiplier 1816, so as to generate an I IF signal 1830 and a Q IF signal 1831. The I IF signal 1830 is connected to an I multiplier 1842, and the Q IF signal 1831 is connected to a Q multiplier 1843.

A code NCO block 1840 and a code mapping block 1841 operate in conjunction to provide a selected spread spectrum code 1846. The selected spread spectrum code 1846 is coupled to both the I multiplier 1842 and the Q multiplier 1843. The output of the I multiplier 1842 is connected to an I summer 1844 which counts the number of matches between the I IF signal 1030 and the selected

spread spectrum code 1846. The output of the Q multiplier 1843 is connected to an Q summer 1845 which counts the number of matches between the Q IF signal 1031 and the selected spread spectrum code 1846. The I summer 1844  
5 outputs an I correlation signal 1850, and the Q summer 1845 outputs a Q correlation signal 1851.

Alternatively, a zero IF digital correlator may be used instead of a low IF digital correlator. A zero IF digital correlator performs I and Q separation prior to  
10 A/D conversion, hence requiring the use of two A/D converters instead of one. The A/D converters for the zero IF correlator may operate at the code rate, instead of at four times the code rate as is done by A/D converter 1811.

15 Figure 19A is a block diagram of an exemplary dual-mode base station capable of operating over multiple frequencies and having both spread spectrum and narrowband communication capabilities. The base station block diagram of Fig. 19A includes a frequency plan architecture  
20 for use with a low IF digital transceiver ASIC 1920. The base station may employ an FDD technique wherein the user stations 302 transmit at the lower duplex frequency, and the base station 304 transmits at the higher duplex frequency. The base station of Fig. 19A preferably uses  
25 a direct synthesis digital CPM modulator, such as described, for example, in Kopta, "New Universal All Digital CPM Modulator," IEEE Trans. COM (April 1987).

The Fig. 19A dual-mode base station comprises an antenna 1901, preferably capable of operating at a 2 GHz  
30 frequency range. The antenna 1901 is connected to a diplexer 1910, which allows the base station to simultaneously transmit and receive signals through the antenna 1901. The transmitted and received signals are translated to appropriate frequencies generated by  
35 multiplying or dividing a master clock frequency output from a master oscillator 1921. The master oscillator 1921 generates a master frequency (e.g., 22.4 MHz) which is

provided to a clock divider circuit 1922 for dividing the master frequency by a predefined factor, e.g., 28. The master oscillator 1921 is also connected to another clock divider circuit 1926 which divides the master frequency by a programmable parameter M, determined by the physical layer with over which the base station operates. The output of clock divider circuit 1926 may be further divided down by another clock divider 1927 which divides by a programmable parameter M2, in order to support a second mode of operation over a different physical layer, if desired.

Signals to be transmitted are provided by ASIC 1920 to a digital-to-analog (D/A) converter 1933, which is clocked by a signal from clock divider circuit 1926. The output of the D/A converter 1933 is connected to a low pass filter 1934 to provide smoothing of the signal envelope. The low pass filter 1934 is connected to a multiplier 1936. An output from the clock divider circuit 1922 is connected to a frequency multiplier circuit 1935 which multiplies its input by a conversion factor, such as 462. The frequency multiplier circuit 1935 is connected to a multiplier 1936, which multiplies its inputs to generate an IF transmission signal 1941. The IF transmission signal 1941 is connected to a spread spectrum bandpass filter 1937 and a narrowband bandpass filter 1938. The spread spectrum bandpass filter 1937 is a wideband filter, while the narrowband bandpass filter 1938 operates over a relatively narrow bandwidth. The bandpass filters 1937 and 1938 filter out, among other things, CPM modulator spurs from the transmitter. A multiplexer 1939 selects between an output from the spread spectrum bandpass filter 1937 and an output from the narrowband bandpass filter 1938, depending upon the mode of operation of the base station.

Multiplexer 1939 is connected to a multiplier 1931. The clock divider circuit 1922 is connected to another clock divider circuit 1923, which divides its input by a

factor, e.g., of 4. The output of the clock divider circuit 1923 is connected to a frequency multiplier circuit 1930, which multiplies its input by a factor of  $(N + 400)$ , where  $N$  defines the frequency of the receiving channel, as further described herein. The frequency multiplier circuit 1930 is connected to the multiplier 1931, which multiplies its inputs to generate an output signal 1942. The output signal 1942 is connected to the diplexer 1910, which allows transmission of the output signal 1942 over the antenna 1901.

Signals received over the antenna 1901 pass through the diplexer 1910 and are provided to a multiplier 1951. Clock divider circuit 1923 is connected to a frequency multiplier circuit 1950, which multiplies its input by a factor of, e.g.,  $N$ . The frequency multiplier circuit 1950 is connected to multiplier 1951, which combines its inputs and generates a first IF signal 1944. The first IF signal 1944 is connected to a spread spectrum bandpass filter 1952 and a narrowband bandpass filter 1953. The spread spectrum bandpass filter 1952 is a wideband filter, while the narrowband bandpass filter 1953 operates over a relatively narrow bandwidth. The bandpass filters 1952 and 1953 remove image noise and act as anti-aliasing filters. A multiplexer 1954 selects between an output from the spread spectrum bandpass filter 1952 and an output from the narrowband bandpass filter 1953.

Multiplexer 1954 is connected to a multiplier 1960. An output from frequency multiplier circuit 1935 is also connected to multiplier 1960, which outputs a final IF signal 1946. The final IF signal 1946 is connected to a low pass filter 1961 and thereafter to an A/D converter 1962. The A/D converter 1962 is clocked at a rate determined by the clock divider circuit 1926. The output of the A/D converter is provided to ASIC 1920 for correlation and further processing. In particular, the received signal may be processed by the low IF correlator

shown in Fig. 18 and described above, in which case A/D converter 1961 may be the same as A/D converter 1811.

Typically, due to cost and equipment constraints, only one narrowband and one spread spectrum mode will be supported, although as many modes as needed can be supported by a single base station by providing similar additional hardware.

Figure 19B is a chart showing selected frequencies and other parameters for use in the dual-mode base station of Fig. 19A. The Fig. 19B chart is divided according to spread spectrum and narrowband modes. The first three columns relate to different transmission rates using spread spectrum techniques, and the latter four columns relate to different transmission rates using narrowband techniques. The frequencies in each column are given in megahertz. The master oscillator frequency is designated in Fig. 19B as  $f_0$ . M and M2 are programmable divide ratios for clock divider circuits 1926 and 1927. The sample rate in Fig. 19B applies to the A/D converter 1962 and D/A converter 1933. The  $F_s/(1B+Fch)$  figure represents the sampling ratio. The final IF frequency and second IF frequency are the center frequencies of the bandpass filters. Towards the bottom of Fig. 19B are sample first LO and N numbers for three different input frequencies, 1850 MHz, 1850.2 MHz, and 1930 MHz.

The frequencies and other parameters appearing in the Fig. 19B chart may be selected by use of a microprocessor or other software controller, which may refer to the system timing information or clocks as necessary to coordinate the time of switching the selected frequencies and other parameters when necessary.

A user station 302 may be designed in a similar fashion to the dual-mode base station of Figs. 19A-B, except that a user station 304 may not require a diplexer 1910 in air interface structures wherein the user station 302 does not need to transmit and receive simultaneously. Also, frequency multiplier circuits 1930 and 1950 would be

swapped because the user station 302 transmits and receives on the opposite frequency bands from the base station 304.

5 Alternative Embodiments

While preferred embodiments are disclosed herein, many variations are possible which remain within the concept and scope of the invention, and these variations would become clear to one of ordinary skill in the art after perusal of the specification, drawings and claims herein.

For example, although several embodiments have generally been described with reference to spread spectrum communication, the invention is not limited to spread spectrum communication techniques. In some narrowband applications, no preamble would be required as code synchronization is not an issue (although synchronization within a TDD or TDMA structure would still be necessary).

Moreover, while the control pulse preamble described with respect to Figs. 10A-E and 11A-D facilitates operation in some environments, these embodiments may also be implemented without the control pulse preamble. The various functions carried out by the control pulse preamble (e.g., power control, antenna selection, and the like) may be accomplished by analyzing other portions of the user transmission, or may not be necessary.

In an alternative embodiment, one or more system control channels are used so as to facilitate paging of and other transactions with user stations 302 operating within a covered region. In this embodiment, the control channel or channels provide base station or system information including traffic information at neighboring base stations to assist in handoff determinations, system identification and ownership information, open time slot information, antenna scan and gain parameters, and base station loading status. The control channel or channels may also specify user station operating parameters (e.g.,

timer counts, or actionable thresholds for power control, handoff, and the like), provide incoming call alerting (e.g., paging), provide time frame or other synchronization, and allocate system resources (e.g., time slots).

In heavy traffic (i.e., where a substantial portion of time slots are in use), it may be beneficial to dedicate a fixed time slot to handling paging transactions so as to minimize user station standby time. Further, a fixed paging time slot may eliminate the need for periodically transmitting a general polling message from the base station in various time slots when open, and thereby eliminate possible interference between polling messages from the base station 304 and forward link traffic transmissions. System information is preferably broadcast over the fixed paging time slot at or near full power so as to enable user stations 302 at a variety of ranges to hear and respond to the information.

This alternative embodiment may be further modified by outfitting the user stations 302 with selection diversity antennas and eliminating the user of control pulse preamble transmissions. Two preambles may be sent on the forward link, rather than using a control pulse preamble followed by a reverse link transmission followed by another forward link transmission. A comparison of such a structure with the previous described embodiments is shown in Fig. 17. In Fig. 17, the air interface type is identified in the first column as before, but with a trailing "D" indicating a user station 302 having a selection diversity antenna, and a trailing "P" indicating a user station 302 having no diversity selection antenna but employing a control pulse preamble (or "PCP"). As shown in the Fig. 17 chart, digital range is improved for the alternative embodiment employing a diversity antenna, or the number of time slots may be increased. These gains accrue because elimination of the pulse control preamble increases time available in each time frame, which may be

devoted to expanding the serviceable range or increasing the number of available time slots.

In another alternative embodiment, user transmissions are conducted before base transmissions. In this  
5 embodiment, no control pulse preamble may be needed as the base station 304 obtains information relating to mobile power and channel quality by analyzing the user transmission. However, in such an embodiment, there is a longer delay from when the base station 304 issues an  
10 adjustment command to the user station 302 until the user station actually effectuates the adjustment command in the following time frame, thereby increasing latency in the control loop. Whether or not the control loop latency adversely impacts performance depends on the system  
15 requirements.

In addition to the above modifications, inventions described herein may be made or used in conjunction with inventions described, in whole or in part, in the following patents or co-pending applications, each of  
20 which is hereby incorporated by reference as if fully set forth herein:

U.S. Patent 5,016,255, issued in the name of  
inventors Robert C. Dixon and Jeffrey S. Vanderpool,  
25 entitled "Asymmetric Spread Spectrum Correlator";

U.S. Patent 5,022,047, issued in the name of  
inventors Robert C. Dixon and Jeffrey S. Vanderpool,  
30 entitled "Spread Spectrum Correlator";

U.S. Patent 5,285,469, issued in the name of inventor  
Jeffrey S. Vanderpool, entitled "Spread Spectrum  
Wireless Telephone System";

35 U.S. Patent 5,291,516, issued in the name of  
inventors Robert C. Dixon and Jeffrey S. Vanderpool,  
entitled "Dual Mode Transmitter and Receiver";



U.S. Patent No. 5,402,413, issued in the name of inventor Robert C. Dixon, entitled "Three Cell Wireless Communication System";

5 U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/161,187, filed December 3, 1993, in the name of inventor Robert C. Dixon, entitled "Method and Apparatus for Establishing Spread Spectrum Communication";

10 U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/146,491, filed November 1, 1993, in the name of inventors Robert A. Gold and Robert C. Dixon, entitled "Despreading/Demodulating Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum Signals";

15 U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/293,671, filed August 18, 1994, in the name of inventors Robert C. Dixon, Jeffrey S. Vanderpool, and Douglas G. Smith, entitled "Multi-Mode, Multi-Band Spread Spectrum Communication System";

20

U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/293,671 filed on August 1, 1994, in the name of inventors Gary B. Anderson, Ryan N. Jensen, Bryan K. Petch, and Peter

25 O. Peterson, entitled "PCS Pocket Phone/Microcell Communication Over-Air Protocol";

U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/304,091, filed September 1, 1994, in the name of inventors Randy

30 Durrant and Mark Burbach, entitled "Coherent and Noncoherent CPM Correlation Method and Apparatus";

U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/334,587, filed November 3, 1994, in the name of inventor Logan

35 Scott, entitled "Antenna Diversity Techniques"; and

U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/383,518, filed February 3, 1995, Lyon & Lyon Docket No. 201/081, in the name of inventor Logan Scott, entitled "Spread Spectrum Correlation Using SAW Device."

5

It is also noted that variations in the transmission portion 502 of the time frame 501 may be employed. For example, systems employing error correction on the forward link (i.e., the base transmission) may interleave data  
10 destined for different user stations 302 across the entire burst of the transmission portion 502.

## Spread TDD

## Link Designer 3

FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

		TDD, Spread M-ary with Big Slots 5.000 MHz Chip Rate 25.0 x 8.00 kbps		TDD, Spread M-ary Var Slots, Ranging 5.000 MHz Chip Rate		TDD, Spread M-ary Var Slots, Linked 5.000 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps	
		Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
5	2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	625.00	800.00	625.00	800.00	625.00	800.00
	Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Base T/R Switch Time (usec):	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
	Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
	Total Switch Time (usec):	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20
10	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0	0	0	0	102.5	102.5
	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	20.50	20.50
	Max Range Bin Step Size (mi):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1.91	1.91
15	Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	60.20	60.20
	Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	2	2	2	2	2	2
	TDD Max Cell Radius (mi):	1.91	1.91	8.47	8.47	0.00	0.00
	Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	41.00	216.00	181.80	181.80	0.00	0.00
20	Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):	205.00	1080.00	909.00	909.00	0.00	0.00
	Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	102.50	540.00	454.50	454.50	0.00	0.00
	Total Guard Time (usec):	60.20	235.20	201.00	201.00	60.20	60.20
	Slot Structure Efficiency:	90.37%	70.60%	67.84%	67.84%	90.37%	90.37%

Table A-1

**Spread TDD**

# of Ant Probes to Send (Forward Link) :-	0	28	4	32	56	1	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Base Antenna Probe Length (chips) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Antenna Switch Time (chips) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Total Chips per Antenna Word (chips) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
PCP Sync Word Length (chips) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Antenna Select (symbols) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Antenna Select (bits) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
PCP Duration (chips) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Sync Word Length (chips) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Overhead Length (chips) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Header Message Length (bits) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
D-Channel Message Length (bits) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
B-Channel Message Length (bits) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
R-Channel Message Length (bits) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
CRC Bits in Traffic Mode (bits) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Simplex Message Length (bits) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Simplex Message Length (symbols) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Simplex Message Length (chips) :-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456
Total Number of Chips:-	0	28	4	32	56	0	5	88	56	144	21	8	160	0	16	205	41	1312	1456

**Table A-1**

111

## Spread TDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):		291.20	273.60	291.20	273.60	220.80	203.20	291.20	273.60
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		8	8	8	8	5.25	5.25	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		256	256	200	200	168	168	256	256
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:		32	32	25	25	21	21	32	32
Superframe Duration (msec):		20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/slot:		3125		4000		3125		3125	
Chip Duration (usec):		0.20		0.20		0.20		0.20	
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):		(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-2

## Spread TDD

5	Base Tx Preamble START:	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0
	Base Tx Preamble END:	11.20	56	11.20	56	11.20	56	11.20	56
	Base Tx Message START:	11.20	56	11.20	56	11.20	56	11.20	56
	Base Tx Message END:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
	Base Tx Antenna Message START:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
10	Base Tx Antenna Message END:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) START:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) END:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
	Base T->R Switch START:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
	Base T->R Switch END:	280.00	1400	280.00	1400	280.00	1400	280.00	1400
15	Base Rx Preamble START:	280.00	1400	280.00	1400	280.00	1400	280.00	1400
	Base Rx Preamble END:	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456
	Base Rx Message START:	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456
	Base Rx Message END:	553.60	2768	553.60	2768	553.60	2768	553.60	2768
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 START:	553.60	2768	553.60	2768	553.60	2768	553.60	2768
20	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 END:	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 START:	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 END:	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) START:	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) END:	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5
25	Base Rx PCP START:	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 START:	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 END:	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5
	Base Rx Guard Time 2 START:	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5
	Base Rx Guard Time 2 END:	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch START:	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch END:	625.00	3125	625.00	3125	625.00	3125	625.00	3125
	Leftovers (Better be Zero):	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0

Table A-2

113

## Spread TDD

## Data Rates/RF Channel:

5	BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz):	5000	5000	5000	5000	5000	5000	5000	5000
	Frequency Rouse Factor (N):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz):	15000	15000	15000	15000	15000	15000	15000	15000
	S/I (dB):	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
	Noise Figure G 290K (dB):	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
	Antenna Temperature (K):	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300
	Sys KT inc. NF (dBm/Hz):	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9
	Sys KT inc. NF (mW/kHz):	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14
10	Implementation Loss (dB):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	I/(S.BW) (num):	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05
	M-ary NonCoher Format:	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Bits per Symbol:	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
15	Required Frame Error Rate:	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02
	Frame Length for Kb/No Calc. (bits):	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
	Actual Eqv. Frame Length (bits):	205	205	205	205	205	205	205	205
	Antenna Diversity Factor:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Rake Diversity Factor:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
20	Required Eb/No (dB):	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897
	1/Eb/NoL (num):	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962
	Sensitivity in S/I (dBm):	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05
	Sensitivity, Therm Noise Only (dBm):	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00
	S/I Induced Sensitivity Loss (dB):	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95
	Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW):	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10
25	Max Simplex Data Rate (kbps):	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25
	Max Simplex Symbol Rate (ksps):	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25
	Chips per Symbol:	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00
	Symbol Duration (usec):	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400
	Chips per Bit:	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
30	Processing Gain per bit (dB):	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06

Table A-3

S/(N+I) into A/D (dB) *		S/N into A/D (dB) :	
2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93
5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88
Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps) :			
353.00	353.00	275.78	275.78
0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
353.00	353.00	275.78	275.78
Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps) :			
353.00	353.00	275.78	275.78
0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
Link Asymmetry Factor (dB) :			
353.00	353.00	275.78	275.78
0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
353.00	353.00	275.78	275.78
0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table A-3





116

## Spread FDD

## Link Designer 3

FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

		FDD, Spread M-ary Var Var Slots, Ranging 2.800 MHz Chip Rate		FDD, Spread M-ary Var Slots, Linked 2.800 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps		FDD, Spread M-ary with Small Slots 2.800 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps		FDD, Spread M-ary with Big Slots 2.800 MHz Chip Rate 28.0 x 8.00 kbps	
Slotting Efficiency:		Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
5	2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	625.00	625.00	625.00	625.00	625.00	625.00	714.29	714.29
	Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	0	32	0	32	0	32	0	32
	Base T/R Switch Time (usec):	0.00	11.43	0.00	11.43	0.00	11.43	0.00	11.43
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	32	0	32	0	32	0	32	0
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	11.43	0.00	11.43	0.00	11.43	0.00	11.43	0.00
10	Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	32	0	32	0	32	0	32	0
	Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	11.43	0.00	11.43	0.00	11.43	0.00	11.43	0.00
	Total Switch Time (usec):	22.86	11.43	22.86	11.43	22.86	11.43	22.86	11.43
15	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0	114	59	114	0	114	0	364
	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	40.71	21.07	40.71	0.00	40.71	0.00	130.00
	Max Range Bin Step Size (m):	0.00	3.79	1.96	3.79	0.00	3.79	0.00	12.11
	Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	22.86	52.14	65.00	52.14	22.86	52.14	22.86	141.43
20	Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	1	1	2	1	2	1	2	1
	TDD Max Cell Radius (mi):	13.67	-0.00	0.00	-0.00	1.96	-0.00	6.12	0.00
	Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	146.79	-0.00	0.00	-0.00	42.14	-0.00	131.43	0.00
	Total TDD Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	411.00	-0.00	0.00	-0.00	118.00	-0.00	368.00	0.00
	Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	411.00	-0.00	0.00	-0.00	59.00	-0.00	184.00	0.00
	Total Guard Time (usec):	169.64	52.14	65.00	52.14	65.00	52.14	154.29	141.43
	Slot Structure Efficiency:	72.86%	91.66%	89.60%	91.66%	89.60%	91.66%	78.40%	80.20%

Table A-5

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

117

## Spread FDD

5	# of Ant Probes to Send (Forward Link):	0	3	0	3	0	3	0	3
	Base Antenna Probe Length (chips):	56	56	56	56	56	56	56	56
	Antenna Switch Time (chips):	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
	Total Chips per Antenna Word (chips):	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60
	PCP Sync Word Length (chips):	112	0	112	0	112	0	112	0
10	PCP Sync Word Length (chips):	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
	Antenna Select (symbols):	5	0	5	0	5	0	5	0
	Antenna Select (bits):	144	0	144	0	144	0	144	0
	PCP Duration (chips):	112	112	112	112	112	112	112	112
	Sync Word Length (chips):	256	292	256	292	256	292	256	292
15	Overhead Length (chips):								
	Header Message Length (bits):	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21
	D-Channel Message Length (bits):	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
	B-Channel Message Length (bits):	105	160	160	160	160	160	160	160
	R-Channel Message Length (bits):	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	CRC Bits in Traffic Mode (bits):	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
	Simplex Message Length (bits):	150	205	205	205	205	205	205	205
	Simplex Message Length (symbols):	30	41	41	41	41	41	41	41
	Simplex Message Length (chips):	960	1312	1312	1312	1312	1312	1312	1312
	Total Number of Chips:	1216	1604	1568	1604	1568	1604	1568	1604

Table A-5

## Spread FDD

	Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	434.29	572.86	560.00	572.86	560.00	572.86	560.00	572.86	560.00	572.86
5	One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
	Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	168	256	256	256	256	256	256	256	256	256
	Max# of Voice Channels per RF Channel:	21	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
	Chips/Slot:	1750		1750		1750		1750		1750	
	Chip Duration (usec):	0.36		0.36		0.36		0.36		0.36	
10	Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-6

119

Spread FDD

5	Base Tx Preamble START:	0.00	0	112	112	0.00	0	112	0.00	0	112	0	112
	Base Tx Preamble END:	40.00	112	112	112	40.00	112	112	40.00	112	112	0	112
	Base Tx Message START:	40.00	112	112	112	40.00	112	112	40.00	112	112	0	112
	Base Tx Message END:	508.57	1424	1312	1312	508.57	1424	1312	508.57	1424	1312	0	1312
	Base Tx Antenna Message START:	508.57	1424	1312	1312	508.57	1424	1312	508.57	1424	1312	0	1312
10	Base Tx Antenna Message END:	572.86	1604	180	180	572.86	1604	180	572.86	1604	180	0	180
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) START:	572.86	1604	180	180	572.86	1604	180	572.86	1604	180	0	180
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) END:	613.57	1718	114	114	613.57	1718	114	613.57	1718	114	0	114
	Base T->R Switch START:	613.57	1718	114	114	613.57	1718	114	613.57	1718	114	0	114
	Base T->R Switch END:	625.00	1750	32	32	625.00	1750	32	625.00	1750	32	0	32
15	Base Rx Preamble START:	625.00	1750	32	32	625.00	1750	32	625.00	1750	32	0	32
	Base Rx Preamble END:	665.00	1862	112	112	665.00	1862	112	665.00	1862	112	0	112
	Base Rx Message START:	665.00	1862	112	112	665.00	1862	112	665.00	1862	112	0	112
	Base Rx Message END:	1007.86	2822	960	960	1007.86	2822	960	1007.86	2822	960	0	960
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 START:	1007.86	2822	960	960	1007.86	2822	960	1007.86	2822	960	0	960
20	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 END:	1154.64	3233	411	411	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411	0	411
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 START:	1154.64	3233	411	411	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411	0	411
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 END:	1154.64	3233	411	411	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411	0	411
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	1154.64	3233	411	411	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411	0	411
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	1154.64	3233	411	411	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411	0	411
25	Mob 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) START:	1154.64	3233	411	411	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411	0	411
	Mob 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) END:	1166.07	3265	32	32	1166.07	3265	32	1166.07	3265	32	0	32
	Base Rx PCP START:	1166.07	3265	32	32	1166.07	3265	32	1166.07	3265	32	0	32
	Base Rx PCP END:	1217.50	3409	144	144	1217.50	3409	144	1217.50	3409	144	0	144
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 START:	1217.50	3409	144	144	1217.50	3409	144	1217.50	3409	144	0	144
30	Base Rx Guard Time 1 END:	1217.50	3409	144	144	1217.50	3409	144	1217.50	3409	144	0	144
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	1217.50	3409	144	144	1217.50	3409	144	1217.50	3409	144	0	144
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	1238.57	3468	59	59	1238.57	3468	59	1238.57	3468	59	0	59
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch START:	1238.57	3468	59	59	1238.57	3468	59	1238.57	3468	59	0	59
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch END:	1250.00	3500	32	32	1250.00	3500	32	1250.00	3500	32	0	32
Leftovers (Better be Zero!)		0.00	0	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0	0

Table A-6

## Spread FDD

## Data Rates/RF Channel:

5	BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz):		2800	2800	2800	2800	2800	2800	2800
	Frequency Rouse Factor (N):		3	3	3	3	3	3	3
10	Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz):		16800	16800	16800	16800	16800	16800	16800
	S/I (dB):		6	6	6	6	6	6	6
15	Noise Figure G 290K (dB):		4	4	4	4	4	4	4
	Antenna Temperature (K):		300	300	300	300	300	300	300
20	Sys kt inc. NF (dBm/Hz):		-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9
	Sys kt inc. NF (mW/kHz):		1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14
25	Implementation Loss (dB):		3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	I/(S.BW) (num):		9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05
30	M-ary NonCoher Format:		32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Bits per Symbol:		5	5	5	5	5	5	5
15	Required Frame Error Rate:		1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02
	Actual Evg. Frame Length (bits):		200	200	200	200	200	200	200
20	Antenna Diversity Factor:		2	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Required Eb/No (dB):		7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897
25	Sensitivity in S/I (dBm):		-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57
	S/I Induced Sensitivity Loss (dB):		-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52
30	Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW):		2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95
	Max Simplex Data Rate (kbps):		437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50
15	Chips per Symbol:		87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5
	Symbol Duration (usec):		11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429
20	Chips per Bit:		6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
	Processing Gain per bit (dB):		8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06

Table A-7

## Spread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB): S/N into A/D (dB):	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93
		5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88
		159.38	196.00	196.00	196.00	171.50	175.44
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Max Duplex Data Rate (Kbps): Pilot Channel Overhead (Kbps): Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (Kbps): Link Asymmetry Factor (dB):	200.50	200.50	200.50	200.50	200.50	175.44
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
		159.38	196.00	196.00	196.00	171.50	175.44
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table A-7





Spread FDD

Num Geographic Sectors (1 Base/Sector):		3	3	3	3	3	3
Sector Loss Due to Antenna Overlap:		15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%
Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity:		2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55
Total Number of RF Channels at Site:		3	3	3	3	3	3
1% GOS Erlangs Handeled at Site:		28.64	49.19	49.19	49.19	39.71	39.71
2% GOS Erlangs Handeled at Site:		31.32	52.94	52.94	52.94	42.99	42.99

5

Table A-8

10

## Spread FDD

## Link Designer 3

## FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

FDD, Spread M-ary  
Var Slots,  
Ranging 1.600 MHz  
Chip Rate 13.1 x  
8.00 kbps

FDD, Spread M-ary Var  
Slots, Linked 1.600 MHz  
Chip Rate 20.0 x 8.00  
kbps

FDD, Spread M-ary with  
Small Slots 1.600 MHz  
Chip Rate 20.0 x 8.00  
kbps

FDD, Spread M-ary with Big  
Slots 1.600 MHz Chip Rate 16.0  
x 8.00 kbps

## Slotting Efficiency:

	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
5	1000.00	1000.00	1000.00	1000.00	1000.00	1000.00	1250.00	1250.00
	0	24	0	24	0	24	0	24
	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00
10	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00
	24	0	24	0	24	0	24	0
	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00
	30.00	15.00	30.00	15.00	30.00	15.00	30.00	15.00
15	0	90	20	90	0	90	0	490
	0.00	56.25	12.50	56.25	0.00	56.25	0.00	306.25
	0.00	5.24	1.16	5.24	0.00	5.24	0.00	28.52
	30.00	71.25	55.00	71.25	30.00	71.25	30.00	321.25
20	1	1	2	1	2	1	2	1
	21.66	0.00	0.00	0.00	1.16	0.00	12.81	0.00
	232.50	0.00	0.00	0.00	25.00	0.00	275.00	0.00
	372.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	40.00	0.00	440.00	0.00
	372.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	20.00	0.00	220.00	0.00
	262.50	71.25	55.00	71.25	55.00	71.25	305.00	321.25
	73.75%	92.88%	94.50%	92.88%	94.50%	92.88%	75.60%	74.30%

Table A-9



## Spread FDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):		725.00	928.75	945.00	928.75	945.00	928.75	945.00	928.75	945.00	928.75
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		105	160	160	160	160	160	160	160	160	160
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:		13.125	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Superframe Duration (msec):		20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:		1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600
Chip Duration (usec):		0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):											
			(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-10

## Spread FDD

5	Base Tx Preamble START:	0.00	0	84	0.00	0	0.00	0	84	0.00	0	84
	Base Tx Preamble END:	52.50	84	84	52.50	84	52.50	84	84	52.50	84	84
	Base Tx Message START:	52.50	84	0	52.50	84	52.50	84	0	52.50	84	0
	Base Tx Message END:	872.50	1396	1312	872.50	1396	872.50	1396	1312	872.50	1396	1312
	Base Tx Antenna Message START:	872.50	1396	0	872.50	1396	872.50	1396	0	872.50	1396	0
10	Base Tx Antenna Message END:	928.75	1486	90	928.75	1486	928.75	1486	90	928.75	1486	90
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) START:	928.75	1486	0	928.75	1486	928.75	1486	0	928.75	1486	0
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) END:	985.00	1576	90	985.00	1576	985.00	1576	90	985.00	1576	90
	Base T->R Switch START:	985.00	1576	0	985.00	1576	985.00	1576	0	985.00	1576	0
	Base T->R Switch END:	1000.00	1600	24	1000.00	1600	1000.00	1600	24	1000.00	1600	24
15	Base Rx Preamble START:	1000.00	1600	0	1000.00	1600	1000.00	1600	0	1000.00	1600	0
	Base Rx Preamble END:	1052.50	1684	84	1052.50	1684	1052.50	1684	84	1052.50	1684	84
	Base Rx Message START:	1052.50	1684	0	1052.50	1684	1052.50	1684	0	1052.50	1684	0
	Base Rx Message END:	1652.50	2644	960	1652.50	2644	1652.50	2644	960	1652.50	2644	960
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 START:	1652.50	2644	0	1652.50	2644	1652.50	2644	0	1652.50	2644	0
20	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 END:	1885.00	3016	372	1885.00	3016	1885.00	3016	372	1885.00	3016	372
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 START:	1885.00	3016	0	1885.00	3016	1885.00	3016	0	1885.00	3016	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 END:	1885.00	3016	0	1885.00	3016	1885.00	3016	0	1885.00	3016	0
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) START:	1885.00	3016	0	1885.00	3016	1885.00	3016	0	1885.00	3016	0
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) END:	1900.00	3040	24	1900.00	3040	1900.00	3040	24	1900.00	3040	24
25	Base Rx PCP START:	1900.00	3040	0	1900.00	3040	1900.00	3040	0	1900.00	3040	0
	Base Rx PCP END:	1972.50	3156	116	1972.50	3156	1972.50	3156	116	1972.50	3156	116
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 START:	1972.50	3156	0	1972.50	3156	1972.50	3156	0	1972.50	3156	0
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 END:	1972.50	3156	0	1972.50	3156	1972.50	3156	0	1972.50	3156	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	1972.50	3156	0	1972.50	3156	1972.50	3156	0	1972.50	3156	0
30	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	1985.00	3176	20	1985.00	3176	1985.00	3176	20	1985.00	3176	20
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch START:	1985.00	3176	0	1985.00	3176	1985.00	3176	0	1985.00	3176	0
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch END:	2000.00	3200	24	2000.00	3200	2000.00	3200	24	2000.00	3200	24
	Leftovers (Better be Zero):	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0

Table A-10

128

## Spread FDD

## Data Rates/Rf Channel:

5	BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz):	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600
	Frequency Rouse Factor (N):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
10	Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz):	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600
	S/I (dB):	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
15	Noise Figure G 290K (dB):	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
	Antenna Temperature (K):	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300
20	Sys Kt inc. NF (dBm/KHz):	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9
	Sys Kt inc. NF (mW/KHz):	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14
25	Implementation Loss (dB):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	I/(S.BW) (num):	0.00016	0.00016	0.00016	0.00016	0.00016	0.00016	0.00016	0.00016
30	M-ary NonCoher Format:	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Bits per Symbol:	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
15	Required Frame Error Rate:	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02
	Frame Length for Kb/No Calc. (bits):	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
20	Actual Eqv. Frame Length (bits):	150	150	150	150	150	150	150	150
	Antenna Diversity Factor:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
25	Rake Diversity Factor:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Required Eb/No (dB):	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897
30	1/Eb/NoL (num):	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962
	Sensitivity in S/I (dBm):	-102.00	-102.00	-102.00	-102.00	-102.00	-102.00	-102.00	-102.00
15	S/I Induced Sensitivity Only (dBm):	-104.95	-104.95	-104.95	-104.95	-104.95	-104.95	-104.95	-104.95
	Required Sensitivity Loss (dB):	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95
20	Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW):	6.3H-11	6.3H-11	6.3H-11	6.3H-11	6.3H-11	6.3H-11	6.3H-11	6.3H-11
	Max Simplex Data Rate (kbps):	250.00	250.00	250.00	250.00	250.00	250.00	250.00	250.00
25	Max Simplex Symbol Rate (kaps):	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50
	Chips per Symbol:	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00
30	Symbol Duration (usec):	20.000	20.000	20.000	20.000	20.000	20.000	20.000	20.000
	Chips per Bit:	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
15	Processing Gain per bit (dB):	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06

Table A-11

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

## Spread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB) :	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93
	S/N into A/D (dB) :	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps) :	92.19	116.09	116.09	116.09	116.09	116.09	116.09	92.88
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps) :	92.19	116.09	116.09	116.09	116.09	116.09	94.50	92.88
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB) :		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table A-11





131

## Spread FDD

## Link Designer 3

FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

FDD, Spread M-ary Var  
1.400 MHz Chip  
Rate 10.5 x 8.00  
kbps

FDD, Spread M-ary Var  
Slots, Linked 1.400 MHz  
Chip Rate 16.01 x 8.00  
kbps

FDD, Spread M-ary with  
Small Slots 1.400 MHz  
Chip Rate 16.0 x 8.00  
kbps

FDD, Spread M-ary with Big  
Slots 1.400 MHz Chip Rate  
14.0 x 8.00 kbps

## Slotting Efficiency:

	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
5	1250.00	1250.00	1250.00	1250.00	1428.57	1428.57
2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	0	24	0	24	0	24
Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	0.00	17.14	0.00	17.14	0.00	17.14
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	24	0	24	0	24	0
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	17.14	0.00	17.14	0.00	17.14	0.00
Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	24	0	24	0	24	0
Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	17.14	0.00	17.14	0.00	17.14	0.00
Total Switch Time (usec):	34.29	17.14	34.29	17.14	34.29	17.14
10						
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0	212	67	212	0	462
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	151.43	47.86	151.43	0.00	330.00
Max Range Bin Step Size (m):	0.00	14.10	4.46	14.10	0.00	30.74
Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	34.29	168.57	130.00	168.57	34.29	347.14
15						
Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	1	1	2	1	2	1
TDD Max Cell Radius (mi):	27.88	0.00	0.00	4.46	12.77	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	299.29	0.00	0.00	95.71	274.29	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):	419.00	0.00	0.00	134.00	384.00	0.00
Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	419.00	0.00	0.00	67.00	192.00	0.00
Total Guard Time (usec):	333.57	168.57	130.00	168.57	308.57	347.14
Slot Structure Efficiency:	73.31%	86.51%	89.60%	86.51%	78.40%	75.70%
20						

Table A-13

## Spread FDD

5	# of Ant Probes to Send (Forward Link):									
	Base Antenna Probe Length (chips):									
	Antenna Switch Time (chips):									
	Total Chips per Antenna Word (chips):									
	PCP Sync Word Length (chips):									
	Antenna Select (symbols):									
	Antenna Select (bits):									
	PCP Duration (chips):									
	Sync Word Length (chips):									
	Overhead Length (chips):									
10	Header Message Length (bits):									
	D-Channel Message Length (bits):									
	B-Channel Message Length (bits):									
	R-Channel Message Length (bits):									
	CRC Bits in Traffic Mode (bits):									
	Simplex Message Length (bits):									
	Simplex Message Length (symbols):									
	Simplex Message Length (chips):									
	Total Number of Chips:									
15	Header Message Length (bits):									
	D-Channel Message Length (bits):									
	B-Channel Message Length (bits):									
	R-Channel Message Length (bits):									
	CRC Bits in Traffic Mode (bits):									
	Simplex Message Length (bits):									
	Simplex Message Length (symbols):									
	Simplex Message Length (chips):									
	Total Number of Chips:									

Table A-13

## Spread FDD

5	Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	868.57	1081.43	1120.00	1081.43	1120.00	1081.43	1120.00	1081.43
	One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (Kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
	Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (Kbps):	84	128	128	128	128	128	112	112
	Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:	10.5	16	16	16	16	16	14	14
	Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
	Chips/Slot:	1750		1750		1750		2000	
	Chip Duration (usec):	0.71		0.71		0.71		0.71	
	Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-14



## Spread FDD

## Data Rates/RF Channel:

5	BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz): Frequency Rouse Factor (N): Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz): S/I (dB): Noise Figure G 290K (dB): Antenna Temperature (K): Sys KT inc. NF (dBm/KHz): Sys KT inc. NF (mW/KHz): Implementation Loss (dB):	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3
10	I/(S.BW) (num):	0.00018	0.00018	0.00018	0.00018	0.00018	0.00018
15	M-ary NonCoher Format: Bits per Symbol: Required Frame Error Rate: Frame Length for Kb/No Calc. (bits): Actual Eqv. Frame Length (bits): Antenna Diversity Factor: Rate Diversity Factor: Required Eb/No (dB): I/Eb/NoL (num):	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962
20	Sensitivity in S/I (dBm): Sensitivity, Therm Noise Only (dBm): S/I Induced Sensitivity Loss (dB): Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW): Max Simplex Data Rate (Kbps): Max Simplex Symbol Rate (Kaps): Chips per Symbol: Symbol Duration (usec): Chips per Bit: Processing Gain per bit (dB):	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06
25							
30							

Table A-15

Spread FDD

5	S/(N+1) into A/D (dB):	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93
	S/N into A/D (dB):	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps):	80.19	94.63	94.63	94.63	94.63	94.63	94.63	82.80
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps):	80.19	94.63	94.63	94.63	94.63	94.63	94.63	82.80
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB):		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table A-15

Spread FDD

Spread TDD

### Voice Channel/GOS Calculations:

5	Vocoder Rate (kbps) :	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00
	Overhead Rate per Vocoder (kbps) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Data Rate per Voice Circuit (kbps) :	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00
10	Number of RP Channels/Sector:	1	1	1	1	1	1
	Deployed System Bandwidth (MHz) :	8.40	8.40	8.40	8.40	8.40	8.40
	Max Number Voice Channels Supported:	10.5	16.0	16.0	16.0	14.0	14.0
	Percentage of Handsets in TSI/HO:	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%
	Erlangs Supported at 1% GOS:	3.90	7.77	7.77	7.77	5.78	5.78
	Erlangs Supported at 2% GOS:	4.45	8.60	8.60	8.60	6.48	6.48
15	Single Tandem Framing Delay (msec) :	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00
	Dual Tandem Framing Delay (msec) :	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00
	Base Station Transmit Duty Cycle:	86.51%	86.51%	86.51%	86.51%	75.70%	75.70%
	Handset Single Slot Tx Duty Cycle:	6.62%	5.60%	5.60%	5.60%	5.60%	5.60%
	Capacity Calculations:						
20	Handset Peak Transmitt Power (mW) :	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	(dbm)
	Handset Average Transmitt Power (mW) :	19.85	19.85	16.80	16.80	16.80	24.8
	Handset Antenna Gain (dBd) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	12.3
	Base Peak Transmitt Power (mW) :	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	0.00
	Base Average Transmitt Power (mW) :	259.54	259.54	259.54	259.54	227.10	24.8
	Base Antenna Gain (dBd) :	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00	24.1
25	Num Geographic Sectors (1 Base/Sector) :	3	3	3	3	3	17.00
	Sector Loss Due to Antenna Overlap:	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	3
	Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity:	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	15.0%
	Total Number of RP Channels at Site:	3	3	3	3	3	2.55
	1% GOS Erlangs Handeled at Site:	9.95	19.80	19.80	19.80	14.74	3
30	2% GOS Erlangs Haneled at Site:	11.34	21.93	21.93	21.93	16.52	3

Table A-16

138

## Unspread FDD

Link Designer 3  
FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

FDD, No Spread Var Slots, No Spread with Small Slots, No Spread with Big Slots  
Linked 0.640 MHz Chip Rate 40.0 x 8.00 kbps 0.640 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps  
8.00 kbps

## Slotting Efficiency:

	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
5	500.00	500.00	500.00	500.00	625.00	625.00
2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	0	8	0	8	0	8
Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	0.00	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00	12.50
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	8	0	8	0	8	0
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00
Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	8	0	8	0	8	0
Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00
Total Switch Time (usec):	25.00	12.50	25.00	12.50	25.00	12.50
10						
15						
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0	34	19	34	0	114
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	53.13	29.69	53.13	0.00	178.13
Max Range Bin Step Size (m):	0.00	4.95	2.77	4.95	0.00	16.59
Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	25.00	65.63	84.38	65.63	25.00	190.63
20						
Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	1	1	2	1	2	1
TDD Max Cell Radius (m):	10.77	0.00	0.00	2.77	8.59	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	115.63	0.00	0.00	59.38	184.38	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):	74.00	0.00	0.00	38.00	118.00	0.00
Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	74.00	0.00	0.00	19.00	59.00	0.00
Total Guard Time (usec):	140.63	65.63	84.38	65.63	209.38	190.63
Slot Structure Efficiency:	71.88%	86.88%	83.13%	86.88%	66.50%	69.50%

Table A-17

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)



## Unspread FDD

5	# of Ant Probes to Send (Forward Link):	0	3	0	3	0	3	0	3
	Base Antenna Probe Length (chips):	28	13	28	13	28	13	28	13
	Antenna Switch Time (chips):	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Total Chips per Antenna Word (chips):	30	15	30	15	30	15	30	15
	PCP Sync Word Length (chips):	28	0	28	0	28	0	28	0
10	Antenna Select (symbols):	5	0	5	0	5	0	5	0
	Antenna Select (bits):	5	0	5	0	5	0	5	0
	PCP Duration (chips):	33	0	33	0	33	0	33	0
	Sync Word Length (chips):	28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28
	Overhead Length (chips):	61	73	61	73	61	73	61	73
15	Header Message Length (bits):	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21
	D-Channel Message Length (bits):	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
	B-Channel Message Length (bits):	105	160	160	160	160	160	160	160
	R-Channel Message Length (bits):	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	CRC Bits in Traffic Mode (bits):	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
	Simplex Message Length (bits):	150	205	205	205	205	205	205	205
	Simplex Message Length (symbols):	150	205	205	205	205	205	205	205
	Simplex Message Length (chips):	150	205	205	205	205	205	205	205
	Total Number of Chips:	211	278	266	278	266	278	266	278

Table A-17

**Unspread FDD**

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	1	329.69	434.38	415.63	434.38	415.63	434.38	415.63	434.38
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		5.35	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		210	320	320	320	320	320	320	320
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:		26.25	40	40	40	40	40	40	40
Superframe Duration (msec):		20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:		320		320		320		320	
Chip Duration (usec):		1.56		1.56		1.56		1.56	
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):		(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-18

141

## Unspread FDD

5	Base Tx Preamble START:	0.00	0	28	0.00	0	28	0.00	0	28	0.00	0	28
	Base Tx Preamble END:	43.75	28	0	43.75	28	0	43.75	28	0	43.75	28	0
	Base Tx Message START:	43.75	28	0	43.75	28	0	43.75	28	0	43.75	28	0
	Base Tx Message END:	364.06	233	205	364.06	233	205	364.06	233	205	364.06	233	205
	Base Tx Antenna Message START:	364.06	233	0	364.06	233	0	364.06	233	0	364.06	233	0
10	Base Tx Antenna Message END:	434.38	278	45	434.38	278	45	434.38	278	45	434.38	278	45
	Base Tx Twiddles (FDD only) START:	434.38	278	0	434.38	278	0	434.38	278	0	434.38	278	0
	Base Twiddles (FDD only) END:	487.50	312	34	487.50	312	34	487.50	312	34	487.50	312	34
	Base T->R Switch START:	487.50	312	0	487.50	312	0	487.50	312	0	487.50	312	0
	Base T->R Switch END:	500.00	320	8	500.00	320	8	500.00	320	8	500.00	320	8
15	Base Rx Preamble START:	500.00	320	0	500.00	320	0	500.00	320	0	500.00	320	0
	Base Rx Preamble END:	543.75	348	28	543.75	348	28	543.75	348	28	543.75	348	28
	Base Rx Message START:	543.75	348	0	543.75	348	0	543.75	348	0	543.75	348	0
	Base Rx Message END:	778.13	498	150	778.13	498	150	778.13	498	150	778.13	498	150
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 START:	778.13	498	0	778.13	498	0	778.13	498	0	778.13	498	0
20	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 END:	893.75	572	74	893.75	572	74	893.75	572	74	893.75	572	74
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 START:	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 END:	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0	893.75	572	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	906.25	580	8	906.25	580	8	906.25	580	8	906.25	580	8
25	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) END:	906.25	580	0	906.25	580	0	906.25	580	0	906.25	580	0
	Base Rx PCP START:	957.81	613	33	957.81	613	33	957.81	613	33	957.81	613	33
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 START:	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 END:	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0	957.81	613	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	987.50	632	19	987.50	632	19	987.50	632	19	987.50	632	19
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch START:	987.50	632	0	987.50	632	0	987.50	632	0	987.50	632	0
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch END:	1000.00	640	8	1000.00	640	8	1000.00	640	8	1000.00	640	8
	Leftovers (Better be Zero):	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0
		0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0

Table A-18

## Data Rates/RF Channel:

5	10	15	20	25	30
BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz):	640	640	640	640	640
Frequency Rouse Factor (N):	6	6	6	6	6
Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz):	7680	7680	7680	7680	7680
S/I (dB):	50	50	50	50	50
Noise Figure G 290K (dB):	4	4	4	4	4
Antenna Temperature (K):	300	300	300	300	300
Sys KT inc. NF (dBm/Hz):	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9
Sys KT inc. NF (mW/kHz):	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14
Implementation Loss (dB):	3	3	3	3	3
I/(S.BW) (num):	1.6E-08	1.6E-08	1.6E-08	1.6E-08	1.6E-08
M-ary NonCoher Format:	2	2	2	2	2
Bits per Symbol:	1	1	1	1	1
Required Frame Error Rate:	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02
Frame Length for Kb/No Calc. (bits):	200	200	200	200	200
Actual Eqv. Frame Length (bits):	150	150	205	205	205
Antenna Diversity Factor:	0	0	1	1	1
Rate Diversity Factor:	1	1	1	2	3
Required Eb/No (dB):	10.6404	10.6404	21.2716	15.9373	1.33333
1/Eb/NoL (num):	0.04325	0.04325	0.00374	0.01277	14.0081
Sensitivity in S/I (dBm):	-98.21	-98.21	-87.57	-92.92	0.01992
Sensitivity, Therm Noise Only (dBm):	-98.22	-98.22	-87.58	-92.92	-94.85
S/I Induced Sensitivity Loss (dB):	0.00	0.00	0.01	0.00	-94.85
Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW):	1.5E-10	1.5E-10	1.7E-09	5.1E-10	3.3E-10
Max Simplex Data Rate (kbps):	640.00	640.00	640.00	640.00	640.00
Max Simplex Symbol Rate (kaps):	640	640	640	640	640.00
Chips per Symbol:	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	640
Symbol Duration (usec):	1.563	1.563	1.563	1.563	1.00
Chips per Bit:	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.563
Processing Gain per bit (dB):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1.00

Table A-19

## Unspread FDD

5	S/(N+1) into A/D (dB) :	11.64	11.64	24.27	24.27	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	S/N into A/D (dB) :	11.64	11.64	24.28	24.28	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps) :	230.00	278.00	266.00	278.00	266.00	278.00	212.80	222.40
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps) :	230.00	278.00	266.00	278.00	266.00	278.00	212.80	222.40
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB) :		0.00		0.00		0.00		0.00

Table A-19

Unspread FDN

**Voice Channel/GOS Calculations:**

Vocoder Rate (kbps):

	Overhead Rate per Vocoder (kbps)	Data Rate per Voice Circuit (kbps)
ISDN	64	64
Digital Cellular	12.8	9.6
Analog Cellular	0	9.6

ဟ

Number of RP Channels/Sector:

Deployed System Bandwidth (MHz):  
Max Number Voice Channels Supported:

Percentage of Handsets in TSI/HO:

10

Erlangs supported at 10 GOS:  
Erlangs Supported at 20 GOS:

Single Tandem Pruning Delay / msec

Dual Tandem Framing Delay (msec):

Base Station Transmit Delay (msec):

<b>Base Station Transmit Duty Cycle:</b>
<b>Handset Single Slot Tx Duty Cycle:</b>

57

### Capacity Calculations:

Handset Peak Transmit Power (mW) :

Handset Average Transmit Power (mW) :

**Handøet Antenna Gain (dBd) :**

Base Peak Transmit Power (MW):

Base Average Transmit Power (mW):

Base Antenna Gain (dBD),

Num Geographic Sectors (1 Base/Sector),

**Sector Loss Due to Antenna Overlap:  
Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity**

Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity:  
Total Number of RP Channels at Site:

14 GOS Erlangs Handeled at Site:

2. GOS Erlange Haneled at Site,

30

Table A-20

[illegible]

(dBm)		(dBm)		(dBm)	
300.00	24.8	300.00	24.8	300.00	24.8
6.23	7.9	6.23	7.9	6.23	7.9
0.00		0.00		0.00	
300.00	24.8	300.00	24.8	300.00	24.8
260.63	24.2	260.63	24.2	208.50	23.2
17.00		17.00		17.00	
3		3			
15.04	15.04	15.04	15.04	15.04	15.04
2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55
3		3		3	
64.72	64.72	64.72	64.72	49.19	49.19
69.16	69.16	69.16	69.16	52.94	52.94

	(dBm)
Handset Peak Transmit Power (mW) :	300.00
Handset Average Transmit Power (mW) :	7.54
Handset Antenna Gain (dBi) :	0.00
Base Peak Transmit Power (mW) :	300.00
Base Average Transmit Power (mW) :	260.63
Base Antenna Gain (dBi) :	17.00
Num Geographic Sectors (1 Base/Sector) :	3
Sector Loss Due to Antenna Overlap:	15.04
Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity:	2.55
Total Number of RP Channels at Site:	3
1st QOS Erlangs Handled at Site:	37.84
2nd QOS Erlangs Handled at Site:	41.02
	69.16

145

## Unspread FDD

Link Designer 3  
FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

Link Designer 3	FDD, No Spread Var Slots, Ranging 0.560 MHz Chip Rate	FDD, No Spread Var Slots, Linked 0.560 MHz Chip Rate 35.0 x 8.00 kbps	FDD, No Spread with Small Slots 0.560 MHz Chip Rate 35.0 x 8.00 kbps	FDD, No Spread with Big Slots 0.560 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps	
	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	
5	2-way Message Frame Duration (usec): Base T/R Switch Time (chips): Base T/R Switch Time (usec): Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips): Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec): Base R/T Switch Time (chips): Base R/T Switch Time (usec): Total Switch Time (usec):	571.43 0 0.00 8 14.29 0.00 14.29 28.57	571.43 0 0.00 8 14.29 0.00 14.29 28.57	571.43 0 0.00 8 14.29 0.00 14.29 28.57	625.00 0 0.00 8 14.29 0.00 8 14.29 28.57
10	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips): Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec): Max Range Bin Step Size (m): Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	34 0.00 0.00 28.57	34 60.71 5.66 75.00	34 60.71 5.66 75.00	34 60.71 5.66 75.00
15	Number of 2-way TDD Guards: TDD Max Cell Radius (m): Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec): Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips): Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips): Total Guard Time (usec): Slot Structure Efficiency:	1 12.31 132.14 74.00 74.00 160.71 71.88%	2 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 96.43 83.13%	2 3.16 67.86 38.00 19.00 96.43 83.13%	1 4.99 53.57 30.00 30.00 128.57 79.43%
20					

Table A-21

[illegible]

Table A-21



## Unspread FDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	376.79	496.43	475.00	496.43	475.00	496.43	475.00	496.43
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	183.75	280	280	280	280	280	256	256
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:	22.9688	35	35	35	35	35	32	32
Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:	320		320	320	320	320	350	
Chip Duration (usec):	1.79		1.79	1.79	1.79	1.79	1.79	
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):		(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-22



## Data Rates/RF Channel:

	BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz):	560	560	560	560	560	560
	Frequency Rouse Factor (N):	6	6	6	6	6	6
	Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz):	6720	6720	6720	6720	6720	6720
5	S/I (dB):	50	50	50	50	50	50
	Noise Figure G 290K (dB):	4	4	4	4	4	4
	Antenna Temperature (K):	300	300	300	300	300	300
	Syø KT inc. NP (dBm/Hz):	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9
	Syø KT inc. NP (mW/kHz):	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14
10	Implimentation Loss (dB):	3	3	3	3	3	3
	I/(S.BW) (num):	1.8E-08	1.8E-08	1.8E-08	1.8E-08	1.8E-08	1.8E-08
	M-ary NonCoher Format:	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Bits per Symbol:	1	1	1	1	1	1
	Required Frame Error Rate:	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02
15	Frame Length for Kb/No Calc. (bits):	200	200	200	200	200	200
	Actual Eqv. Frame Length (bits):	150	150	205	205	205	205
	Antenna Diversity Factor:	0	1	1	2	3	3
	Rate Diversity Factor:	1	1	1	2	2	2
	Required Eb/No (dB):	10.6404	21.2716	21.2716	15.9373	14.0081	14.0081
20	1/EB/NoL (num):	0.04325	0.00374	0.00374	0.01277	0.01992	0.01992
	Sensitivity in S/I (dBm):	-98.79	-88.15	-88.15	-93.50	-95.43	-95.43
	Sensitivity, Thern Noise Only (dBm):	-98.80	-88.16	-88.16	-93.50	-95.43	-95.43
	S/I Induced Sensitivity Loss (dB):	0.00	0.01	0.01	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW):	1.3E-10	1.3E-10	1.5E-09	4.5E-10	2.9E-10	2.9E-10
25	Max Simplex Data Rate (kbps):	560.00	560.00	560.00	560.00	560.00	560.00
	Max Simplex Symbol rate (kaps):	560	560	560	560	560	560
	Chips per Symbol:	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
	Symbol Duration (usec):	1.786	1.786	1.786	1.786	1.786	1.786
	Chips per Bit:	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
30	Processing Gain per bit (dB):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table A-23

## Unspread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB) :	13.64	24.27	18.94	17.01	17.01
	S/N into A/D (dB) :	13.64	24.28	18.94	17.01	17.01
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps) :	201.25	212.75	212.75	212.80	212.80
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps) :	201.25	212.75	212.75	212.80	212.80
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table A-23

Unspread FDD

**Voice Channel/GOS Calculations:**

5	Vocoder Rate (kbps):	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00
	Overhead Rate per Vocoder (kbps):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Data Rate per Voice Circuit (kbps):	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00
	Number of RP Channels/Sector:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	Deployed System Bandwidth (MHz):	6.72	6.72	6.72	6.72	6.72	6.72	6.72	6.72
	Max Number Voice Channels Supported:	23.0	35.0	35.0	35.0	35.0	35.0	35.0	35.0
	Percentage of Handsets in TSI/HO:	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%
	Erlangs Supported at 1% GOS:	11.94	21.56	21.56	21.56	21.56	21.56	21.56	21.56
	Erlangs Supported at 2% GOS:	13.03	23.13	23.13	23.13	23.13	23.13	23.13	23.13
10	Single Tandem Framing Delay (msec):	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00
	Dual Tandem Framing Delay (msec):	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00
	Base Station Transmitt Duty Cycle:	86.88%	86.88%	86.88%	86.88%	86.88%	86.88%	86.88%	86.88%
	Handset Single Slot Tx Duty Cycle:	2.87%	2.87%	2.87%	2.87%	2.87%	2.87%	2.87%	2.87%
15	Capacity Calculations:								
	Handset Peak Transmit Power (mW):	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00
	Handset Average Transmit Power (mW):	8.61	8.61	8.61	8.61	8.61	8.61	8.61	8.61
	Handset Antenna Gain (dBi):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Base Peak Transmit Power (mW):		300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00
	Base Average Transmit Power (mW):		260.63	260.63	260.63	260.63	260.63	260.63	260.63
	Base Antenna Gain (dBi):		17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00
20	Num Geographic Sectors (1 Base/Sector):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	Sector Loss Due to Antenna Overlap:	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%
	Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity:	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55
	Total Number of RP Channels at Site:	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	1% GOS Erlangs Handled at Site:	30.46	54.97	54.97	54.97	54.97	54.97	54.97	54.97
	2% GOS Erlangs Handled at Site:	33.24	58.98	58.98	58.98	58.98	58.98	58.98	58.98
25									

Table A-24

30

## Unspread FDD

Link Designer 3.1  
FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

FDD, No Spread Var Slots, Ranging 0.350 MHz Chip Rate 16.4 X 8.00 kbps  
FDD, No Spread with Small Slots 0.350 MHz Chip Rate 25.0 x 8.00 kbps  
FDD, No Spread with Big Slots 0.350 MHz Chip Rate 20.0 x 8.00 kbps

## Slotting Efficiency:

	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
5	800.00	800.00	800.00	800.00	1000.00	1000.00
2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	0	8	0	8	0	8
Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	0.00	22.86	0.00	22.86	0.00	22.86
Base T/R Switch Time (usec):	8	0	8	0	8	0
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	22.86	0.00	22.86	0.00	22.86	0.00
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	8	0	8	0	8	0
Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	22.86	0.00	22.86	0.00	22.86	0.00
Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	45.71	22.86	45.71	22.86	45.71	22.86
Total Switch Time (usec):						
10						
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0	3	2	3	0	73
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	8.57	5.71	8.57	0.00	208.57
Max Range Bin Step Size (m):	0.00	0.80	0.53	0.80	0.00	19.43
Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	45.71	31.43	57.14	31.43	45.71	231.43
Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	1	1	2	1	2	1
TDD Max Cell Radius (m):	15.17	0.00	-0.00	0.00	9.85	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	162.86	0.00	-0.00	0.00	211.43	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):	57.00	0.00	-0.00	0.00	74.00	0.00
Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	57.00	0.00	-0.00	0.00	37.00	0.00
Total Guard Time (usec):	208.57	31.43	57.14	31.43	257.14	231.43
Slot Structure Efficiency:	73.93%	96.07%	92.86%	96.07%	74.29%	76.86%
15						
20						

Table A-25



## Unspread FDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	585.71	768.57	742.86	768.57	742.86	768.57	742.86	768.57
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	131.25	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
Max # of Voice Channels per RP Channel:	16.4063	25	25	25	25	25	25	25
Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:	280	280	280	280	280	280	280	280
Chip Duration (usec):	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-26







## Unspread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB):	13.64	13.64	24.27	24.27	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	S/N into A/D (dB):	13.64	13.64	24.28	24.28	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps):	129.38	168.13	162.50	168.13	162.50	168.13	130.00	134.50
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps):	129.38	168.13	162.50	168.13	162.50	168.13	130.00	134.50
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB):		0.00		0.00		0.00		0.00

Table A-27



159

These and other variations and modifications to the communication techniques disclosed herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art, and are considered to fall within the scope and spirit of the invention and  
5 to be within the purview of the appended claims.

Claims

1. A method of time division duplex communication between a base station and a user station over a single frequency band, comprising the steps of
- 5 transmitting, over a designated frequency band, a user message from a user station directed to a base station,
- receiving said user message at said base station,
- calculating at said base station, based on the time
- 10 of receiving said user message at said base station, a distance of said user station relative to said base station, and
- transmitting, over said designated frequency band, a base message from said base station directed to said user
- 15 station, said base message comprising a timing adjustment command whereby timing of a subsequent message from said user station directed to said base station over said designated frequency band is advanced or retarded.
- 20 2. The method of claim 1 wherein at least one of said user message and said base message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.
3. The method of claim 1 wherein said user station
- 25 maintains a timing variable, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing variable in order to advance or retard said timing.
4. The method of claim 1 wherein said user station
- 30 maintains a timing parameter relative to a fixed reference, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing parameter in order to advance or retard said timing.

161

5        5.     The method of claim 1 wherein said step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station comprises a step of calculating a propagation delay of said base message to reach said user station and said user message to reach said base station.

10       6.     The method of claim 1 further comprising a step of adjusting a relative timing of subsequent messages from said user station by periodically transmitting from said base station to said user station, over said designated frequency, subsequent timing adjustment commands.

15       7.     The method of claim 1 wherein said user message is transmitted in response to a general polling message sent by said base station in an attempt to establish communication with said base station.

20       8.     The method of claim 1 wherein said user station is in established communication with said base station, and wherein said user message comprises a control pulse preamble.

25       9.     The method of claim 8 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a plurality of concatenated codes.

      10.    The method of claim 9 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a kronecker product of a minimum peak sidelobe code and a Barker code.

30       11.    The method of claim 1 wherein said user station is in established communication with said base station, and wherein said user message comprises a traffic mode user-to-base message.

12. A method of time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, wherein said base station communicates sequentially during a time frame with the  
5 user stations in established communication with said base station, and wherein said time frame is divided into a plurality of time slots of equal duration, said method comprising the steps of

transmitting over a designated frequency band, during  
10 a designated time slot in a first time frame, a first base-to-user message from said base station to a user station,

receiving at said base station, during said designated time slot in said first time frame and over  
15 said designated frequency band, a first user-to-base message from said user station,

transmitting, during said designated time slot in a second time frame subsequent to said first time frame and over said designated frequency band, a second base-to-user  
20 message from said base station to said user station, said second base-to-user message comprising a timing adjustment command, and

receiving at said base station, during said designated time slot in said second time frame and over said  
25 designated frequency band, a second user-to-base message from said user station, said second user-to-base message advanced or retarded in time in response to said timing adjustment command.

30 13. The method of claim 12 further comprising a step of, after receiving said first user-to-base message and before transmitting any subsequent base-to-user message from said base station, receiving at said base station a control pulse preamble from a second user station over  
35 said designated frequency band.



14. The method of claim 13 further comprising the steps of

transmitting, during a second time slot immediately  
5 following said first time slot in said first time frame,  
and over said designated frequency band, a third base-to-  
user message from said base station to said second user  
station, said third base-to-user message comprising a  
timing adjustment command, and  
10 receiving at said base station, during said second  
time slot and over said designated frequency band, a third  
user-to-base message from said second user station, said  
third user-to-base message advanced or retarded in time in  
response to said timing adjustment command.

15

15. The method of claim 14 wherein said control  
pulse preamble comprises a spread spectrum code.

16. The method of claim 14 wherein said control  
20 pulse preamble comprises a plurality of concatenated  
codes.

17. The method of claim 12 wherein at least one of  
said first user-to-base message, said second user-to-base  
25 message, said first base-to-user message, and said second  
base-to-user message is transmitted using a spread  
spectrum technique.

18. The method of claim 12 wherein said user station  
30 maintains a timing variable, and wherein said timing  
adjustment command modifies said timing variable in order  
to advance or retard the timing of said second user-to-  
base message.

19. The method of claim 12 wherein said user station maintains a timing parameter relative to a fixed reference, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing parameter in order to advance or retard the timing of said second user-to-base message.

20. The method of claim 12 further comprising a step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station.

10

21. The method of claim 20 wherein said step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station comprises a step of calculating a propagation delay of said first base-to-user message to reach said user station and said first user-to-base message to reach said base station.

22. The method of claim 20 further comprising a step of receiving at said base station, prior to transmitting said second user-to-base message, and over said designated frequency band, a control pulse preamble from said user station, wherein said step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station comprises a step of calculating a propagation delay of said first base-to-user message to reach said user station and said control pulse preamble to reach said base station.

23. A system for carrying out time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, said system comprising

a plurality of time frames, and  
a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, each of said time slots comprising

165

a base message interval during which a base message may be sent over a predetermined frequency band by a base station to a user station in established communication with said base station,

5 a user message interval during which a user message may be sent over said predetermined frequency band to said base station by said user station in established communication with said base station, wherein said base station periodically transmits, during  
10 said base message interval, a timing adjustment command to said user station in established communication with said base station.

24. The system of claim 23 wherein at least one of  
15 said base message and said user message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

25. The system of claim 23 wherein said user station maintains a timing variable, and wherein said timing  
20 adjustment command modifies said timing variable in order to advance or retard a timing of said user station.

26. The system of claim 23 wherein said user station maintains a timing parameter relative to a fixed  
25 reference, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing parameter in order to advance or retard a timing of said user station.

27. The system of claim 23 wherein said timing  
30 adjustment command is based on a calculation of a distance of said user station relative to said base station.

28. The system of claim 27 wherein said calculation of a distance comprises a calculation of a propagation

166

delay of said base message to reach said user station and said user message to reach said base station.

29. The method of claim 27 wherein said user station  
5 is in established communication with said base station, and wherein said user message comprises a traffic mode user-to-base message.

30. A system for carrying out time division duplex  
10 communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, wherein the base station communicates sequentially with the user stations with which the base station has established communication, said system comprising  
15 a plurality of time frames of equal duration, and  
a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, each of said time slots comprising  
a base message interval in an initial portion of  
20 said time slot, during which either a base-to-user message may be sent by a base station to a user station in established communication with said base station during said time slot, or a general polling message may be transmitted indicating the availability of said time slot, and  
25 a user portion following said base message interval in said time slot, during which either a user-to-base message may be sent to said base station by said user station in established communication with said base station, or a reply message may be  
30 sent to said base station by a user station seeking to establish communication with said base station, said user portion and said base message interval both lying on the same frequency band,  
wherein said base station periodically transmits, during  
35 said base message interval, a timing adjustment command to

said user station in established communication with said base station.

31. The system of claim 30 wherein said user portion  
5 comprises a preamble interval during which a control pulse preamble may be transmitted by a second user station in established communication with said base station.

32. The system of claim 31 wherein said second user  
10 station is in established communication with said base station in the time slot immediately following the time slot in which the second user station sent the control pulse preamble.

33. A method for establishing time division duplex  
15 communication between a base station and a user station over a single frequency band, wherein said base station communicates sequentially during a time frame with user stations in established communication with said base  
20 station, and wherein said time frame is divided into a plurality of time slots of equal duration, said method comprising the steps of

transmitting, over a designated frequency band and  
during a first base interval of an available time slot in  
25 a first time frame, a general polling message,

receiving, over said designated frequency band and  
during a user interval of said available time slot, a  
reply message from a user station,

calculating at said base station, based on the time  
30 of receiving said reply message at said base station, a distance of said user station relative to said base station, and

transmitting, over said designated frequency band and  
during a second base interval of said available time slot  
35 in a second time frame, a base message from said base

station directed to said user station, said base message comprising a timing adjustment command whereby timing of a subsequent message from said user station directed to said base station over said designated frequency band is  
5 advanced or retarded.

34. The method of claim 33 wherein said base station and said user station communicate over said designated frequency band in said available time slot in subsequent  
10 time frames.

35. The method of claim 34 wherein said base station sends, in each of said subsequent time frames, a base-to-user message directed to said user station, and wherein  
15 said user station sends, in each of said subsequent time frames, a user-to-base message directed to said base station.

36. The method of claim 35 wherein said base-to-user  
20 message periodically comprises a new timing adjustment command.

37. The method of claim 35 wherein said user station sends, prior to each base-to-user message, a control pulse  
25 preamble over said designated frequency band and directed to said base station.

38. The method of claim 37 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a plurality of concatenated  
30 codes.

39. The method of claim 37 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a kronecker product of a minimum peak sidelobe code and a Barker code.

35

40. The method of claim 33 wherein at least one of said general polling message, reply message, and base message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

5        41. The method of claim 33 wherein said user station maintains a timing variable, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing variable in order to advance or retard said timing.

10       42. The method of claim 33 wherein said user station maintains a timing parameter relative to a fixed reference, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing parameter in order to advance or retard said timing.

15       43. The method of claim 33 wherein said step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station comprises a step of calculating a propagation delay of said general polling message to reach  
20 said user station and said reply message to reach said base station.

25       44. In a system for time division duplex communication wherein a base station communicates with a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, said system comprising a plurality of periodic time frames, each time frame divided into a plurality of base time slots and a plurality of corresponding user time slots, a method including the steps of:

30       transmitting, in a user time slot over a frequency band, a first user message from a user station to a base station,

receiving, at said user station and over said frequency band, a base message from said base station,

170

said base message comprising a timing adjustment command,  
and

transmitting, in a user time slot over said frequency  
band, a second user message from said user station to said  
5 base station, said second user message advanced or  
retarded in relative timing with respect to the start of  
said user time slot, in response to said timing adjustment  
command.

10 45. A frame structure for time division duplex  
communication between a base station and a plurality of  
user stations over a single frequency band, comprising  
a plurality of time frames, and  
a plurality of time slots for each time frame, each  
15 time slot comprising a base transmission interval during  
which a base station may transmit over a designated  
frequency band a base-to-user messages to one of a  
plurality of user stations, and a user transmission  
interval during which one of said user stations may  
20 transmit a user-to-base message to said base station over  
said designated frequency band,  
wherein a first forward link transmission and a first  
reverse link transmission between said base station and a  
first user station are separated by either an intervening  
25 forward or reverse link communication with a second user  
station.

46. The frame structure of claim 45 wherein said  
first forward link transmission and said first reverse  
30 link transmission are separated by an amount of time  
sufficient to allow propagation of said first forward link  
transmission to a forward link destination and propagation  
of said first reverse link transmission to a reverse link  
destination.

35



171

47. The frame structure of claim 46 wherein said forward link destination is said first user station, and said reverse link destination is said base station.

5        48. The frame structure of claim 47 further comprising a preamble interval preceding said first forward link transmission, during which a control pulse preamble is received by said base station from said first user station.

10

49. The frame structure of claim 46 wherein said forward link destination is said base station, and said reverse link destination is said first user station.

15        50. The frame structure of claim 45 wherein said base-to-user messages periodically comprise a timing adjustment command whereby a relative timing of said user-to-base messages is adjusted.

20        51. A frame structure for time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising a plurality of time frames, and

a plurality of time slots for each time frame, each  
25 time slot comprising a base transmission interval during which a base station may transmit over a designated frequency band a base-to-user messages to one of a plurality of user stations, and a user transmission interval during which one of said user stations may  
30 transmit a user-to-base message to said base station over said designated frequency band,

wherein duplex communication between said base station and a first user station is carried out in a designated base interval and a designated user interval,  
35 said designated base interval and said designated user

interval being separated by at least one intervening base interval or user interval.

52. The frame structure of claim 51 wherein said  
5 designated base interval and said designated user interval  
comprise a duplex pairing, and a time separation between  
said designated base interval and said designated user  
interval is sufficient to allow a first message to  
propagate over a forward link of said duplex pairing, and  
10 a second message to propagate over a reverse link of said  
duplex pairing.

53. The frame structure of claim 51 wherein said  
base-to-user message periodically comprises a timing  
15 adjustment command whereby a relative timing of said user-  
to-base message is adjusted.

54. A method of time division duplex communication  
between a base station and a plurality of user stations  
20 over a single frequency band, wherein said base station  
communicates during a time frame with user stations in  
established communication with said base station, and  
wherein said time frame is divided into a plurality of  
time slots of equal duration, said method comprising the  
25 steps of

transmitting, over a designated frequency band and in  
a first time interval of a time frame, a first base  
message from a base station directed to a first user  
station,

30 receiving said base message at said first user  
station,

transmitting from a second user station, over said  
designated frequency band, a first user message directed  
to said base station,

173

receiving said first user message at said base station in a second time interval of said time frame,

transmitting, over said designated frequency band and in a third time interval of said time frame, a second base  
5 message from said base station,

transmitting from said first user station, over said designated frequency band, a second user message directed to said base station, and

receiving said second user message at said base  
10 station in a fourth time interval of said time frame.

55. The method of claim 54 wherein a time between transmitting said first base message and receiving said second user message is sufficient to allow said first base  
15 message to propagate from said base station to said first user station, and said second user message to propagate from said first user station to said base station.

56. The method of claim 54 wherein at least one of  
20 said first user message, said second user message, said first base message, and said second base message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

57. The method of claim 54 further comprising the  
25 steps of

calculating at said base station, based on a time of receiving said second user message at said base station, a distance of said first user station relative to said base station, and

30 transmitting, over said designated frequency band, a third base message from said base station directed to said first user station, said third base message comprising a timing adjustment command whereby timing of a subsequent message from said first user station directed to said base

station over said designated frequency band is advanced or retarded.

58. The method of claim 54 further comprising the  
5 step of transmitting, prior to said step of transmitting  
said first base message to said first user station, a  
control pulse preamble over said designated frequency band  
from said first user station to said base station.

10 59. A method of time duplex communication between a  
base station and a plurality of user stations over a  
single frequency band during a time frame, said time frame  
being divided into a plurality of time slots of equal  
duration, said method comprising the steps of

15 transmitting, during a first time slot, a first base-  
to-user message from a base station directed to a first  
user station,

receiving, during said first time slot, a first user-  
to-base message at said base station from a second user  
20 station,

receiving, after said first user-to-base message, a  
control pulse preamble at said base station from a third  
user station,

25 transmitting, during a second time slot, a second  
base-to-user message from said base station directed to  
said third user station, and

receiving, during said second time slot, a second  
user-to-base message at said base station from said first  
user station.

30 60. The method of claim 59 further comprising the  
step of receiving, after said second user-to-base message,  
a second control pulse preamble at said base station from  
a fourth user station.

35

61. The method of claim 59 further comprising the step of calculating at said base station, based on a time of receiving said control pulse preamble at said base station, a distance of said third user station relative to said base station, wherein said second base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command whereby subsequent messages from said third user station directed to said base station are advanced or retarded in relative timing.

10

62. The method of claim 59 further comprising the steps of

calculating at said base station, based on a time of receiving said second user-to-base message at said base station, a distance of said first user station relative to said base station, and

transmitting, in a subsequent time frame, a third base-to-user message from said base station directed to said first user station, said third base message comprising a timing adjustment command whereby timing of a subsequent message from said first user station directed to said base station is advanced or retarded.

63. A method of interleaved time duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising the steps of

receiving, over a designated frequency band, a first control pulse preamble at a base station from a first user station,

transmitting, over said designated frequency band, a first base-to-user message from said base station to said first user station, and

after a time interval of sufficient duration to receive a first user-to-base message at said base station

176

from a second user station, transmit a second base-to-user message from said base station, and receive a second control pulse preamble at said base station from a third user station, receiving over said designated frequency band a second user-to-base message at said base station from said first user station.

64. The method of claim 63 wherein said first base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command.

65. The method of claim 20 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, subsequent messages transmitted from said first user station are advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

66. The method of claim 63 wherein at least one of said first base-to-user message and said second user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

67. An interleaved time division duplex frame structure wherein a base station communicates with a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising

a plurality of time frames, and  
a plurality of time slots in each time frame, each of said time slots comprising

a base message interval during which a base-to-user message may be sent over a predetermined frequency band by a base station to a first user station in established communication with said base station,

a user message interval during which a user-to-base message may be received over said predetermined frequency band at said base station from a second

177

user station in established communication with said base station, and

5 a preamble interval during which a control pulse preamble may be received over said predetermined frequency band from a third user station in established communication with said base station, whereby said base station may respond to said third base station in an immediately following time slot.

10 68. The interleaved time division duplex frame structure of claim 67 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command.

15 69. The interleaved time division duplex frame structure of claim 68 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, subsequent messages transmitted from said first user station are advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

20 70. The interleaved time division duplex frame structure of claim 67 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

25 71. A system for carrying out time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising a plurality of time frames, and  
30 a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, each of said time slots comprising

a base interval, during which either a base-to-user message may be sent by a base station to a first user station in established communication with said  
35 base station during said time slot, or a general

178

polling message may be transmitted by said base station indicating availability of said time slot,

a user interval, during which either a user-to-base message may be received at said base station from a second user station in established communication with said base station, or a reply message may be received at said base station from a third user station seeking to establish communication with said base station, and

a preamble interval during which a control pulse preamble may be received from a fourth user station in established communication with said base station, whereby said base station may respond to said fourth base station in an immediately following time slot.

72. The system of claim 71 wherein said base interval occupies an initial portion of a time slot, and said user interval a latter portion of said time slot.

73. The system of claim 71 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command directed to said first user station.

74. The interleaved time division duplex frame structure of claim 73 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, subsequent messages transmitted from said first user station are advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

75. The system of claim 71 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.



76. The system of claim 71 wherein, in response to receiving said reply message at said base station from said third user station, said base station transmits a timing adjustment command directed to said third user  
5 station.

77. In a system for time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, wherein said  
10 base station communicates during a time frame with user stations in established communication with said base station, and wherein said time frame is divided into a plurality of time slots of equal duration, a method comprising the steps of

15 receiving at a first user station, over a designated frequency band and in a first time interval of a time frame, a first base message from a base station directed to said first user station,

20 waiting for said base station to receive, over said designated frequency band and in a second time interval of said time frame, a first user message from a second user station directed to said base station,

25 waiting for said base station to transmit, over said designated frequency band and in a third time interval of said time frame, a second base message from said base station,

30 transmitting from said first user station, over said designated frequency band and in a fourth time interval of said time frame, a second user message directed to said base station.

78. A method for communicating between a base station and a plurality of user stations comprising the steps of

180

transmitting from a base station, over a specified frequency band and during an initial portion of a time frame, a plurality of base-to-user messages directed to user stations, each of said base-to-user messages  
5 corresponding to a different base time slot,

receiving at said base station from said user stations, over said specified frequency band and during a latter portion of said time frame, a plurality of user-to-base messages directed to said base station, each of said  
10 user-to-base messages corresponding to a different user time slot, and

transmitting from said base station, over said specified frequency band and during a subsequent time frame, a timing adjustment command to at least one of said  
15 user stations, whereby at least one subsequent user-to-base message from said user station is advanced or retarded in time by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

20 79. The method of claim 78 wherein at least one of said base-to-user messages and said user-to-base messages is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

25 80. The method of claim 78 further comprising the steps of

transmitting from said base station a signal identifying an available user time slot,

receiving from a user station seeking to establish communication with said base station, over said specified  
30 frequency band and during said available user time slot, a reply message,

transmitting from said base station, over said specified frequency band, a second timing adjustment command to said user station seeking to establish  
35 communication with said base station, whereby at least one

181

subsequent user-to-base message from said user station seeking to establish communication with said base station is advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said second timing adjustment command.

5

81. The method of claim 80 wherein said reply message is transmitted from said user station seeking to establish communication with said base station in said available user time slot after a predetermined delay  
10 period.

82. The method of claim 80 wherein said reply message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

15 83. The method of claim 80 wherein the length of said reply message is such that it will be fully received by said base station prior to the start of a second user time slot immediately following said available user time slot.

20

84. The method of claim 78 wherein each user time slot is separated from a following user time slot by an abbreviated guard band.

25 85. The method of claim 84 wherein said abbreviated guard band has a duration of less than a full round trip propagation delay time relative to a radius of a cell in which said base station is located.

30 86. In a communication system employing time division multiplexing, a method for establishing communication between a base station and a user station comprising the steps of

transmitting from a base station, over a specified  
35 frequency band and during an initial portion of a time

frame, a plurality of base-to-user messages directed to user stations with which said base station has previously established communication, said initial portion comprising a plurality of base time slots, wherein each of said base-to-user messages corresponds to a different base time slot and at least one of said base time slots is available for communication,

transmitting from a user station seeking to establish communication with said base station, over said specified frequency band and during a user time slot in a user portion of said time frame, a reply message directed to said base station, said user time slot paired with said available base time slot,

receiving at said base station said reply message, calculating a propagation delay at said base station based on a relative time of receiving said reply message and deriving a timing adjustment command thereby,

transmitting from said base station, over said specified frequency band and during a subsequent time frame, a timing adjustment command to said user station,

in response to said timing adjustment command, advancing or retarding a relative timing of subsequent user-to-base messages from said user station to said base station by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

87. The method of claim 86 wherein said reply message is transmitted from said user station in said user time slot after a predetermined delay period.

88. The method of claim 86 wherein one or more of said base-to-user messages and said user-to-base messages are transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

89. The method of claim 86 wherein said reply message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

90. The method of claim 86 wherein the length of said reply message is such that it will be fully received by said base station prior to the start of an immediately following user time slot.

91. A system of communication comprising  
a plurality of time frames of equal duration, each of said time frames comprising a base transmission portion, a collective guard portion, and a user transmission portion, said collective guard portion located between said base transmission portion and said user transmission portion,

a plurality of base time slots in said base transmission portion, during each of which a base station may transmit a base-to-user message directed to one of a plurality of user stations,

a plurality of user time slots in said user transmission portion, during each of which a corresponding one of said user stations may transmit a user-to-base message directed to said base station, said user time slots separated by abbreviated guard bands,

wherein said base station commands at least one of said user stations to advance or retard a relative timing of its respective user-to-base message in response to a calculated propagation delay time.

92. The system of claim 91 wherein a new user station seeking to establish communication with said base station transmits a reply message to said base station during said collective guard portion.

93. The system of claim 92 wherein said base station calculates, based on a time of receiving said reply message, a new user station propagation delay for said new user station and transmits, during an available one of said base time slots, a timing adjustment command to said new user station.

94. The system of claim 92 wherein the length of said reply message is such that it will be fully received by said base station prior to the end of said collective guard portion.

95. The system of claim 91 wherein a new user station seeking to establish communication with said base station transmits a reply message to said base station during an available one of said user time slots.

96. The system of claim 95 wherein said base station calculates, based on a time of receiving said reply message, a new user station propagation delay for said new user station and transmits, during one of said base time slots corresponding to said one available user time slot, a timing adjustment command to said new user station.

97. The system of claim 95 wherein the length of said reply message is such that it will be fully received by said base station prior to the start of an immediately following user time slot.

98. The system of claim 95 wherein said available user time slot is the first user time slot.

99. The system of claim 91 wherein one or more of said base-to-user messages and said user-to-base messages are transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

100. The system of claim 91 wherein said abbreviated guard bands have a duration of less than a full round trip propagation delay time relative to a radius of a cell in which said base station is located.

5

101. A method for carrying out time division multiplexed communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising the steps of

10 transmitting, during a base portion of a time frame, a base station burst over a designated frequency band, said base station burst comprising a plurality of time intervals corresponding to base time slots, wherein either  
15 a base-to-user message or a general polling message is transmitted in each of said base time slots, said base-to-user message being transmitted in the base time slots already in use for established communication with user stations, and said general polling message being transmitted in the base time slots available for  
20 communication,

receiving in user time slots, during a user portion of said time frame and over said designated frequency band, a user-to-base message in the user time slots already in use for established communication with said  
25 base station, and a reply message in the user time slots in which a new user station is attempting to establish communication with said base station, and

periodically transmitting from said base station, over said designated frequency band, a timing adjustment  
30 command to at least one of said user stations, whereby subsequent user-to-base messages from said user station are advanced or retarded in time by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

102. The method of claim 25 further comprising the step of transmitting from said base station, over said designated frequency band, an initial timing adjustment command to at least one of said user stations attempting  
5 to establish communication with said base station.

103. The method of claim 101 wherein said base time slots are interleaved.

10 104. The method of claim 101 wherein said base time slots are non-interleaved.

105. A system for time division multiplexed communication between a base station and a plurality of  
15 user stations over a single frequency band, comprising  
a plurality of time frames of equal duration,  
a base transmission portion in each of said time frames,

a plurality of base time slots in said base  
20 transmission portion, during which either a base-to-user message may be sent by a base station to a user station in established communication with said base station, or a general polling message may be transmitted by said base station indicating the availability of said base time  
25 slot,

a user transmission portion in each of said time frames, distinct from said base transmission portion, and  
a plurality of user time slots in said user transmission portion, each user time slot corresponding to  
30 one of said base time slots, during which either a user-to-base message may be sent to said base station by a user station in established communication with said base station, or a reply message may be sent to said base station by a user station seeking to establish  
35 communication with said base station, said user



187

transmission portion and said base transmission portion lying on the same frequency band,

wherein said base station periodically transmits, during said base time slots, a timing adjustment command to said user stations in established communication with said base station.

106. The system of claim 105 wherein said base station transmits an initial timing adjustment command to at least one of said user stations attempting to establish communication with said base station, in response to receiving a reply message from said user station.

107. The system of claim 105 wherein said base time slots are interleaved.

108. The system of claim 105 wherein said base time slots are non-interleaved.

109. A method for communicating between a base station and a plurality of user stations comprising the steps of

transmitting from a base station, over a specified frequency band and during a base portion of a time frame, a base station burst comprising a plurality of base-to-user messages directed to user stations,

receiving at said base station from said user stations, over said specified frequency band and during a user portion of said time frame, a plurality of user-to-base messages directed to said base station, each of said user-to-base messages corresponding to a different user time slot,

transmitting from said base station, over said specified frequency band and during a subsequent time frame, a timing adjustment command to at least one of said

user stations, whereby subsequent user-to-base messages from said user station are advanced or retarded in time by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

5        110. The method of claim 109 wherein said base-to-user messages are interleaved.

10        111. The method of claim 110 wherein said base station burst comprises a plurality of blocks, each block comprising a plurality of sub-messages, and each of said base-to-user messages comprising at least one of said sub-messages from a plurality of said blocks.

15        112. The method of claim 111 wherein each of said base-to-user messages comprises exactly one sub-message from each of said blocks.

20        113. The method of claim 111 wherein at least one of said sub-messages in each of said blocks is preceded by a preamble.

25        114. The method of claim 113 wherein all of said sub-messages in each of said blocks are preceded by a preamble.

      115. The method of claim 113 wherein said preamble comprises a spread spectrum code.

30        116. The method of claim 110 wherein said user stations employ forward error correction.

35        117. The method of claim 116 wherein said forward error correction comprises a Reed-Solomon coding technique.

189

118. A system for time division multiplexed communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising  
a plurality of time frames of equal duration,  
5 a base transmission portion in each of said time frames, said base transmission portion comprising a plurality of transmit time slots,  
a plurality of sub-messages in each of said transmit time slots, wherein one or more sub-messages from a  
10 plurality of said transmit time slots are directed by a base station to the same user station in established communication with said base station, and  
a user transmission portion in each of said time frames, said user transmission portion comprising a  
15 plurality of user time slots during which user-to-base messages from user stations in established communication with said base station are received,  
wherein said base station periodically transmits during said base transmission portion a timing adjustment  
20 command to said user stations in established communication with said base station.

119. The system of claim 118 wherein a user station receiving said timing adjustment command advances or  
25 retards its timing by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

120. The system of claim 118 wherein exactly one sub-message from each of said transmit time slots is directed  
30 to the same user station.

121. The system of claim 118 wherein at least one of said sub-messages in each of said transmit time slots is preceded by a preamble.

35

122. The system of claim 121 wherein all of said sub-messages in each of said transmit time slots are preceded by a preamble.

5        123. The system of claim 121 wherein said preamble comprises a spread spectrum code.

124. The system of claim 121 wherein said user stations employ forward error correction.

10        125. The system of claim 121 wherein said forward error correction comprises a Reed-Solomon coding technique.

15        126. The system of claim 121 wherein a user station seeking to establish communication with said base station transmits an abbreviated message in an available one of said user time slots.

20        127. The system of claim 126 wherein said base station transmits, in response to receiving said abbreviated message, an initial timing adjustment command to said user station seeking to establish communication.

25        128. The system of claim 118 wherein said user time slots are separated by abbreviated guard bands.

129. A method of duplex communication between a base station and a user station over multiple frequency bands,  
30 comprising the steps of

transmitting, over a first frequency band, a control pulse preamble from a user station,

receiving, during a first preamble interval, said control pulse preamble at a base station,

191

transmitting, over a second frequency band and during a base message interval, a base-to-user message from said base station to said user station,

receiving said base-to-user message at said user  
5 station,

transmitting, over said first frequency band, a user-to-base message from said user station, and

receiving, during a user message interval, said user-to-base message at said base station.

10

130. The method of claim 129 further comprising the step of transmitting, prior to said step of transmitting said control pulse preamble, a plurality of preamble bursts over said second frequency band from said base  
15 station to said user station.

131. The method of claim 130 wherein said preamble bursts are three in number.

20 132. The method of claim 130 wherein the number of preamble bursts equals a number of antennas used by said base station, and wherein said method further comprises the steps of

measuring at said user station a relative received  
25 signal quality of said preamble bursts,

transmitting from said user station, as part of said user-to-base message, an indication of said relative received signal quality, and

selecting at said base station, in response to said  
30 relative received signal quality, one or more of said antennas for subsequent messages to said user station.

133. The method of claim 129 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command  
35 directed to said user station.

134. The method of claim 133 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, a subsequent message transmitted from said user station is advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment  
5 command.

135. The method of claim 129 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.  
10

136. The method of claim 129 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

15 137. The method of claim 129 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a spread spectrum code.

138. The method of claim 129 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a plurality of concatenated  
20 codes.

139. The method of claim 138 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a kronecker product of a minimum peak sidelobe code and a Barker code.  
25

140. A method of communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising the steps of

30 transmitting, during a first time slot and over a base transmission frequency band, a first base-to-user message from a base station to a first user station,

receiving said first base-to-user message at said first user station,

transmitting, over a user transmission frequency band, a control pulse preamble from a second user station to said base station,

receiving, during said first time slot, said control pulse preamble at said base station,

transmitting, during a second time slot and over said base transmission frequency band, a second base-to-user message from said base station to said second user station,

receiving said second base-to-user message at said second user station,

transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a user-to-base message from said first user station to said base station, and

receiving, during said second time slot, said user-to-base message at said base station.

141. The method of claim 140 further comprising the steps of

transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a second user-to-base message from said second user station to said base station, and

receiving, during a third time slot, said second user-to-base message at said base station.

25

142. The method of claim 141 further comprising the steps of

transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a second control pulse preamble from a third user station to said base station,

receiving, during said second time slot, said second control pulse preamble at said base station,

transmitting, during said third time slot and over said base transmission frequency band, a third base-to-

194

user message from said base station to said third user station,

receiving said third base-to-user message at said third user station,

5 transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a third user-to-base message from said third user station to said base station, and

receiving, during a fourth time slot, said third user-to-base message at said base station.

10

143. The method of claim 140 wherein said second base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command.

15

144. The method of claim 143 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, a subsequent message transmitted from said second user station to said base station is advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

20

145. The method of claim 140 wherein at least one of said first base-to-user message, said second base-to-user message, and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

25

146. The method of claim 140 further comprising the step of transmitting, prior to said step of transmitting said control pulse preamble, a plurality of preamble bursts over said base transmission frequency band from  
30 said base station to said first user station.

147. The method of claim 140 wherein said second time slot immediately follows said first time slot.



148. The method of claim 140 wherein a relative starting reference point for each time slot, including said first time slot and said second slot, is offset in time for said user transmission frequency band with respect to said base transmission frequency band.

149. The method of claim 148 wherein said offset is of sufficient duration to allow said first base-to-user message to propagate from said base station to said first user station, and said user-to-base message to propagate from said first user station to said base station.

150. The method of claim 140 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

151. A frame structure for communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising  
a plurality of time frames, and  
a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, each of said time slots comprising

a base interval, during which either a base-to-user message may be transmitted over a first frequency band by a base station to a first user station in established communication with said base station during said time slot, or a general polling message may be transmitted over said first frequency band indicating the availability of said time slot,

a user interval, during which either a user-to-base message may be received over a second frequency band at said base station from a second user station in established communication with said base station, or a reply message may be received over said second frequency band at said base station from a third user

196

station seeking to establish communication with said base station, and

a preamble interval during which a control pulse preamble may be received over said second frequency band from a fourth user station in established communication with said base station, whereby said base station may respond to said fourth base station in a following time slot.

10 152. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command directed to said first user station.

15 153. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

20 154. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein, in response to receiving said reply message at said base station from said third user station, said base station transmits a timing adjustment command directed to said third user station.

25 155. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein said user interval is offset from said base interval by a predetermined amount of time less than the duration of an entire time slot.

30 156. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein said user interval and said base interval are substantially overlapping.

35 157. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

158. An interleaved air interface frame structure for carrying out time division multiplexed communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising

- 5       a plurality of time frames during each of which a base station may transmit over a first designated frequency band and user stations may transmit over a second designated frequency band according to a predetermined protocol,
- 10       a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, said time slots having a base station portion corresponding to said first designated frequency band and a user station portion corresponding to said second designated frequency band,
- 15       wherein said base station portion comprises a base message interval, during which said base station may transmit a first base-to-user message to a first base station in response to having received a first control pulse preamble in an immediately preceding time slot, and
- 20       a base preamble interval, during which said base station may transmit at least one preamble burst directed to a second user station, whereby said second user station may respond to said at least one preamble burst in a following time slot, and
- 25       wherein said user station portion comprises a user message interval, during which a third user station may transmit a user-to-base message in response to having received a second base-to-user message in an immediately preceding time slot, and a control pulse preamble
- 30       interval, during which a fourth user station may transmit a control pulse preamble to said base station, whereby said base station may respond to said control pulse preamble in said following time slot.

159. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein said user station portion is offset from said base station portion by a predetermined amount of time less than the duration of an entire time slot.

5

160. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command directed to said first user station.

10

161. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

15

162. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

20

163. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein said control pulse preamble is concatenated.

25

164. An interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure for communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations, comprising

a plurality of time frames, and

30 a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, said time slots each comprising a base station portion and a user station portion, wherein a duplex pairing consists of a first base station portion in a first time slot and a first user station portion in a second time slot subsequent to said first time slot,

199

whereby a base station transmits over a first designated frequency band a base-to-user message during said first base station portion, and said base station receives over a second designated frequency band a user-to-base message from a user station during said first user station portion, and

wherein for each time slot said user station portion is offset by a predetermined amount of time from said base station portion.

10

165. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 wherein said predetermined amount of time is of sufficient duration to allow said base-to-user message to propagate from said base station to said first user station, and said user-to-base message to propagate from said first user station to said base station so as to be received in said first user station portion.

20

166. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command directed to said user station.

25

167. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

30

168. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

169. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 further comprising a preamble interval in each time slot during which said base station receives a control pulse preamble over said second  
5 designated frequency band from a user station in established communication prior to exchanging traffic messages therewith.

170. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame  
10 structure of claim 169 further comprising a plurality of preamble burst intervals in each time slot during which said base station transmits a plurality of preambles, one in each preamble burst interval, over said first  
15 designated frequency band to a user station in established communication prior to receiving said control pulse preamble.

171. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 170 wherein said preamble burst  
20 intervals are three in number.

172. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 170 wherein the number of preamble burst intervals equals a number of antennas used by said  
25 base station, and wherein said user station measures a relative received signal quality of said preamble bursts and transmits to said base station, as part of said user-to-base message, an indication of said relative received signal quality.

30

173. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 172 wherein said base station selects, in response to said relative received signal quality, one or more of said antennas for subsequent messages to said  
35 user station.

201

174. A frame structure for duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising

a plurality of time frames, and

5 a plurality of time slots for each time frame, each time slot comprising a base transmission interval during which a base station may transmit over a first designated frequency band a base-to-user message to a first one of a plurality of user stations in established communication  
10 with said base station, and a user transmission interval during which said base station may receive a user-to-base message over a second designated frequency band from a second one of said user stations,

wherein the start of said user transmission interval  
15 in each time slot is offset by a predetermined amount of time relative to the start of said base transmission interval.

175. The frame structure of claim 174 wherein said  
20 base-to-user message to said first user station comprises a forward link transmission of a duplex pairing, and a reverse link transmission from said first user station to said base station occurs in a time slot immediately following said forward link transmission.

25

176. The frame structure of claim 175 wherein said forward link transmission and said reverse link transmission are separated by an amount of time sufficient to allow propagation of said forward link transmission to  
30 said first user station and propagation of said reverse link transmission to said base station, without simultaneous reception and transmission by said first user station.

177. The frame structure of claim 175 further comprising a preamble interval preceding said first forward link transmission, during which a control pulse preamble is received over said second designated frequency  
5 band by said base station from said first user station.

178. The frame structure of claim 175 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command whereby a relative timing of said reverse link  
10 transmission is adjusted.

179. A method of communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising the steps of  
15 transmitting, during a first time interval and over a base transmission frequency band, a first base-to-user message from a base station to a first user station,  
receiving said first base-to-user message at said first user station,  
20 transmitting, over a user transmission frequency band, a control pulse preamble from a second user station to said base station,  
receiving, during a second time interval, said control pulse preamble at said base station,  
25 transmitting, during a third time interval and over said base transmission frequency band, a second base-to-user message from said base station to said second user station,  
receiving said second base-to-user message at said  
30 second user station,  
transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a user-to-base message from said first user station to said base station, and  
receiving, during a fourth time interval, said user-  
35 to-base message at said base station.



203

180. The method of claim 179 wherein said first time interval and said second time interval occupy a first time slot, and said third time interval and said fourth time interval occupy a second time slot.

5

181. The method of claim 180 wherein said second time slot immediately follows said first time slot.

182. The method of claim 180 wherein said third time interval and said fourth time interval are at least partially overlapping.

183. The method of claim 179 further comprising the steps of

15 transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a second user-to-base message from said second user station to said base station, and

receiving, during a fifth time interval, said second user-to-base message at said base station.

20

184. The method of claim 179 wherein said second base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command.

25 185. The method of claim 184 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, a subsequent message transmitted from said second user station to said base station is advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

30

186. A method of duplex communication between a base station and a user station over a plurality of frequency bands, comprising the steps of

35 transmitting, over a first frequency band, a control pulse preamble from a user station to a base station,

204

receiving at said user station, over a second frequency band, a base-to-user message from said base station, and

transmitting, over said first frequency band, a user-  
5 to-base message from said user station to said base station.

1/34

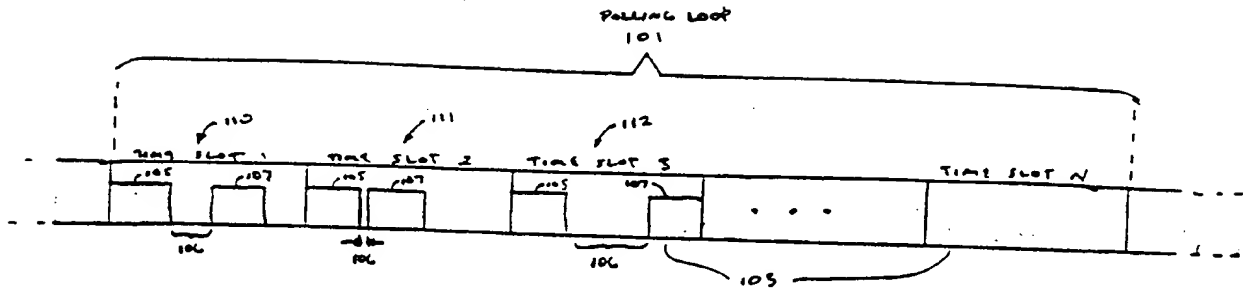


FIGURE 1  
(prior art)

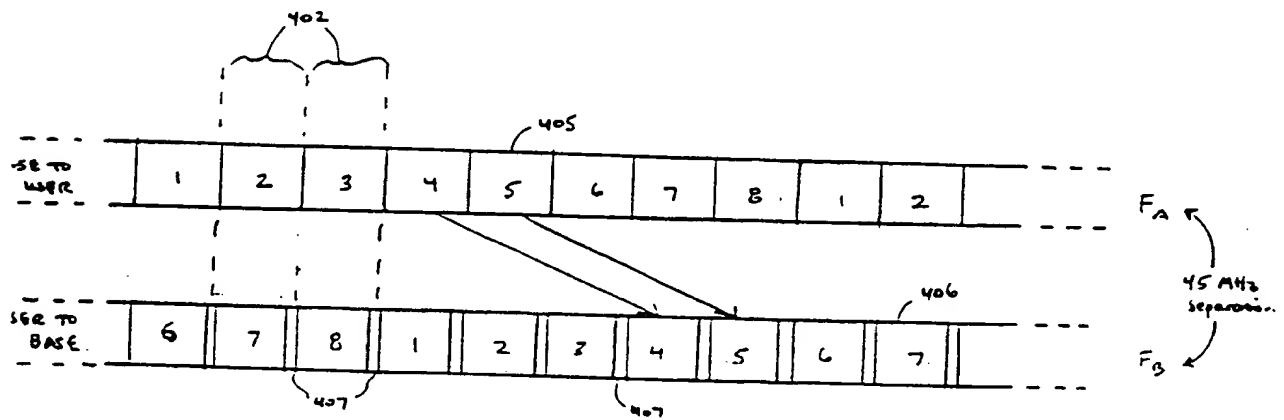
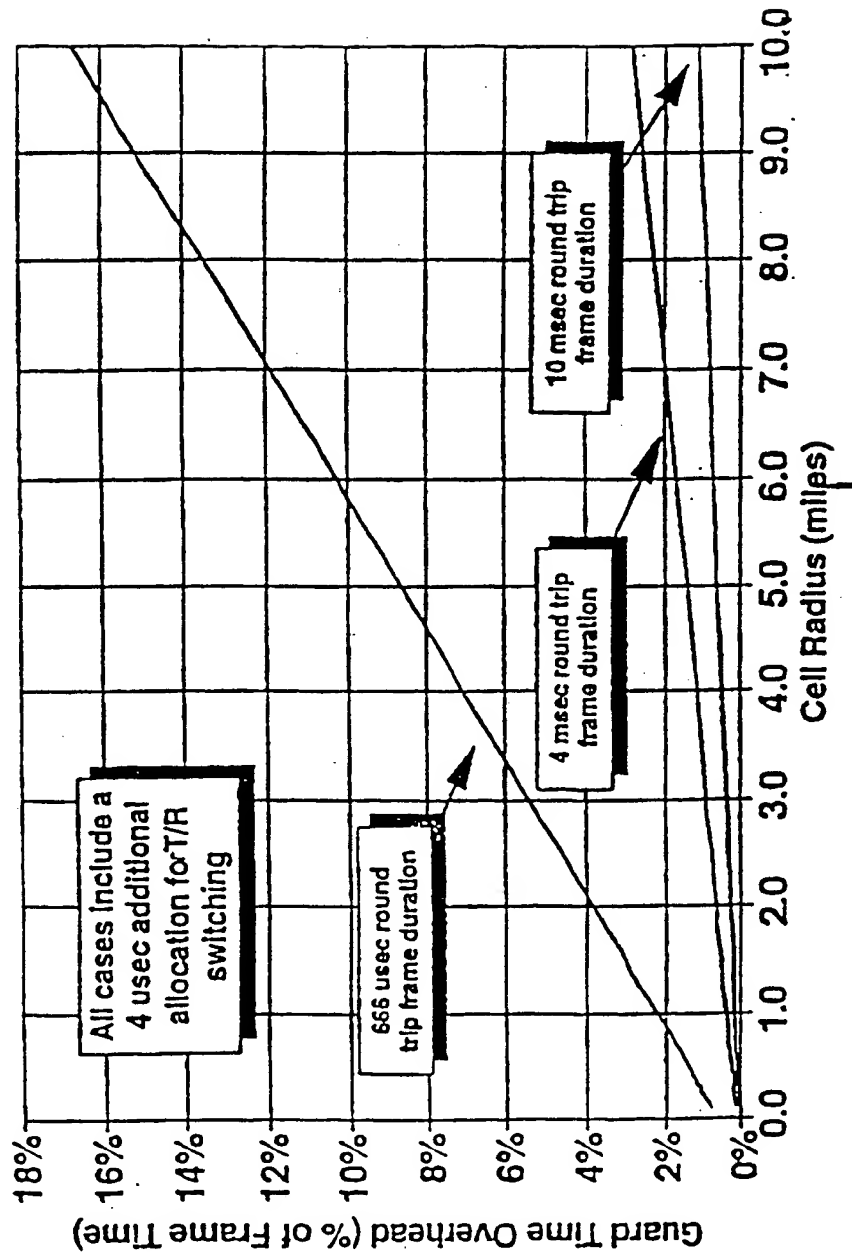


FIGURE 4  
(prior art)

Figure 2



3/34

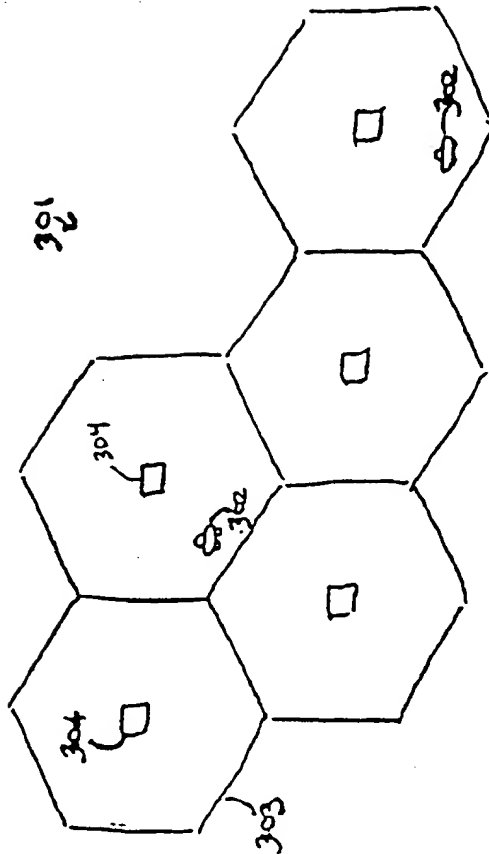
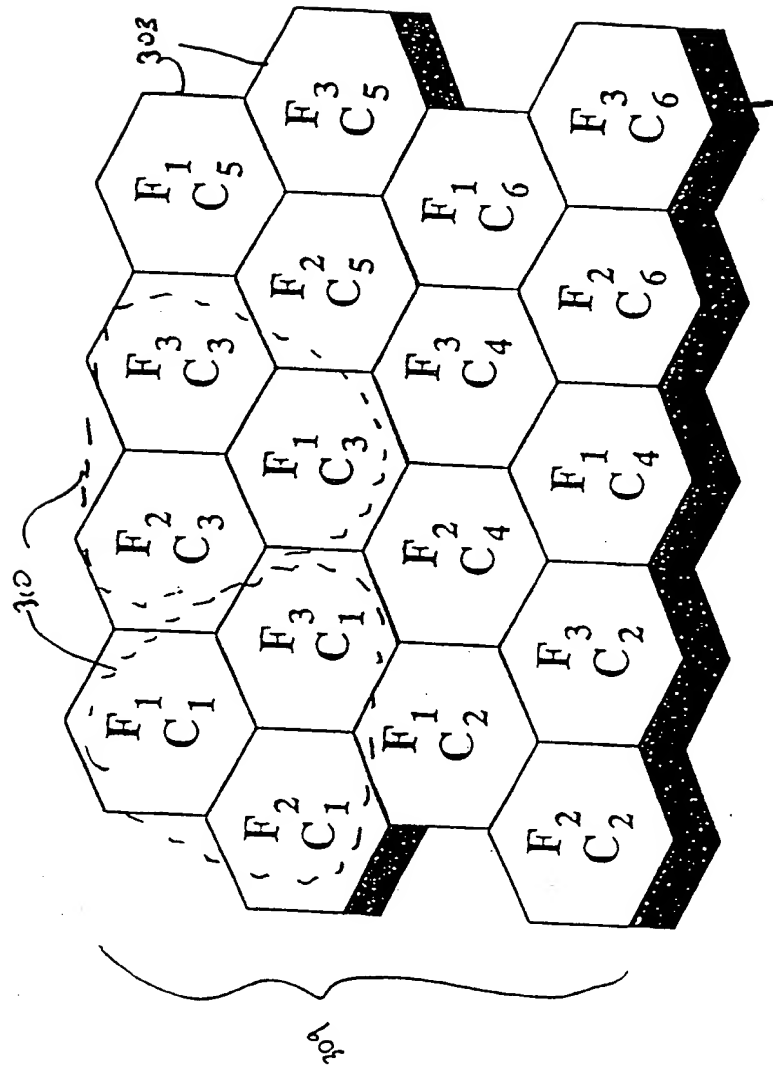


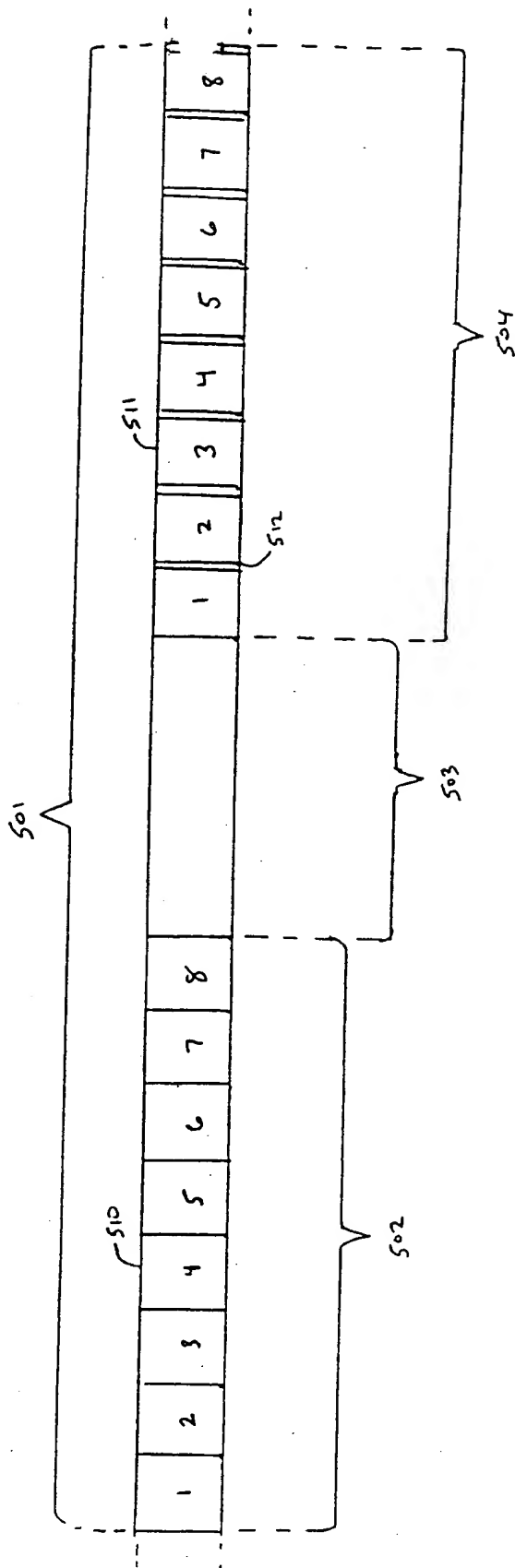
Figure 3A

Figure 3B



5/34

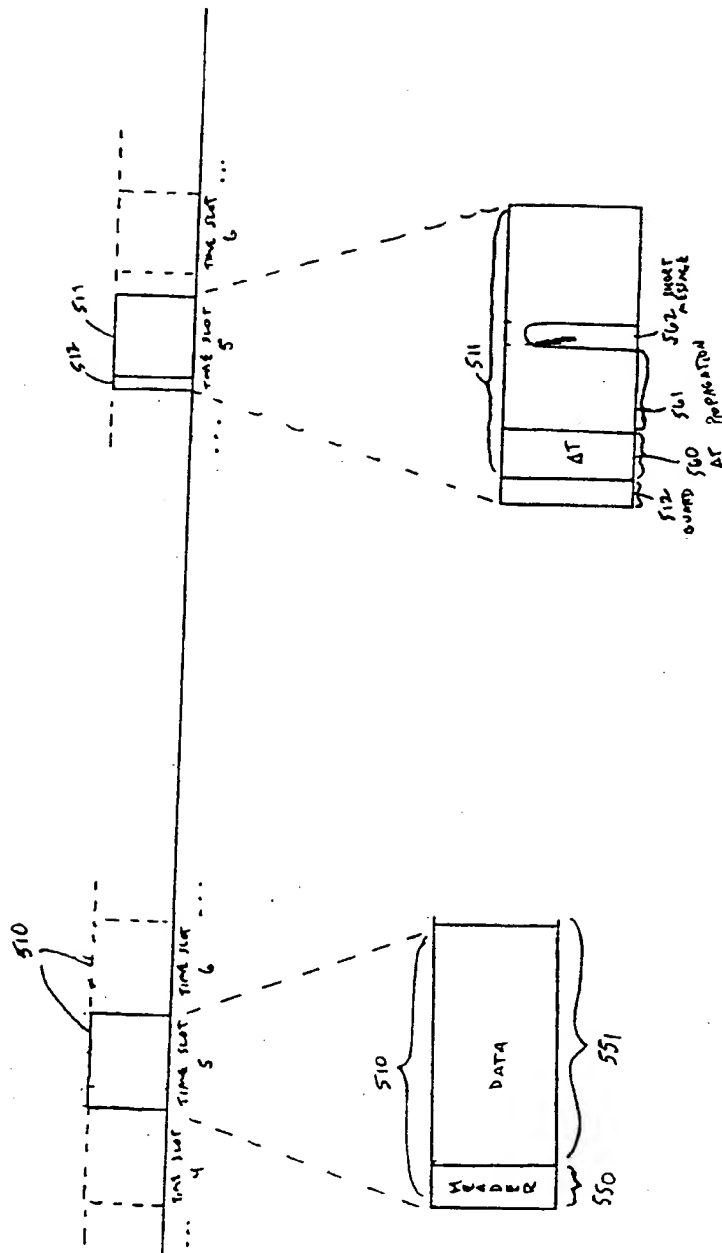
FIGURE 5A



6/34

0/34

FIGURE 5B





7/34

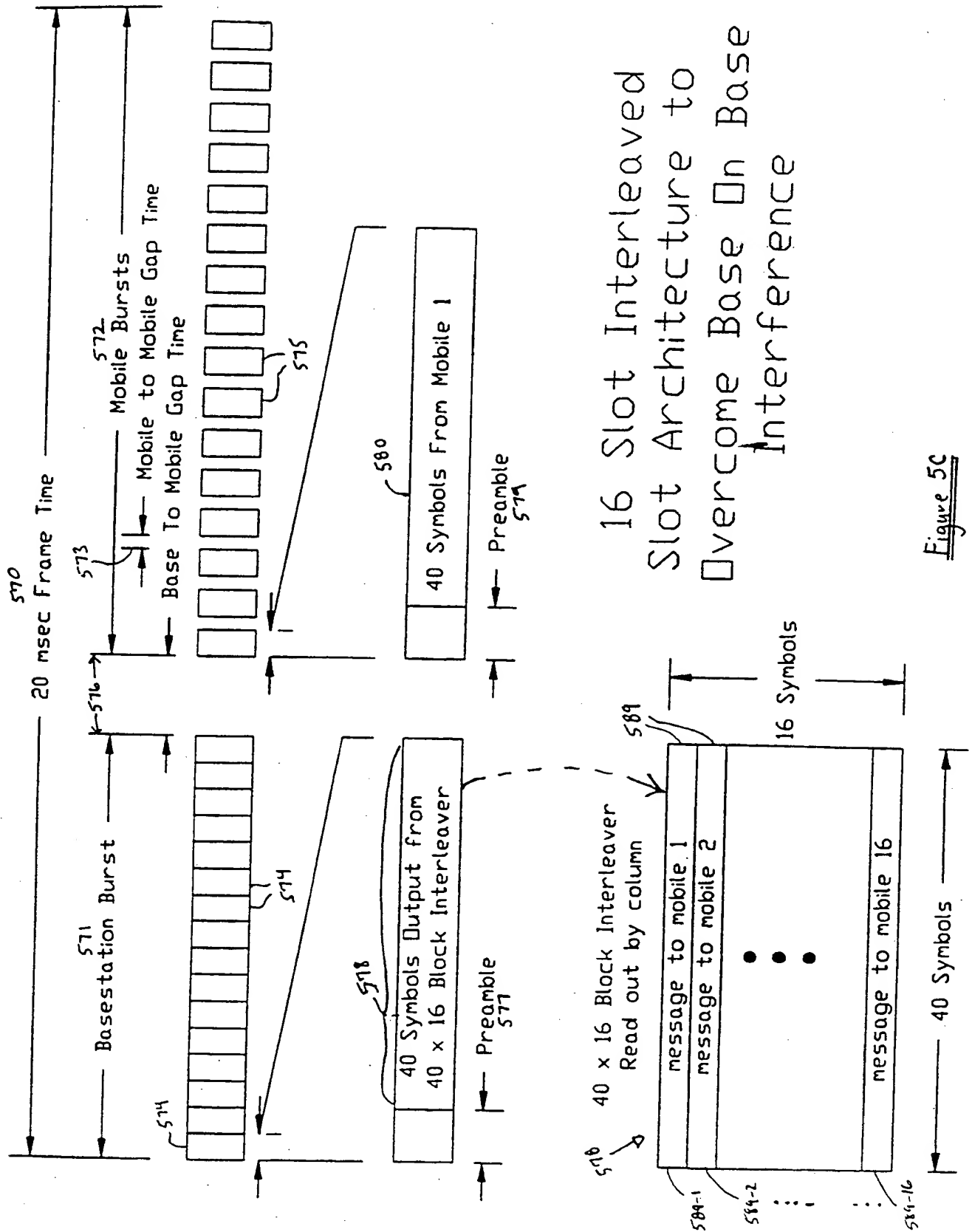


Figure 5C

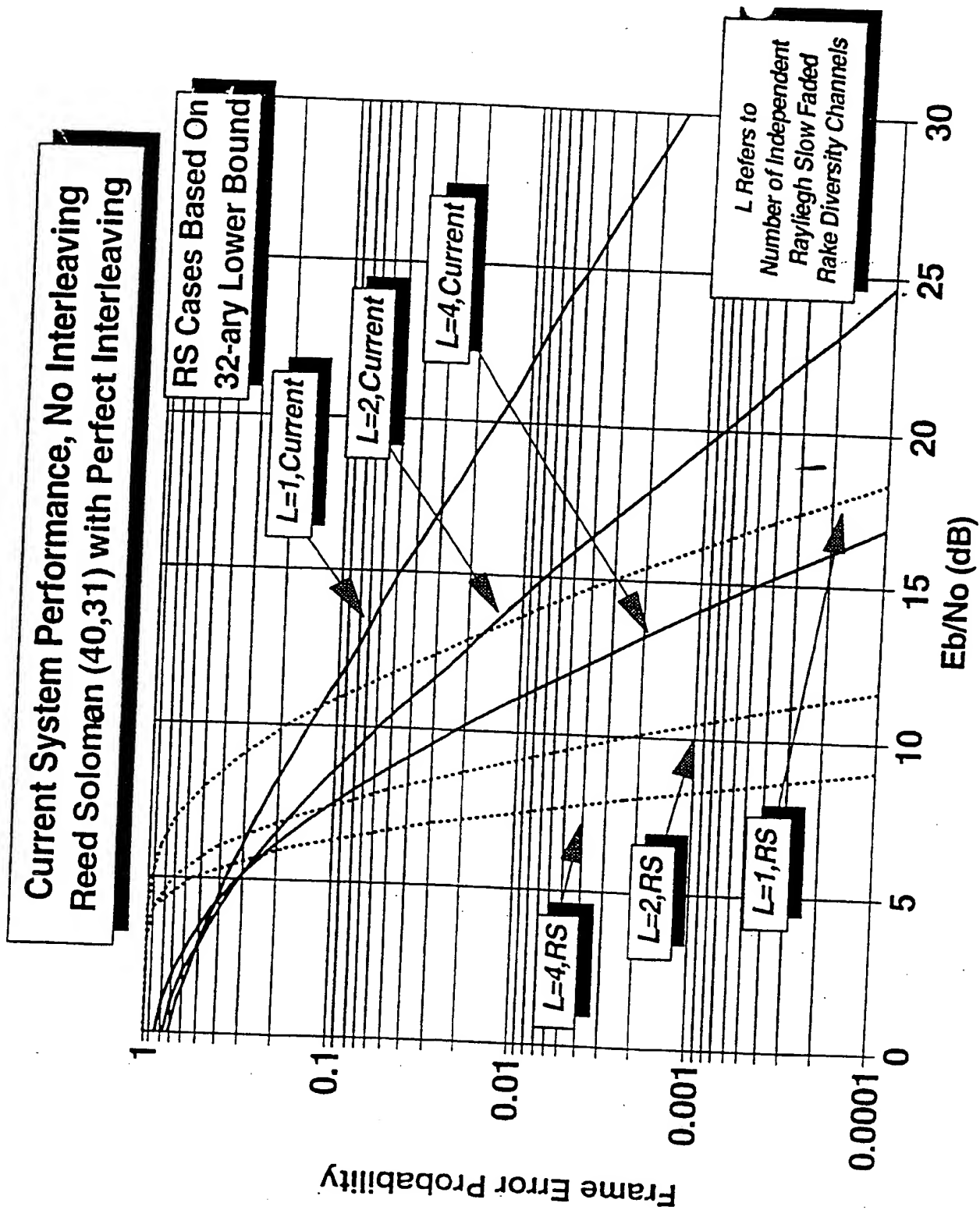
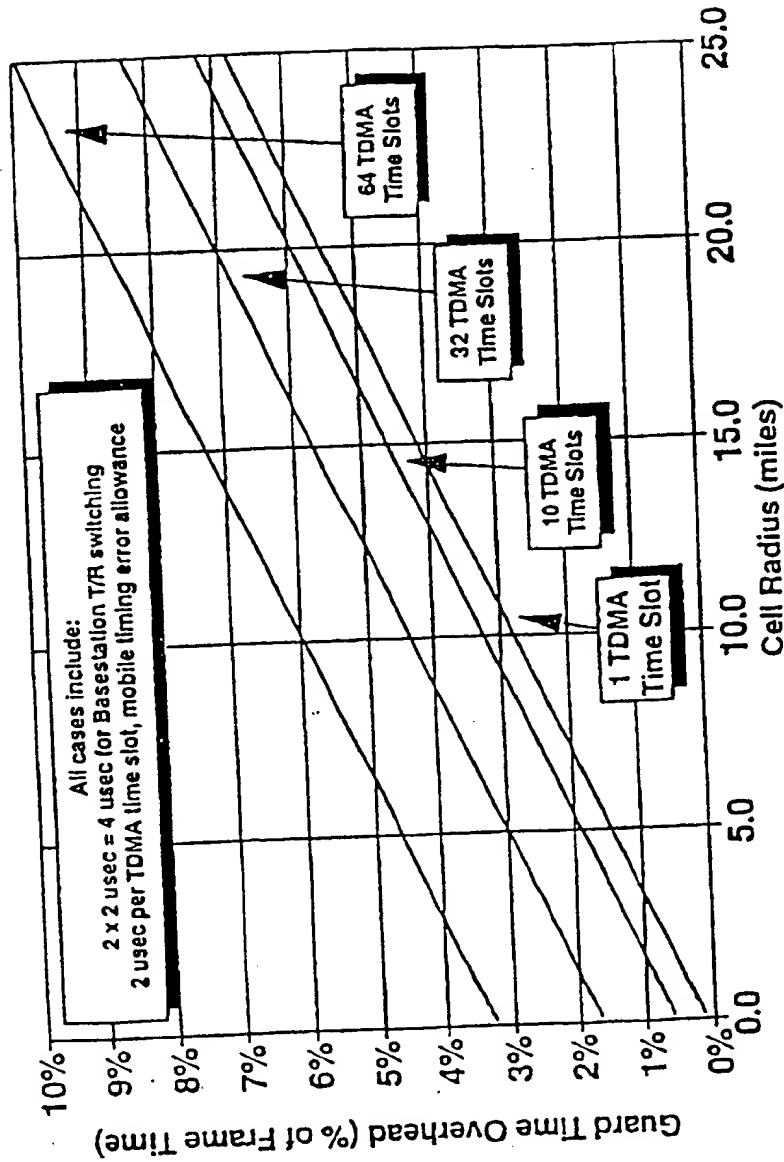


Figure 5D

9/34

FIGURE 6



10/34

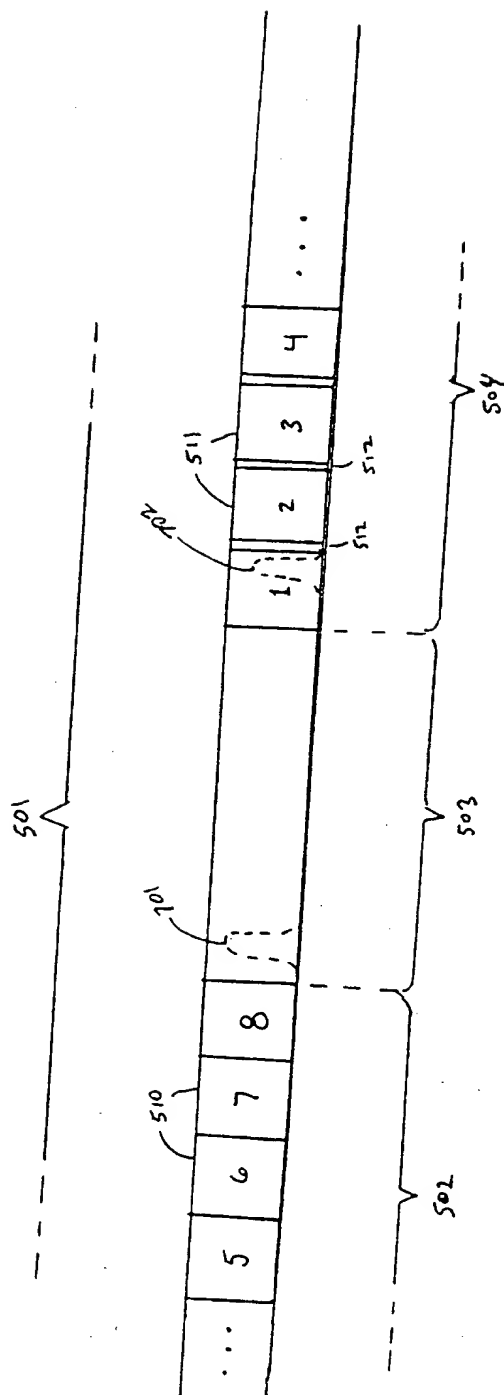
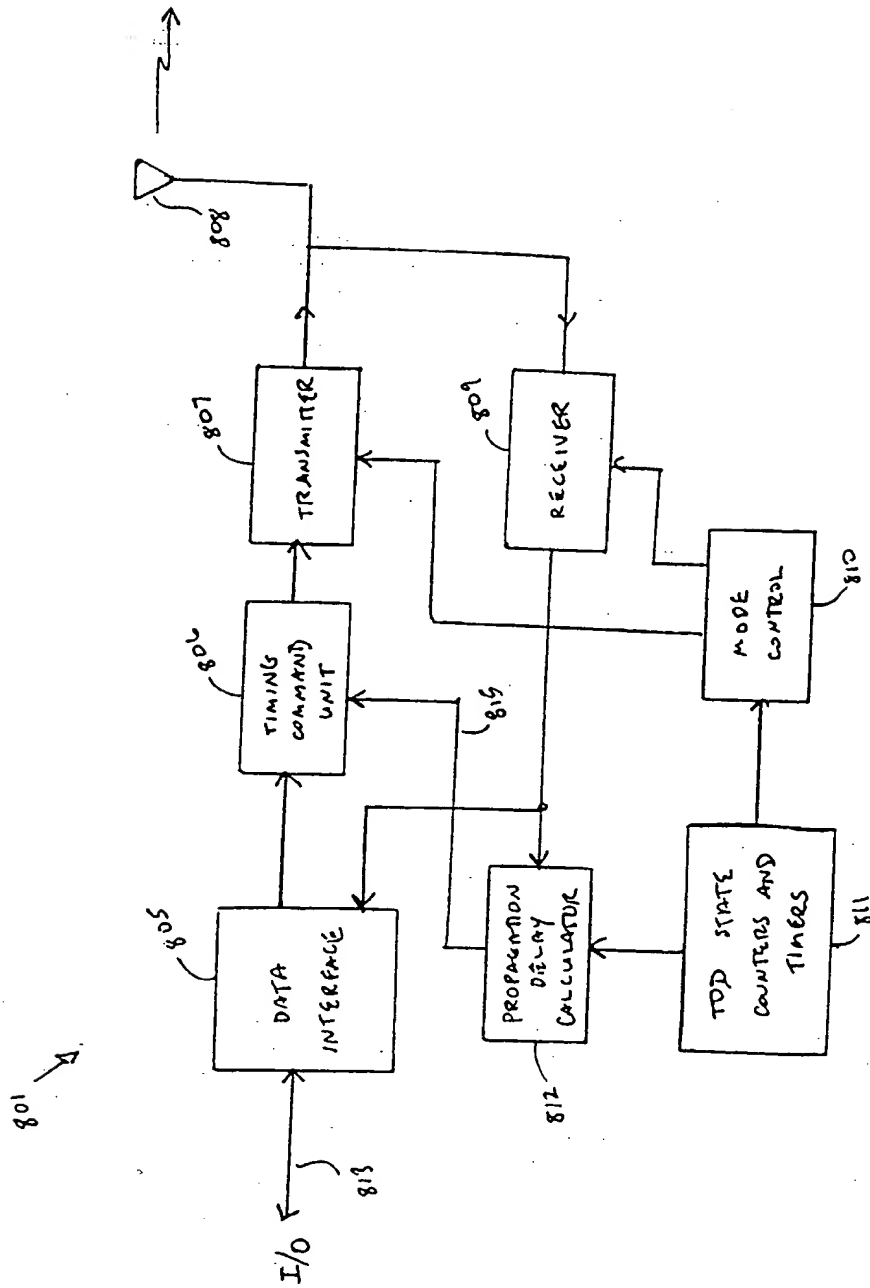


FIGURE 7

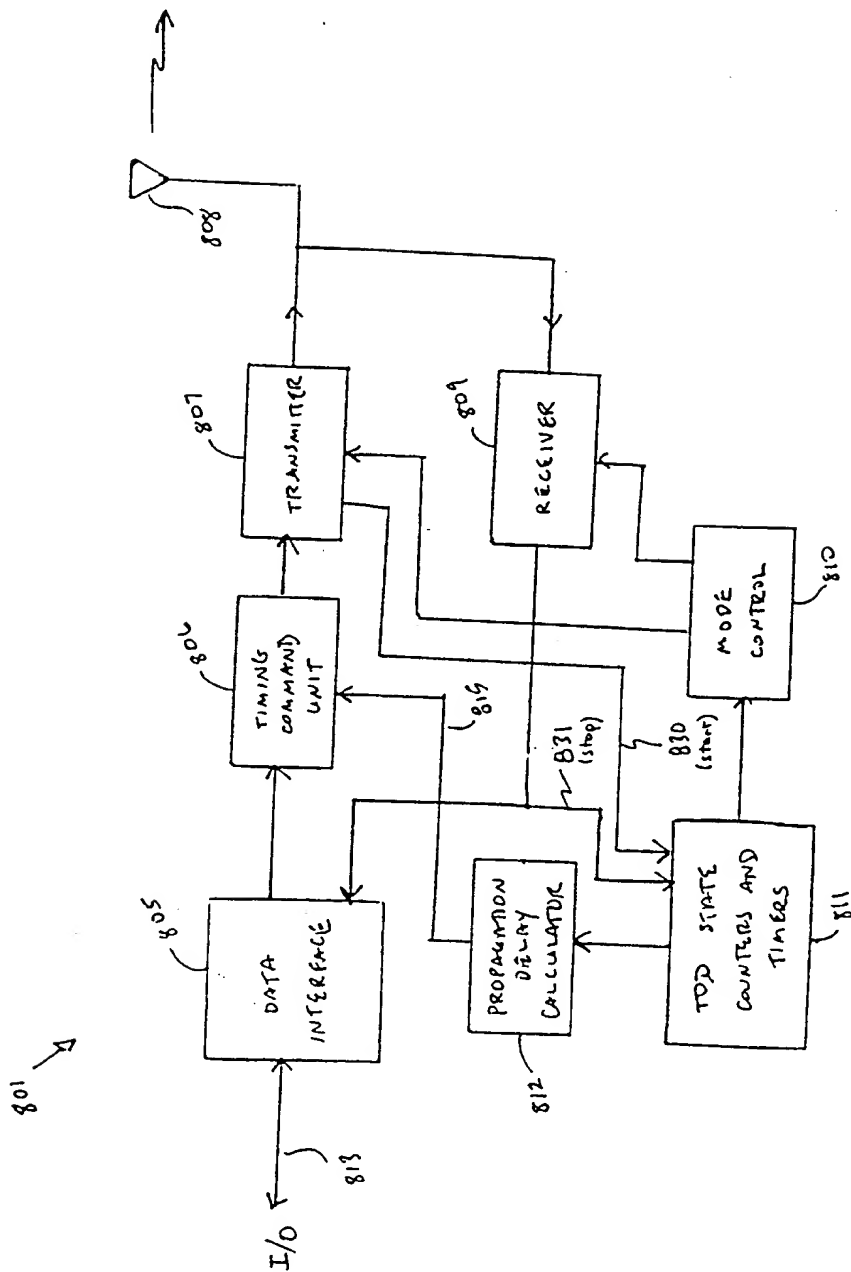
11/34



BASE STATION

FIGURE 9A

12/34



BASE STATION

FIGURE 9B

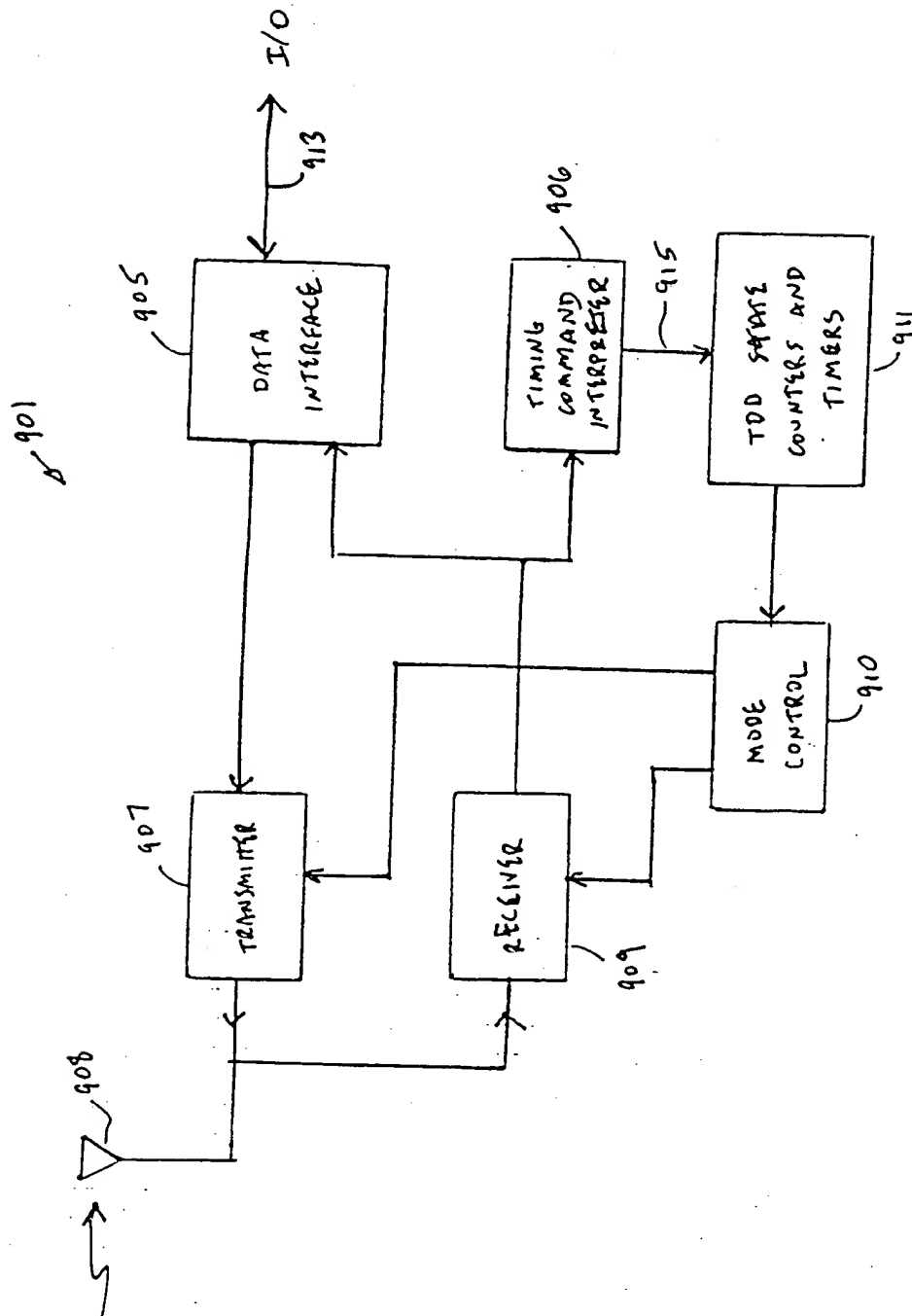
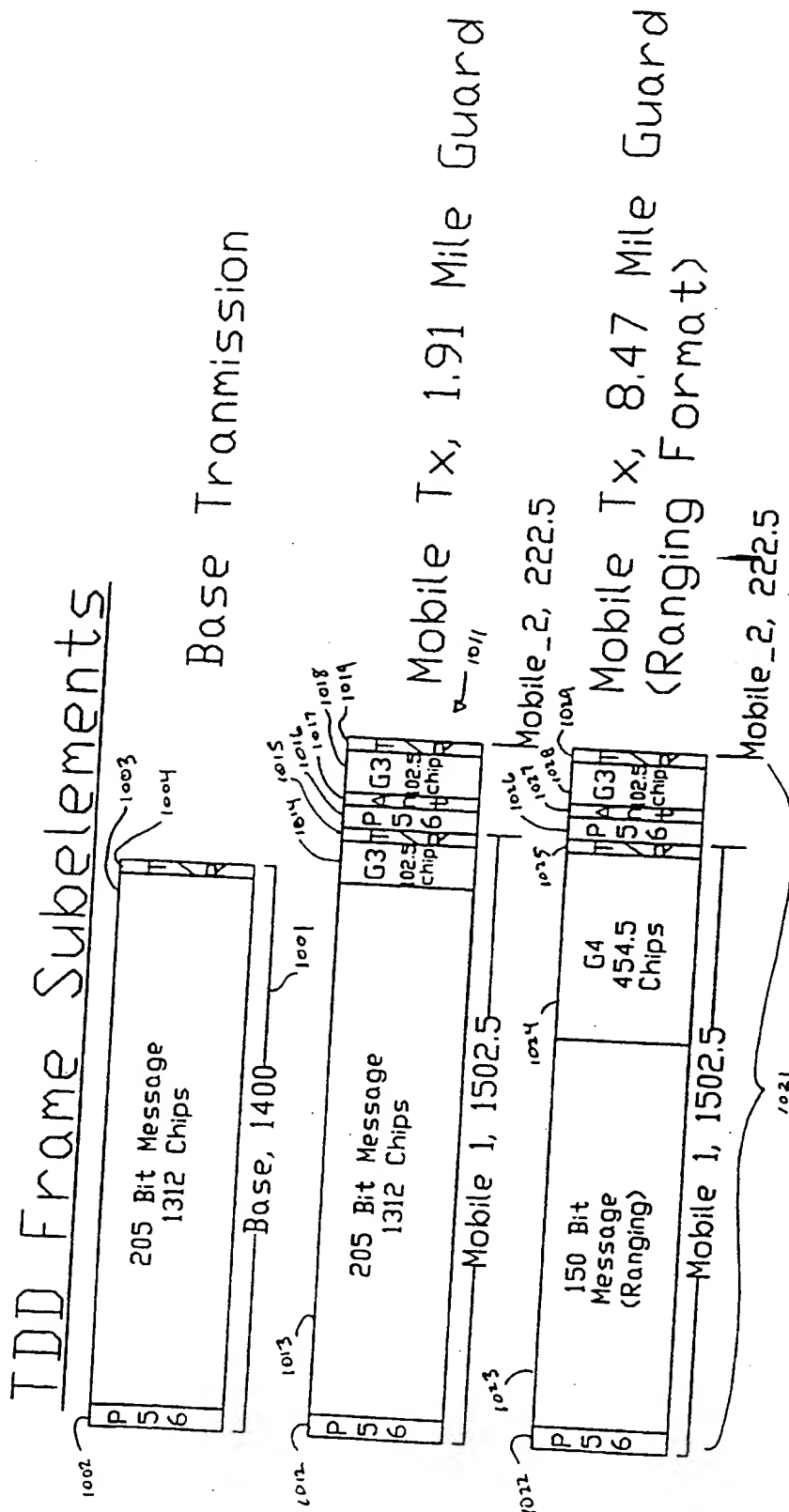


FIGURE 9

FIGURE 10A





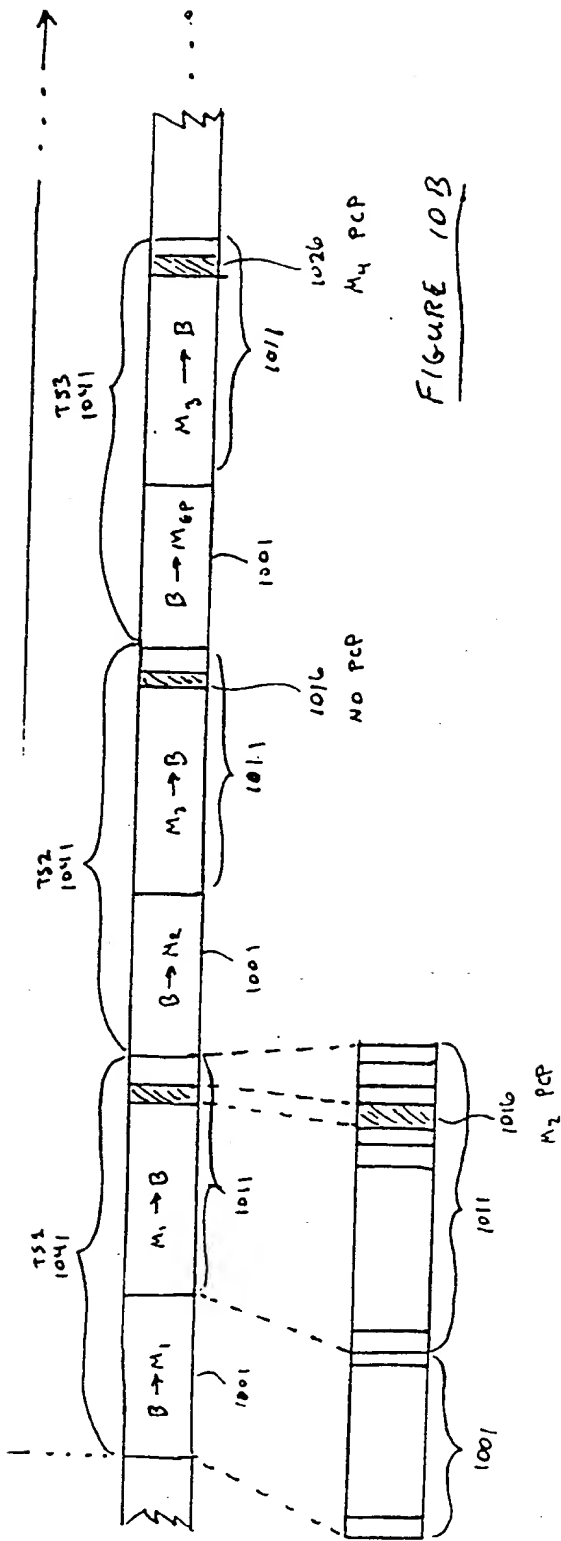


FIGURE 10B

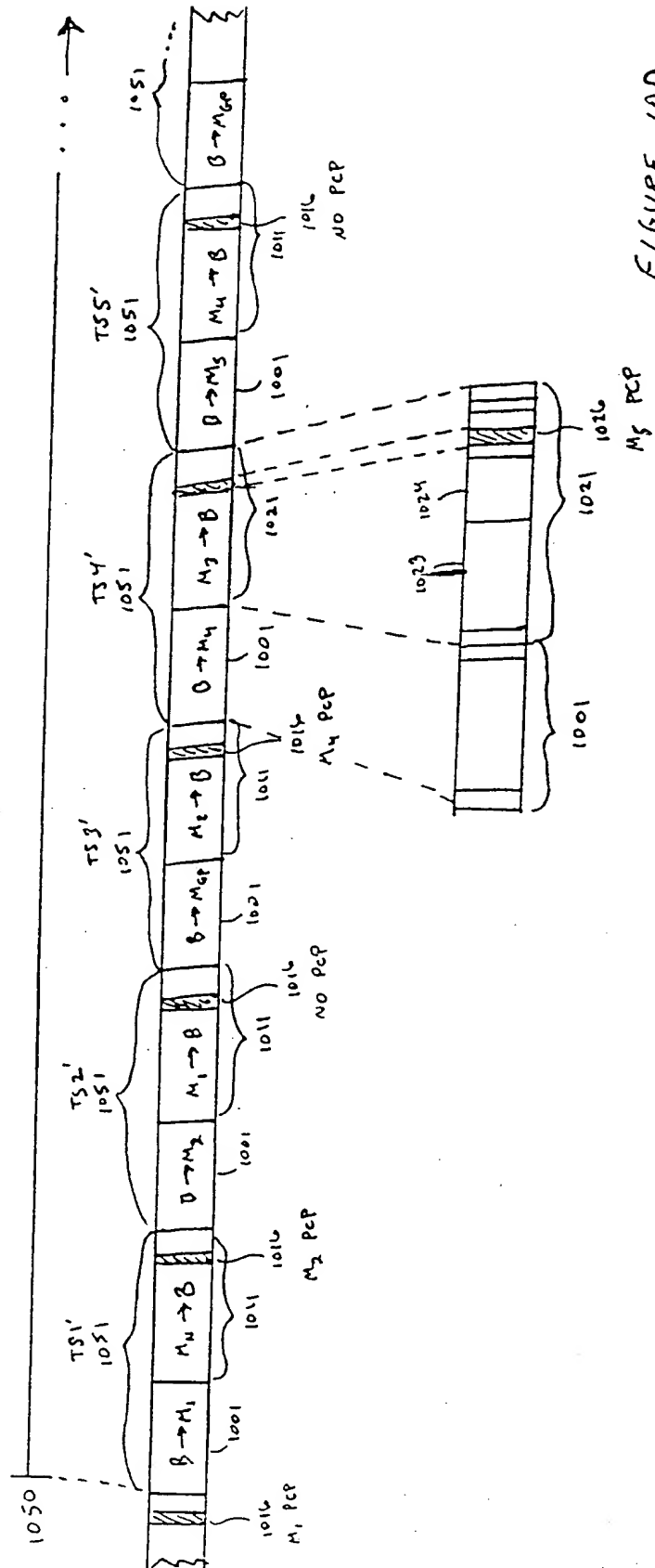
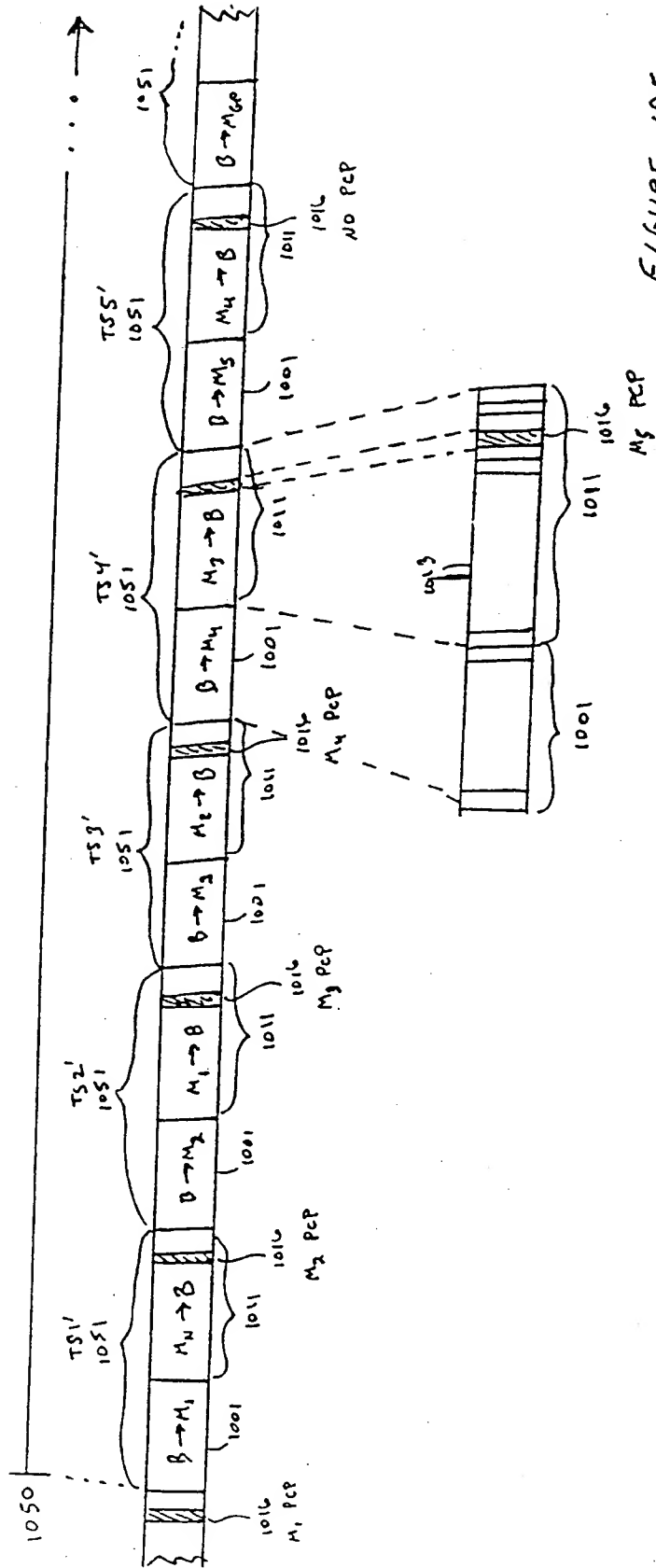
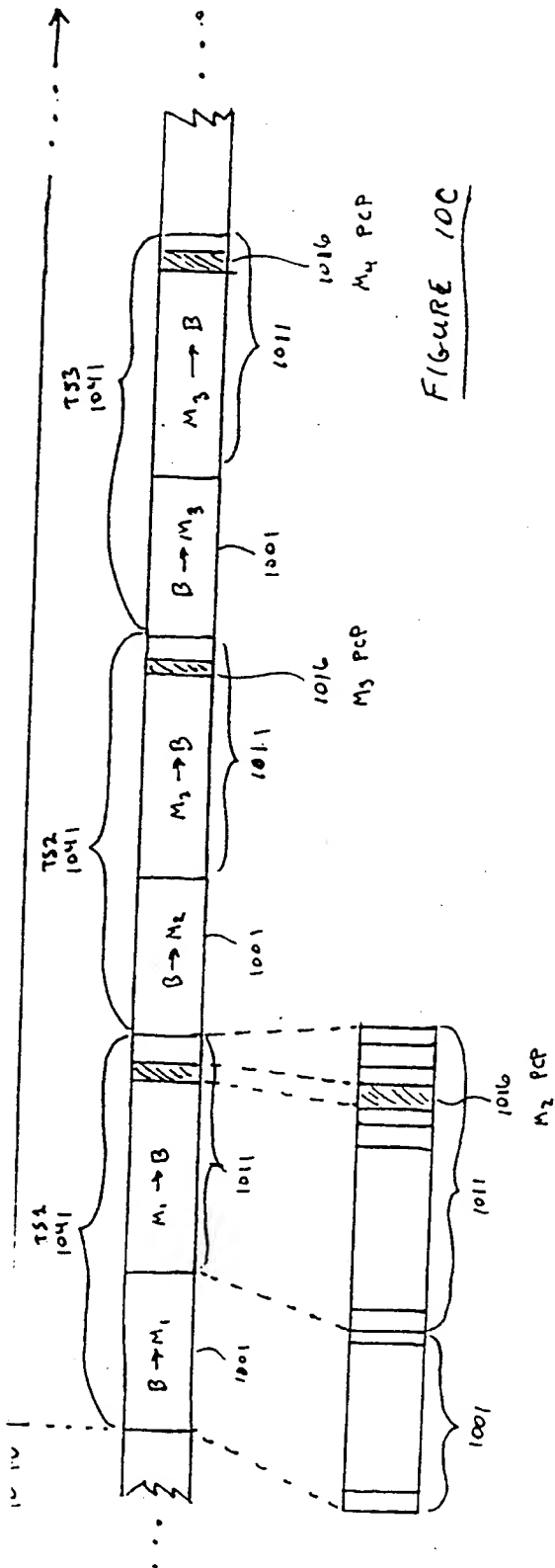


FIGURE 10D



# Frame Subelements

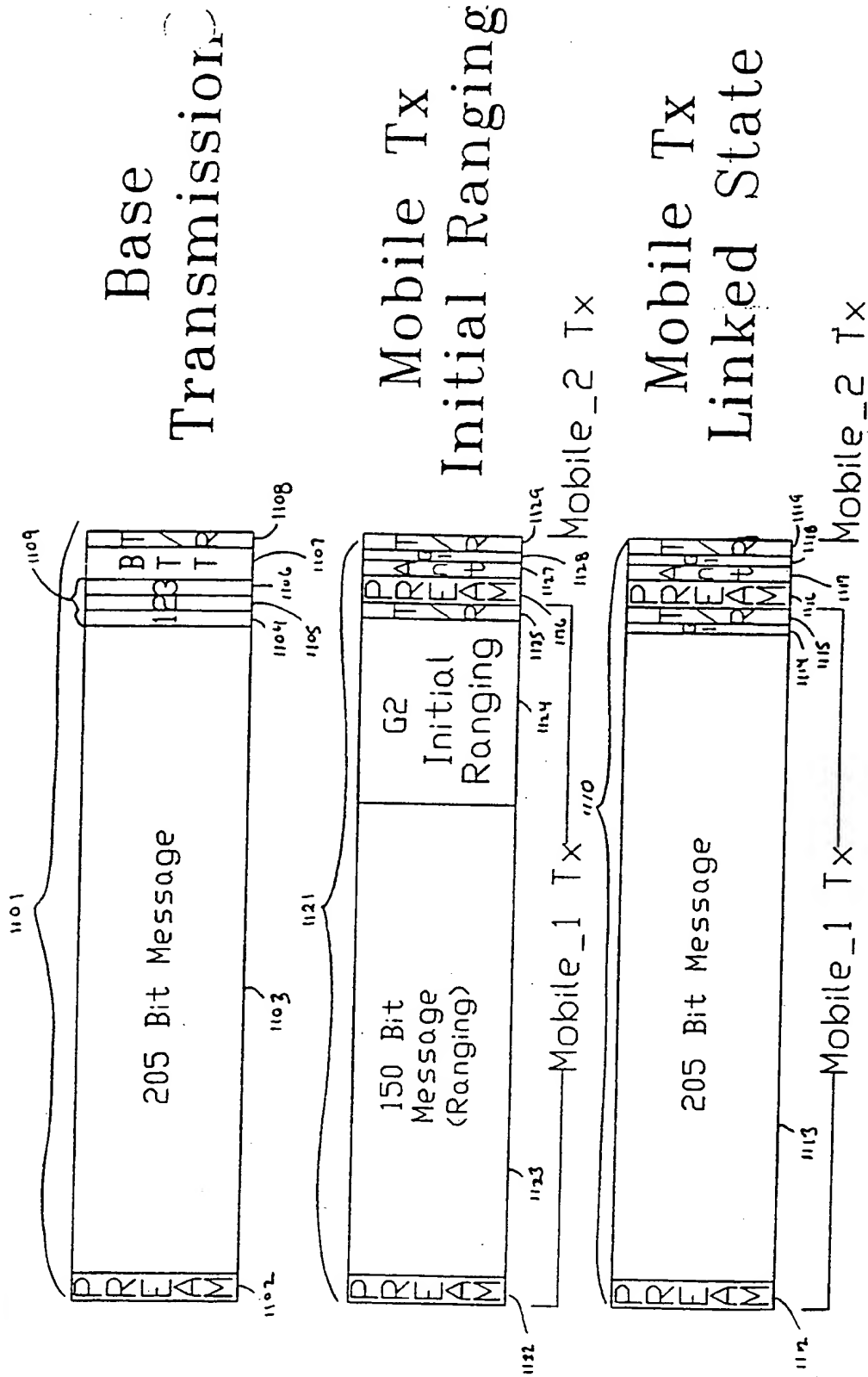


Figure 11A

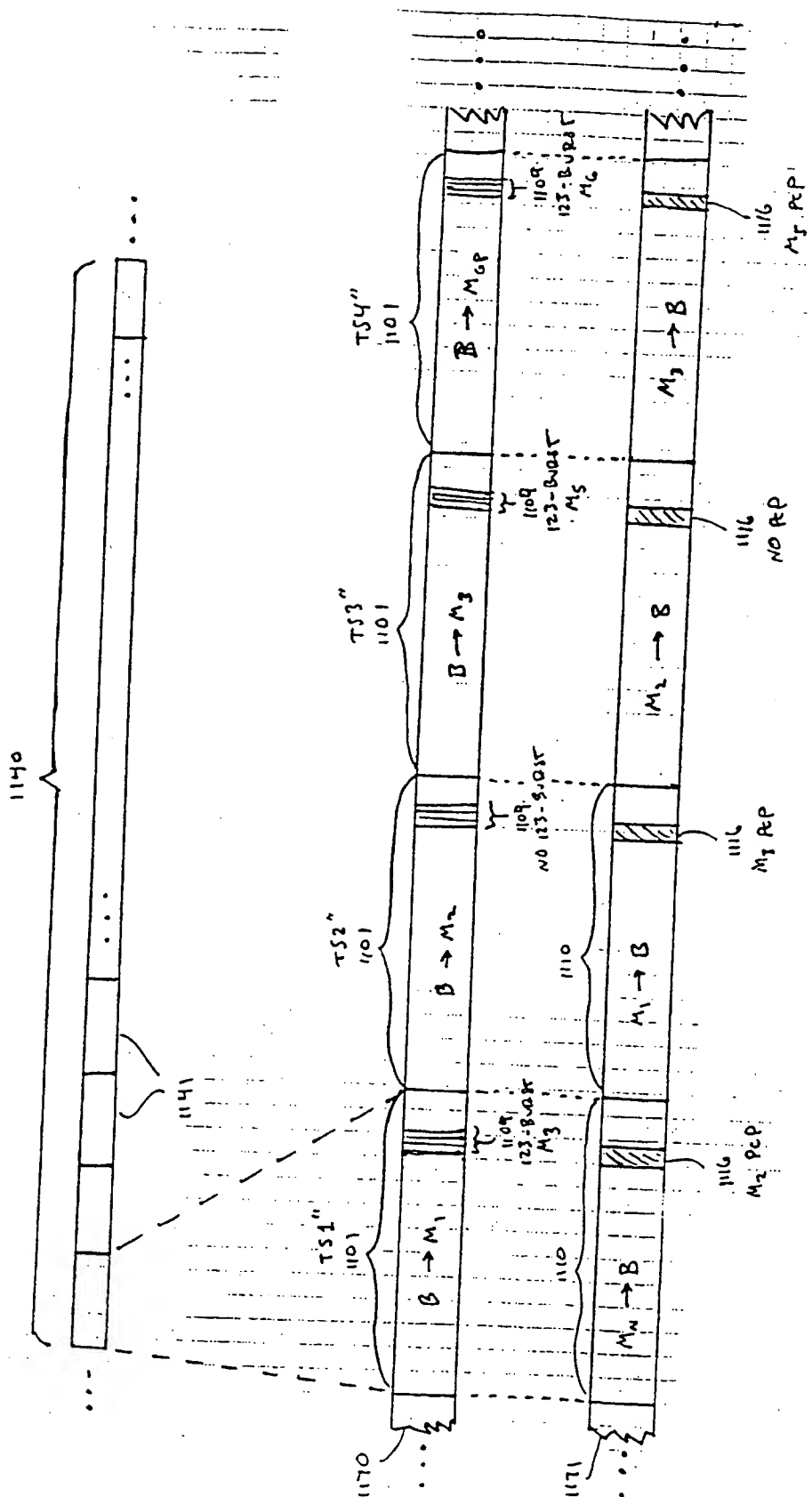
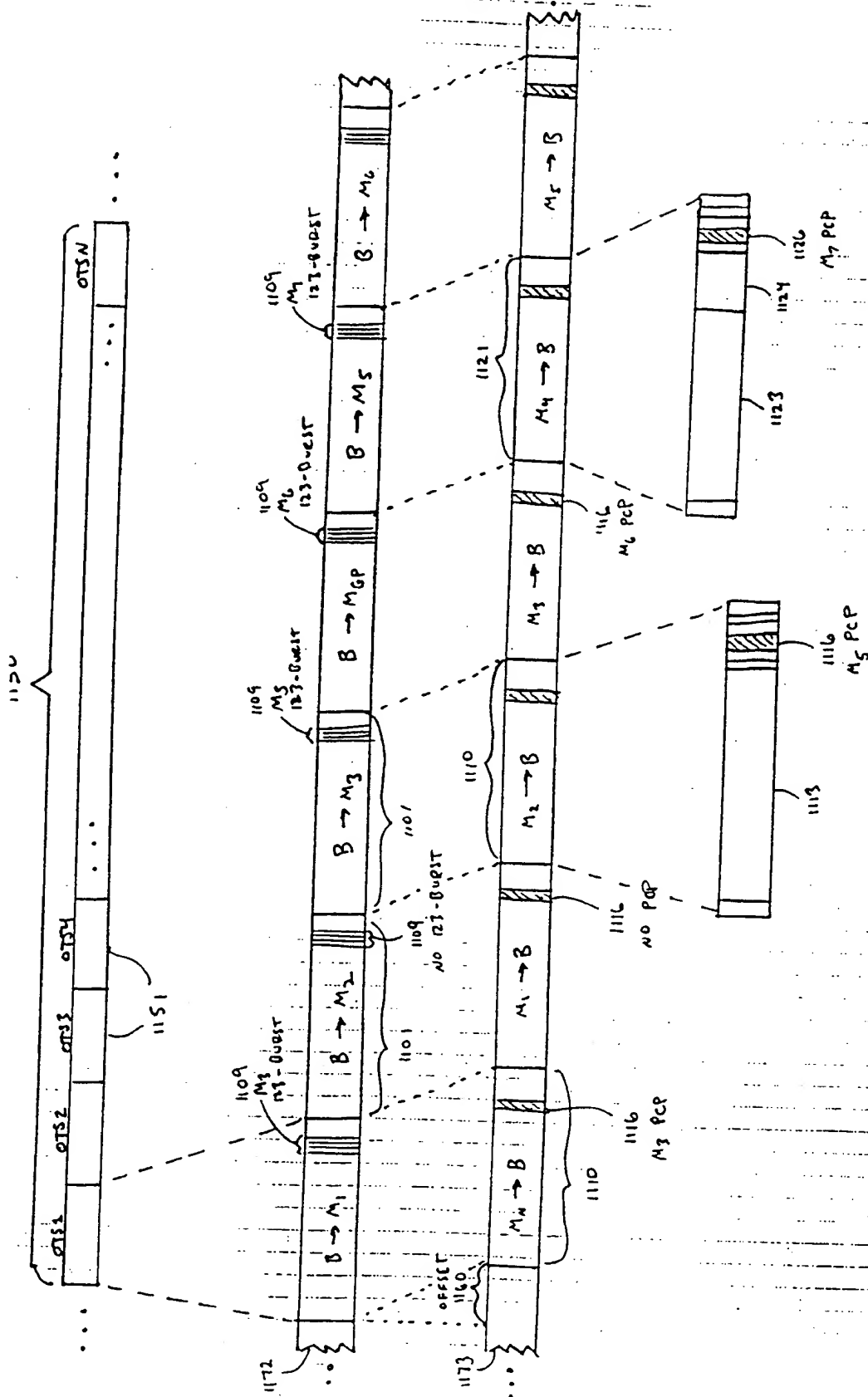


Figure 11B

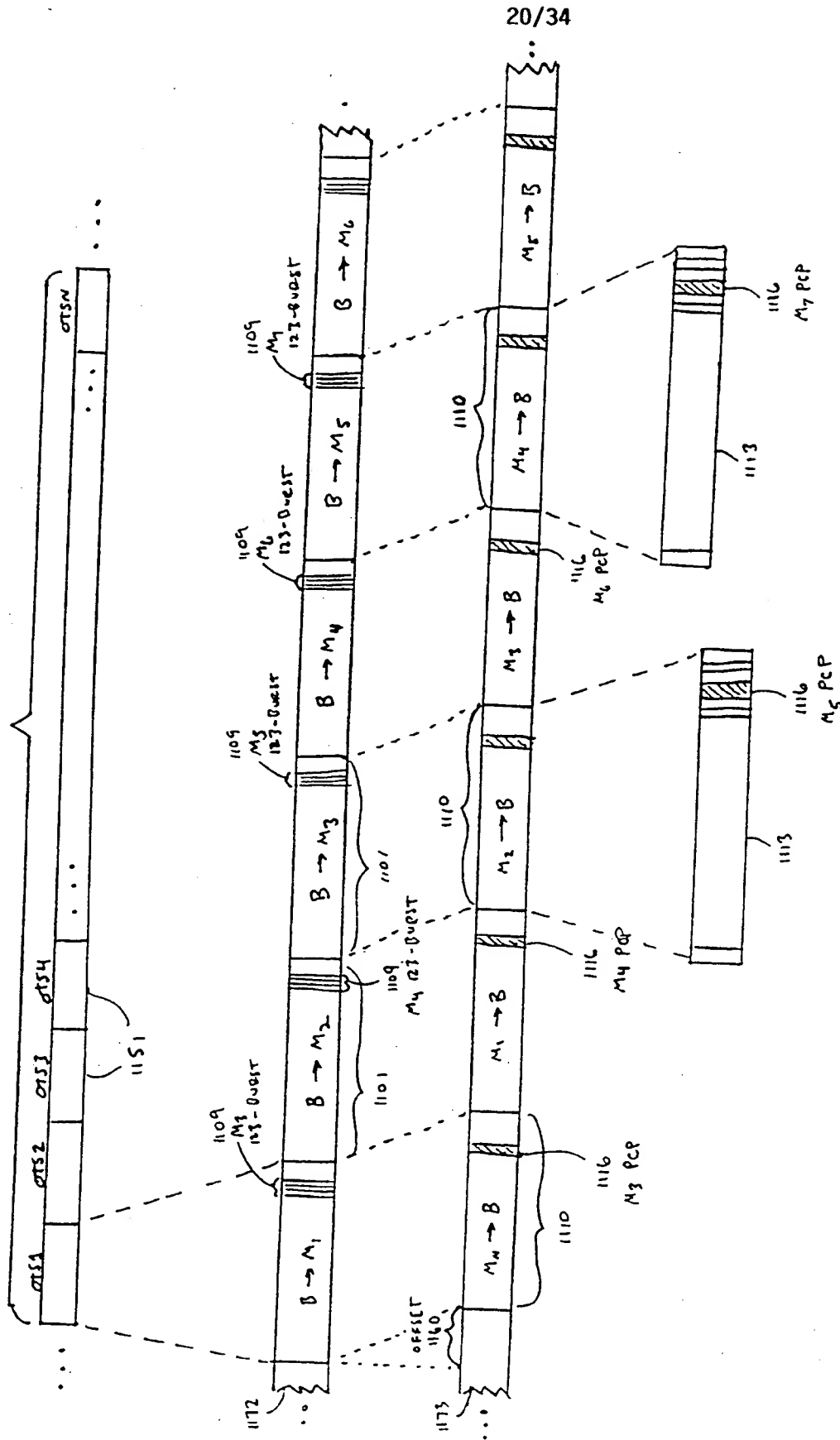
ZERO OFFSET  
FRAME FORMAT

19/34



OFFSET INTERLEAVED  
FRAME FORMAT

FIGURE 11C



OFFSET INTERLEAVED  
FRAME FORMAT

FIGURE 11D

21/34

Table 12a

## 21 Bit Header Bit Utilization

TABLE 12A-1Base  
PollingReference J.1.2.14.1  
Page 47

Total Bits	21
Field	
-----	
B/E	1
E	1
G/S	1
P/N	1
SA	1
PWR	3
CU	2
Opp. Link Qual.	2
Timing Command	3
Header FCW	4
-----	
Bits Used	19
Spares	2

Base  
TrafficJ.1.2.14.2  
49

Total Bits	21
Field	
-----	
B/E	1
E	1
C/N	1
P/N	1
SA	1
PWR	3
B/W Grant	2
CU	2
Opp. Link Qual.	2
Timing Command	3
Header FCW	4
-----	
Bits Used	21
Spares	0

TABLE 12A-2TABLE 12A-3Mobile Station  
PollingReference J.1.2.14.3  
Page 52

Total Bits	21
Field	
-----	
B/E	1
E	1
G/S	1
P/N	1
SA	1
PWR	3
BW Request	1
CU	x
Opp. Link Qual.	2
Timing Command	x
Header FCW	4
-----	
Bits Used	15
Spares	6

Mobile Station  
TrafficJ.1.2.14.4  
53

Total Bits	21
Field	
-----	
B/E	1
E	1
S/N	1
P/N	1
SA	1
PWR	3
B/W Grant	1
CU	x
Opp. Link Qual.	2
Timing Command	x
Header FCW	4
-----	
Bits Used	15
Spares	6

TABLE 12A-4

FIGURE 12A

22/34

Table 12b

## Frame Bit Utilization, GP, SP, GR

TABLE 12B-1

Base General Poll
----------------------

2.2.1.1.1.1.1  
9

Total Bits 205

## Field

Header	21
Slot Quality	x
Base ID	32
Service Provider	16
Zone	16
Facility	32
Slot Number	6

Frame FCW 16

Bits Used 139

Spares 66

Base Specific Poll
-----------------------

2.2.1.1.1.1.2  
9

Total Bits 205

## Field

Header	21
Correlative ID	8
Result	8
Slot Quality	x
PID	40
Map Type	8
Map	32
Slot Number	6

Frame FCW 16

Bits Used 139

Spares 66

Mobile Station General Response
------------------------------------

2.2.1.1.1.1.1  
14

Total Bits 150

## Field

Header	21
PID	40
Service Provider	16
Service Request	16

Mobile Capability 8

Frame FCW 16

Bits Used 117

Spares 33

TABLE 12B-3

Mobile Capability	8
Sub Fields	

## Field

Type	2
Home Base Slot #	6

Spares 0

FIGURE 12B



23/34

Symmetric Frame Formats

Base  
Symmetric Bearer

2.2.1.1.1.2.5

12

TABLE 12C-1

Total Bits 205

Field

Header 21  
D Channel 8  
B-Channel 160  
Frame PCW 16

or

Header 21  
D Channel 8  
B-Channel 176  
Frame PCW 0

Bits Used 205

Spares 0

Mobile Station  
Symmetric Bearer

2.2.1.1.1.2.5

12

TABLE 12C-3

Total Bits 205

Field

Header 21  
D Channel 8  
B-Channel 160  
Frame PCW 16

or

Header 21  
D Channel 8  
B-Channel 176  
Frame PCW 0

Bits Used 205

Spares 0

Asymmetric Frame Formats  
(TDD, Non-Ranging Only)

Base  
Asymmetric Bearer

TABLE 12C-2

2.2.1.1.1.2

10.11

Base Mobile  
Dominant

Total Bits 45 365

Field

Header 21 21  
D Channel 8 8  
B-Channel 0 320  
Frame PCW 16 16

or

Header 21 21  
D Channel 8 8  
B-Channel 16 336  
Frame PCW 0 0

Bits Used 45 365

Spares 0 0

Mobile Station  
Asymmetric Bearer

2.2.1.2.1.2

15.16

TABLE 12C-4

Total Bits 365 45

Field

Header 21 21  
D Channel 8 8  
B-Channel 320 0  
Frame PCW 16 16

or

Header 21 21  
D Channel 8 8  
B-Channel 336 16  
Frame PCW 0 0

Bits Used 365 45

Spares 0 0

FIGURE 12C

24/34

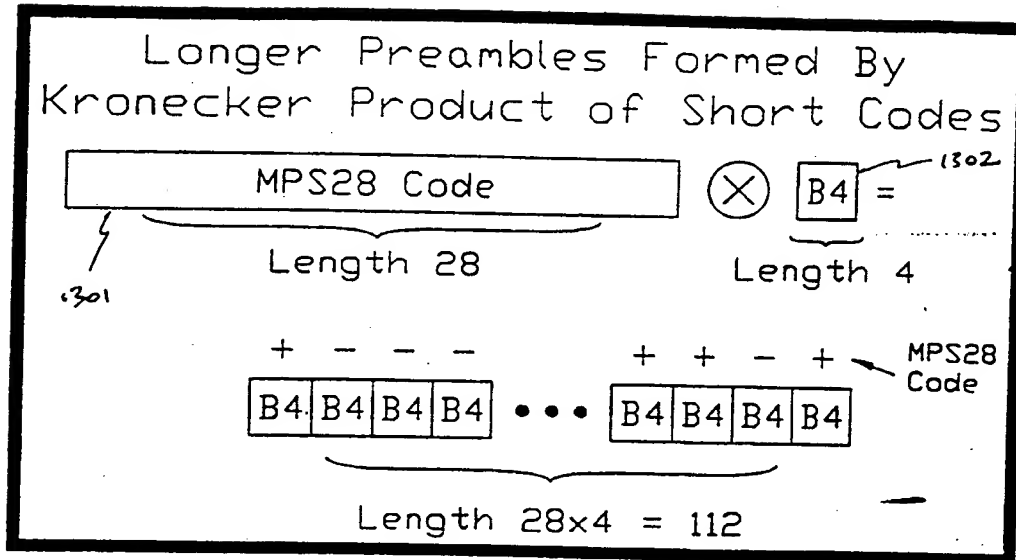


FIGURE 13A

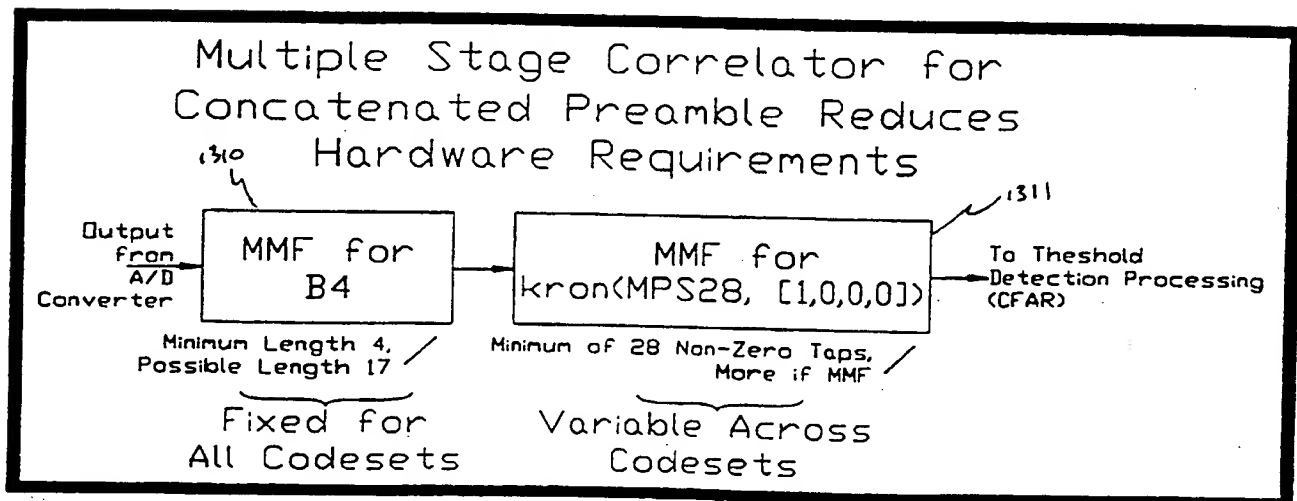


FIGURE 13B

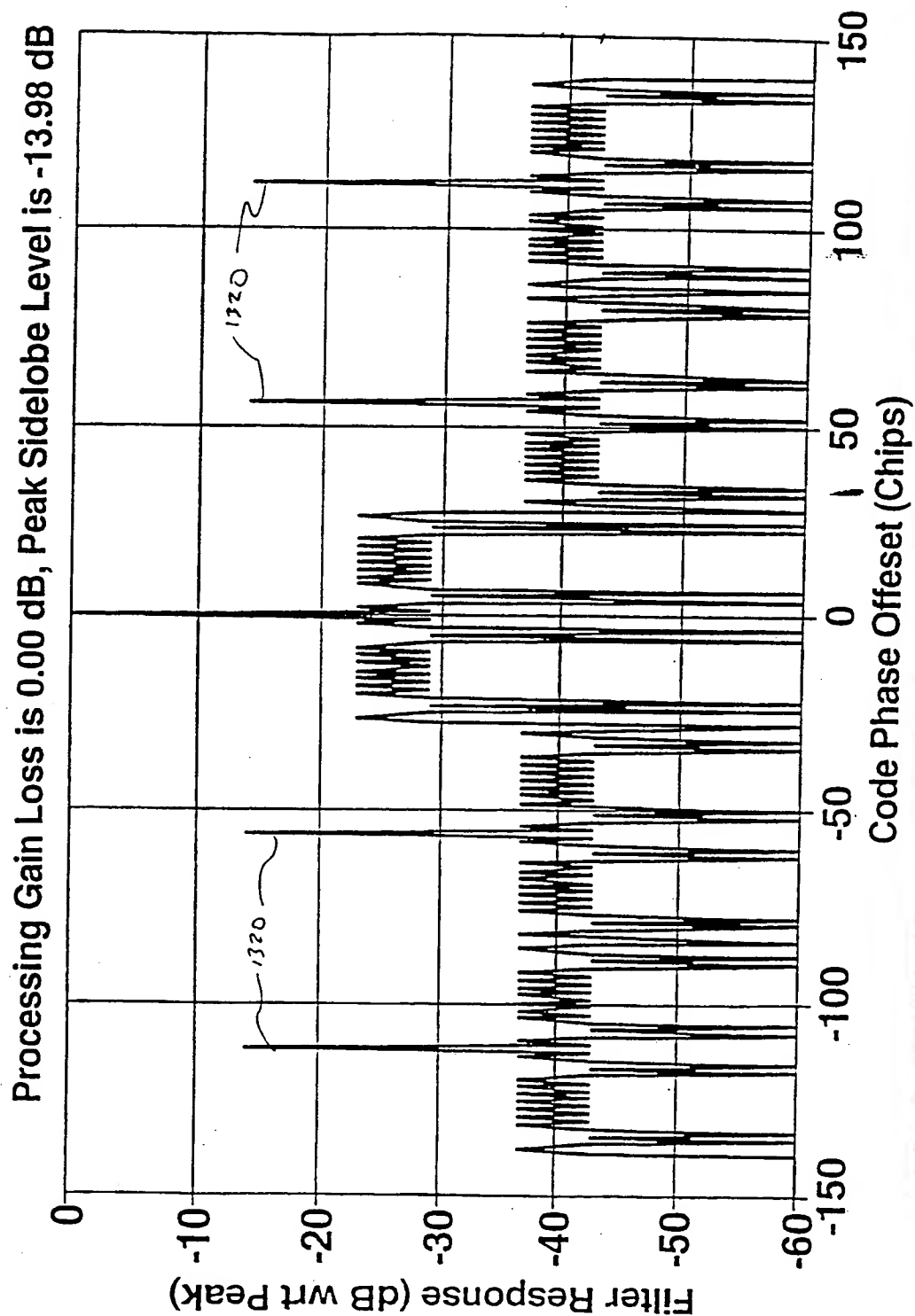
25/34

Preamble Performance in Rayleigh Fading ( $L_{\text{min}}=3$ ,  $L_{\text{max}}=1$ )<sup>1</sup>

Case Identifier	Preamble Length	99.9% Detection Threshold (dBm)		Antenna Probe Length	90% Detection Threshold (dBm)	
		No Sidelobe	-7 dB Peak Sidelobe		No Sidelobe	-7 dB Peak Sidelobe
High Tier Interfaces and ISM Interfaces						
5.00HT	56	-100.4	-96.1	28	-100.6	-94.8
2.80HF	112	-105.9	-101.6	56	-106.1	-100.4
1.60HF	84	-107.1	-102.8	28	-105.5	-99.8
1.40HF	112	-108.9	-104.6	28	-106.1	-100.4
Low Tier Interfaces and Unlicensed Isochronous Interfaces						
5.00HT	56	-100.4	-96.1	28	-100.6	-94.8
0.64LF	28	-106.3	-102.0	13	-106.2	-100.4
0.56LF	28	-106.9	-102.6	13	-106.8	-101.0
0.35LF	25	-108.4	-104.2	11	-108.1	-102.3

<sup>1</sup> PFA<sub>total</sub> = 1% ,NF=4 dB, Implementation Loss = 3 dB, CFAR Loss = 2 dB

FIGURE 13C



Length 140 Preamble Processed By 5 tap B5 MF followed by 28 tap MPS28 MF

FIGURE 13D

27/34

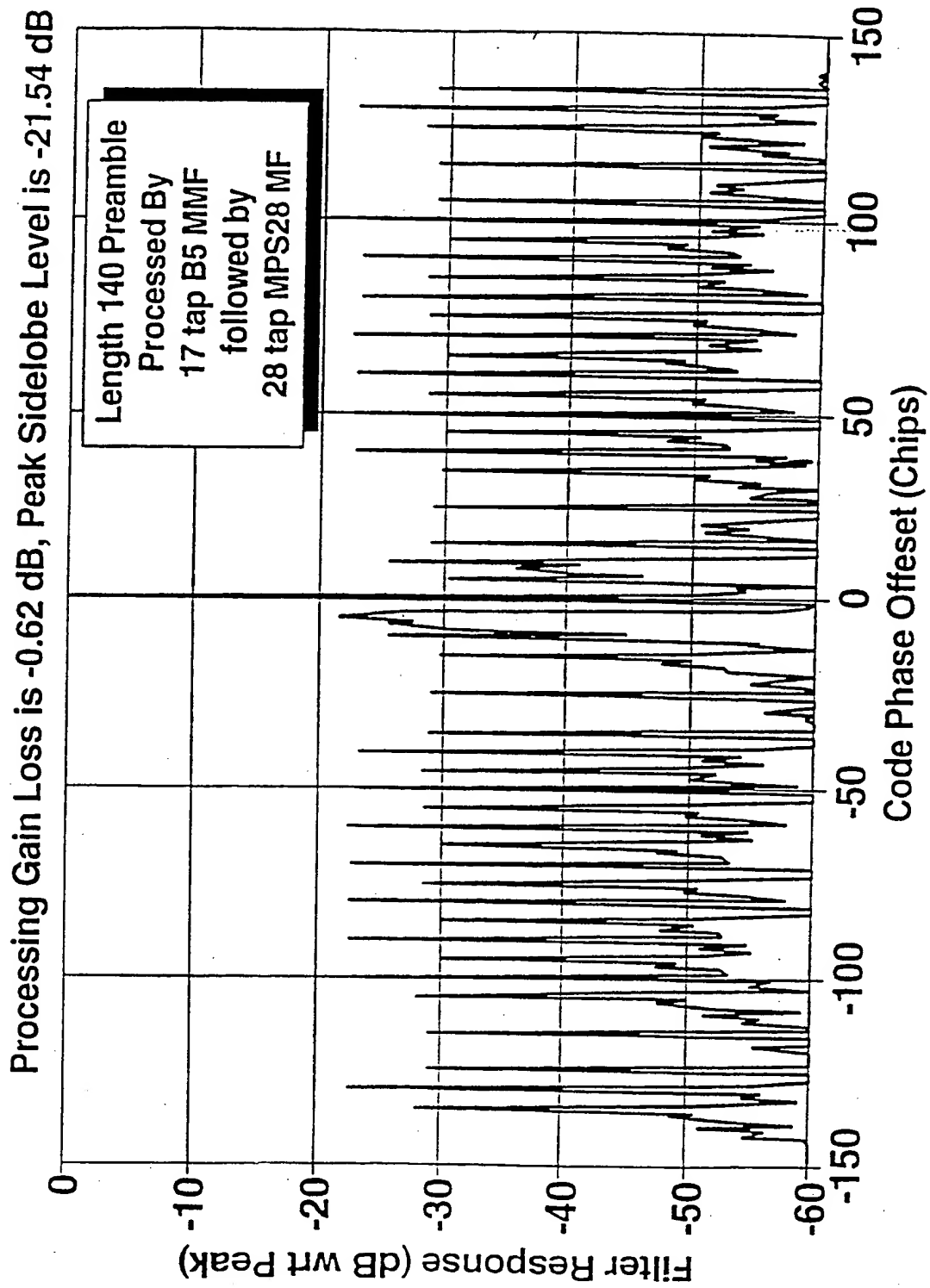


FIGURE 13E

28/34

Air Interface Summary

Case Identifier	Duplex Method	Time Slots	Chlprate (MHz)	Channels In Allocation	Sensitivity (dBm)	Bases Required	
High Tier Interfaces ( $L_{min}=2$ , $L_{max}=2$ , 30 MHz Allocation)							
5.00HT	TDD	32/25	5.00	8.0	-97.1	R <sup>2</sup> Prop	R <sup>1</sup> Prop
2.80HF	FDD	32	2.80	7.1	-99.6	100.00%	100.00%
1.60HF	FDD	20	1.60	12.5	-102.0	55.98%	74.82%
1.40HF	FDD	16	1.40	14.3	-102.6	31.99%	56.56%
Low Tier Interfaces ( $L_{min}=3$ , $L_{max}=1$ , 30 MHz Allocation)							
5.00HT	TDD	32	5.00	8.0	-99.1	R <sup>2</sup> Prop	R <sup>1</sup> Prop
0.64LF	FDD	40	0.64	31.3	-92.9	100.00%	100.00%
0.56LF	FDD	35	0.56	35.7	-93.5	410.20%	149.67%
0.35LF	FDD	25	0.35	57.1	-95.5	358.92%	144.07%
Unlicensed Isynchronous Interfaces ( $L_{min}=3$ , $L_{max}=1$ , 1.25 MHz Max Channel Bandwidth)							
5.00HT	TDD	32	5.00	0.3	-99.1	R <sup>2</sup> Prop	R <sup>1</sup> Prop
0.64LT	TDD	20	0.64	2.6	-92.9	100.00%	100.00%
0.56LT	TDD	17	0.56	3.0	-93.5	410.20%	149.67%
0.35LT	TDD	12	0.35	4.8	-95.5	358.92%	144.07%
ISM Air Interfaces ( $L_{min}=3$ , $L_{max}=1$ , 83.5 MHz Allocation)							
5.00HT	TDD	32	5.00	22.3	-99.1	R <sup>2</sup> Prop	R <sup>1</sup> Prop
2.80HT	TDD	16	2.80	19.9	-101.6	100.00%	100.00%
1.60HT	TDD	10	1.60	34.8	-104.0	55.98%	84.72%
1.40HT	TDD	8	1.40	39.8	-104.6	31.99%	72.21%
						27.99%	69.50%

Sensitivity improvements of 3 to 6 dB are possible in Low Tier

Sensitivity improvements of 3 to 6 dB are possible in Low tier and Unlicensed Isynchronous air interfaces.

FIGURE 14

Digital Range Limits for Physical Layer Air Interfaces

Case Identifier	Duplex Method	Chiprate (MHz)	Ranging Used			Time Slots			Digital Range (miles)		
High Tier Interfaces											
5.00HT	TDD	5.00	Yes	No	No	32	32	25	8.47	1.91	10.06
2.80HF	FDD	2.80	Yes	No	No	32	32	28	13.67	1.96	6.12
1.60HF	FDD	1.60	Yes	No	No	20	20	16	21.66	1.16	12.81
1.40HF	FDD	1.40	Yes	No	No	16	16	14	27.88	4.46	12.77
Low Tier Interfaces											
5.00HT	TDD	5.00	Yes	No	No	32	32	25	8.47	1.91	10.06
0.64LF	FDD	0.64	Yes	No	No	40	40	32	10.77	2.77	8.59
0.56LF	FDD	0.56	Yes	No	No	35	35	32	12.31	3.16	5.66
0.35LF	FDD	0.35	Yes	No	No	25	25	20	15.17	0.53	9.85
Unlicensed Isochronous Interfaces											
5.00HT	TDD	5.00		No	No		32	25		1.91	10.06
0.64LT	TDD	0.64		No	No		40	32		2.77	8.59
0.56LT	TDD	0.56		No	No		35	32		3.16	5.66
0.35LT	TDD	0.35		No	No		25	20		0.53	9.85
ISM Air Interfaces											
5.00HT	TDD	5.00		No	No		32	25		1.91	10.06
2.80HT	TDD	2.80		No	No		32	28		1.96	6.12
1.60HT	TDD	1.60		No	No		20	16		1.16	12.81
1.40HT	TDD	1.40		No	No		16	14		4.46	12.77

FIGURE 15

30/34

*Frame Layout Impacts on Rules for Next Base Transmission & Slot Aggregation*

Duplex Method	Base Station Operating Mode	Mobile Has Diplexer	Forward Link Antenna Probe Signal Employed	Mobile Supports Interleaved Traffic Streams	Number of Base Slots Forbidden Between		Maximum Traffic Mode Slot Aggregation Potential To Single Mobile
					GP/SP Negotiations	Same Mobile Traffic Slots	
TDD . . .	Ranging .	N/A	No .	No Yes	1 1	$\frac{1}{0}$	50% 100%
	Non-Ranging .		.	No Yes	0 0	0 0	100% 100%
FDD . . .	Ranging .	No .	No .	No Yes	2 2	3 3	25% 25%
	Non-Ranging .	" .	.	No Yes	1 1	1 1	50% 50%
FDD . . .	Ranging .	Yes .	No .	No Yes	2 2	3 0	25% 100%
	Non-Ranging .	" .	.	No Yes	1 1	1 0	50% 100%
FDD . . .	Ranging .	No .	Yes .	No Yes	2 2	3 3	25% 25%
	Non-Ranging .	" .	.	No Yes	1 1	1 1	50% 50%
FDD . . .	Ranging .	Yes .	Yes .	No Yes	2 2	3 0	25% 100%
	Non-Ranging .	" .	.	No Yes	1 1	1 1	50% 100%

Note: Slot Negotiations relates only to GP->SP, SP->SP and SP->Traffic negotiations when PCP handshake is inactive.

FIGURE 16



Low Tier System<sup>1</sup> Summaries for Handsets With & Without Antenna Selection Diversity

Case Designation	Symbol Rate (kps)	Ranging Format Used	Number of Full Duplex 8 kbps Slots <sup>2</sup>	Digital Range (miles)	4DPSK Sensitivity (dBm)									
					No Fade	L <sub>ant</sub> =1	L <sub>ant</sub> =2	L <sub>ant</sub> =3						
Mobiles have Selection Diversity Antenna (Forward Link sends two preambles, No PCP)														
0.350LF_D	350	Yes	No	No	50	50	40	10.64	3.99	13.31	-97.8	-87.2	-92.5	-94.5
0.280LF_D	280	Yes	No	No	40	40	35	13.31	4.99	11.64	-98.8	-88.1	-93.5	-95.4
0.224LF_D	224	Yes	No	No	32	32	28	16.63	6.24	14.55	-99.8	-89.1	-94.5	-96.4
Mobiles Do Not have Selection Diversity Antenna (Forward Link sends three antenna probes, PCP used once linked)														
0.350LF_P	350	Yes	No	No	40	40	35	10.78	3.33	6.65	-97.8	-87.2	-92.5	-94.5
0.280LF_P	280	Yes	No	No	35	35	28	11.64	1.66	8.32	-98.8	-88.1	-93.5	-95.4
0.224LF_P	224	Yes	No	No	28	28	20	13.72	2.08	15.38	-99.8	-89.1	-94.5	-96.4

1: Based on 4QAM modulation format.

2: Unlicensed Isynchronous TDD Modes have INT(FDD slot count / 2] full duplex time slots (about 1/2 as many).

FIGURE 17

# Low IF Digital Correlator Design

- Single A/D Converter
- I/Q Separation In Digital Domain
- Usually Yields Minimum Complexity Receiver

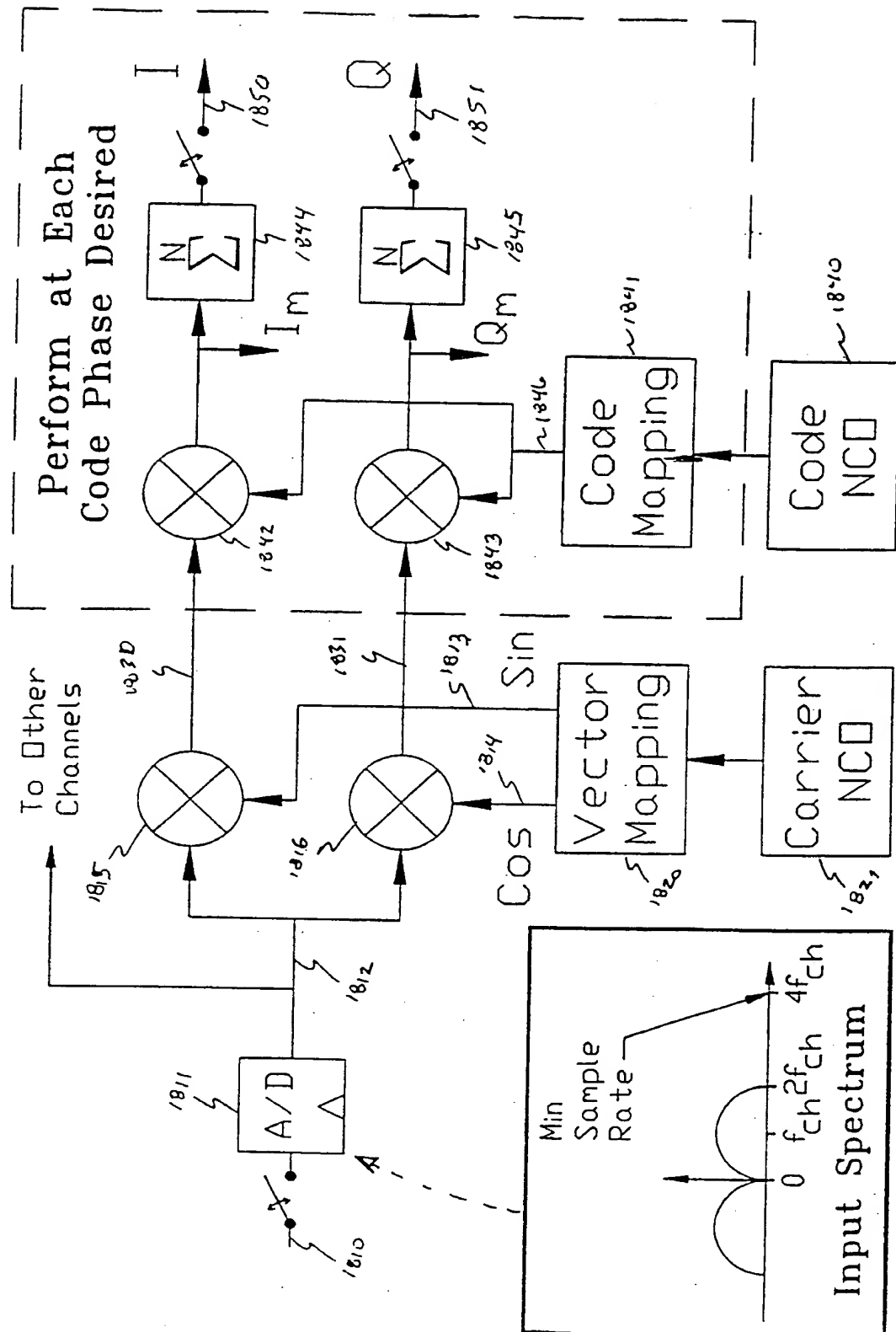
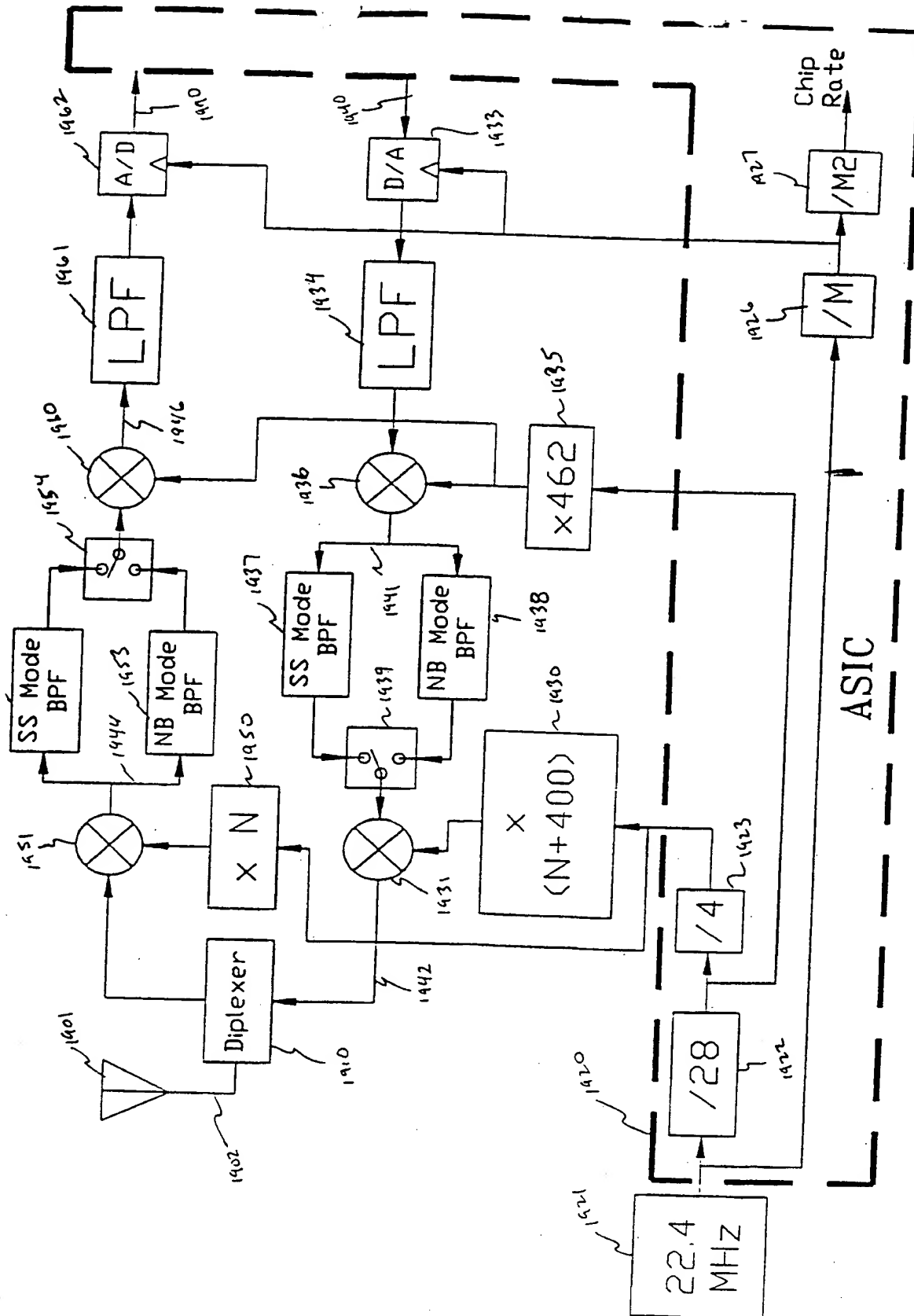
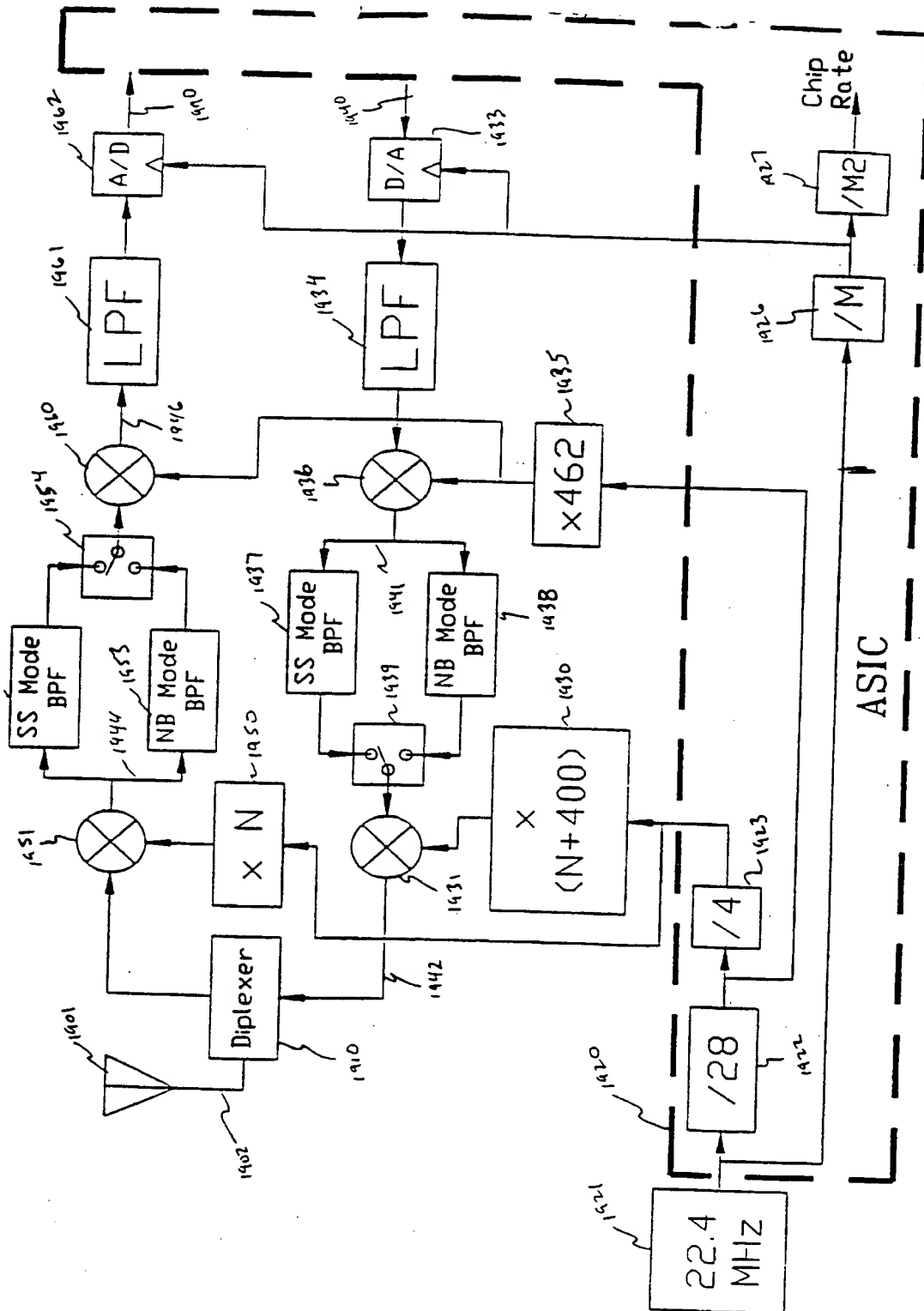


Figure 18



Front End Frequency Plan for LOW IF FDD BaseStation

- Dual Mode; Spread Spectrum/Narrowband
- Direct Synthesis CPM at Low IF, ASIC Does Phase Accum.



Front End Frequency Plan for Low IF FDD Base Station

- Dual Mode; Spread Spectrum/Narrowband
- Direct Synthesis CPM at Low IF, ASIC Does Phase Accum.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US96/07905

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL : Please See Extra Sheet.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 370/30, 32, 92, 95.3, 105.1, 110.1; 379/58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 202; 455/33.1, 33.2, 34.1, 51.1, 54.1

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS

search terms: base station, user station, transmitting, receiving, control or control pulse, and delay

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US, A, 4,742,512 (AKASHI ET AL.) 03 May 1988, col. 8, lines 5-47, col. 4, lines 1-23, and Fig. 1.	1-186
Y	US, A, 5,109,393 (SAEGUSA) 28 April 1992, col. 4, lines 17-36 and col. 3, lines 10-34.	1-186
T	US, A, 5,528,597 (GERSZBERG ET AL.) 18 June 1996, col. 1, line 60 to col. 2, line 9, col. 3, lines 14-35, col. 5, lines 18-26, and col. 4, lines 56-67.	1-62, 64, 66, 68-70, 72-76, 78-128, 133-139, 143-146, 148-150, 152-157, 159-178, 184-186



Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.



See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	* T	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
* A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be part of particular relevance	* X	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
* E* earlier document published on or after the international filing date	* Y	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
* L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	* &	document member of the same patent family
* O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
* P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search

31 JULY 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

27 AUG 1996

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Authorized officer

Douglas Olms

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Telephone No. (703) 305-4703

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet)(July 1992)\*

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US96/07905

## C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A,P	US, A, 5,506,837 (SOLLNER ET AL.) 09 April 1996, see entire document.	1-186
A	US, A, 4,222,115 (COPPER ET AL.) 09 September 1980, see entire document.	1-186

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet)(July 1992)★

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US96/07905

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

IPC (6):

H04B 1/00; H04J 1/00, 3/06, 3/12, 3/16, 3/24; H04M 3/42, 9/00, 11/00; H04Q 9/00

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:

US CL :

370/30, 32, 92, 95.3, 105.1, 110.1; 379/58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 202; 455/33.1, 33.2, 34.1, 51.1, 54.1



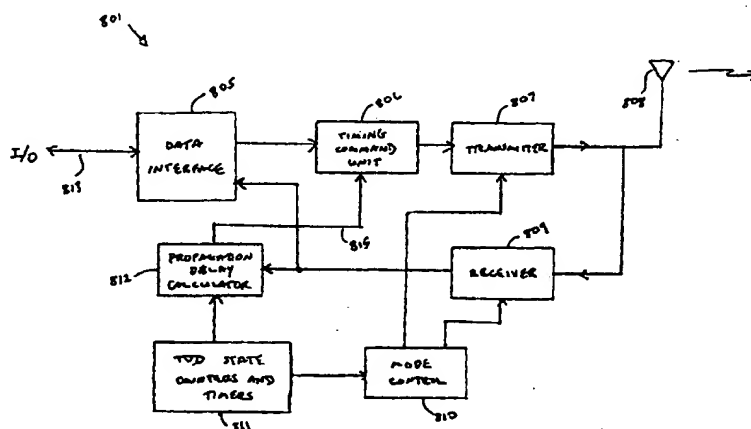




## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>H04B 1/00, H04J 1/00, 3/06, 3/12, 3/16, 3/24, H04M 3/42, 9/00, 11/00, H04Q 9/00</b>		A1	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 96/39749</b>
(21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US96/07905</b>		(43) International Publication Date: <b>12 December 1996 (12.12.96)</b>	
(22) International Filing Date: <b>28 May 1996 (28.05.96)</b>		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(30) Priority Data: 08/464,285      5 June 1995 (05.06.95)      US 08/465,555      5 June 1995 (05.06.95)      US 08/465,137      5 June 1995 (05.06.95)      US 08/463,220      5 June 1995 (05.06.95)      US		Published With international search report.	
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): OMNIPOINT CORPORATION [US/US]; 1365 Garden of the Gods Road, Colorado Springs, CO 80907 (US).			
(72) Inventor; and (75) Inventor/Applicant (for US only): SCOTT, Logan [US/US]; 132 North Fuller Place, Breckenridge, CO 80424 (US).			
(74) Agents: HEMMINGER, Steven, D. et al.; Lyon & Lyon, First Interstate World Center, Suite 4700, 633 West Fifth Street, Los Angeles, CA 90071-2066 (US).			

(54) Title: TIMING ADJUSTMENT CONTROL FOR EFFICIENT TIME DIVISION DUPLEX COMMUNICATION



BASE STATION

## (57) Abstract

A system for time division duplex communication over a single frequency band wherein guard time overhead is reduced by active adjustment of reverse link transmission timing as a function of round trip propagation delay. Responding to a polling message from the base station, a user station seeking to establish communication transmits a reply message. The base station using a propagation delay calculator (812) calculates the distance of the user station by measuring the propagation delay with respect to receipt of the reply message and a timing control unit (806) and transmitter (807) for sending a timing adjustment command to the user station instructing it to advance or retard its timing. Thereafter, the base station monitors the user station transmissions and periodically commands it to adjust its timing in a like manner. The user station transmits a control preamble at the start of each time slot to allow the base station to perform round trip timing calculations and adjustment of the user station's power or antenna selection.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

DESCRIPTIONTiming Adjustment Control for Efficient  
Time Division Duplex CommunicationBackground of the InventionField of the Invention

The field of the present invention pertains to  
5 communications and, more particularly, to an air interface  
structure and protocol suitable for use in a cellular  
communication environment.

Description of Related Art

10 A growing demand for flexible, mobile communication  
has led to development of a variety of techniques for  
allocating available communication bandwidth among a  
steadily increasing number of users of cellular services.  
Two conventional techniques for allocating communication  
15 bandwidth between a cellular base station and a set of  
cellular user stations (also called "mobile stations") are  
frequency division duplex (FDD) and time division duplex  
(TDD).

As used herein, FDD refers to a technique for  
20 establishing full duplex communications having both  
forward and reverse links separated in frequency, and TDD  
refers to a technique for establishing full duplex  
communications having both forward and reverse links  
occurring on the same frequency but separated in time to  
25 avoid collisions. Other techniques for communication are  
time division multiple access (TDMA), wherein  
transmissions by a plurality of users are separated in  
time to avoid conflicts, frequency division multiple  
access (FDMA), wherein transmissions by a plurality of  
30 users are separated in frequency to avoid conflicts, and  
time division multiplex (TDM), wherein multiple data  
streams are time multiplexed together over a single

carrier. Various combinations of FDD, TDD, FDMA, and TDMA may also be utilized.

In a particular FDD technique, a base station is allocated a set of frequencies over which it may transmit, using a different frequency slot for each user station, and each user station is allocated a different frequency over which it may transmit to the base station. For each new user in contact with a base station, a new pair of frequencies is required to support the communication link between the base station and the new user station. The number of users that can be supported by a single base station is therefore limited by the number of available frequency slots.

In a particular TDD technique, the same frequency is used for all user stations in communication with a particular base station. Interference between user stations is avoided by requiring that user stations transmit at different times from one another and from the base station. This is accomplished by dividing a time period into a plurality of time frames, and each time frame into a plurality of time slots. Typically, the base station communicates with only one user station during a time slot, and communicates with all the user stations sequentially during different time slots over a single time frame. Thus, the base station communicates with a particular user station once during each time frame.

In one version of the described system, the base station is allocated a first portion of each time slot during which the base station transmits to a particular user station, and the user station is allocated a second portion of the time slot during which the user station responds to the base station. Thus, the base station may transmit to a first user station, await a response, and, after receiving a response from the first user station, transmit to a second user station, and so on, until the base station has communicated with all user stations sequentially over a particular time frame.

Time division duplex has an advantage over FDD and FDMA of requiring use of only a single frequency bandwidth. However, a drawback of many conventional TDD or TDMA systems is that their efficiency suffers as cell size increases. The reduction in efficiency stems from the relatively unpredictable nature of propagation delay times of transmissions from the base station over air channels to the user stations, and from the user stations over air channels back to the base station. Because user stations are often mobile and can move anywhere within the radius of the cell covered by a base station, the base station generally does not know in advance how long the propagation delay will be for communicating with a particular user station. In order to plan for the worst case, conventional TDD systems typically provide a round-trip guard time to ensure that communication will be completed with the first user station before initiating communication with the second user station. Because the round-trip guard time is present in each time slot regardless of how near or far a user station is, the required round-trip guard time can add substantial overhead, particularly in large cells. The extra overhead limits the number of users, and hence the efficiency, of TDD systems.

Figure 1 is an illustration of the basic round trip timing for a TDD system from a base station perspective. A polling loop 101, or time frame, for a base station is divided into a plurality of time slots 103. Each time slot 103 is used for communication from the base station to a particular user station. Thus, each time slot comprises a base transmission 105, a user transmission 107, and a delay period 106 during which the base transmission 105 propagates to the user station, the user station processes and generates a responsive user transmission 107, and the user transmission 107 propagates to the base station.

If the user station is located right next to the base station, then the base station can expect to hear from the user station immediately after finishing its transmission and switching to a receive mode. As the distance between the user station and the base station grows, the time spent by the base station waiting for a response grows as well. The base station will not hear from the user station immediately but will have to wait for signals to propagate to the user station and back.

As shown in Fig. 1, in a first time slot 110 the user transmission 107 arrives at the base station at a time approximately equidistant between the end of the base transmission 105 and the start of the user transmission 107, indicating that the user station is about half a cell radius from the base station. In a second time slot 111, the user transmission 107 appears very close to the end of the base transmission 105, indicating that the user station is very close to the base station. In a third time slot 112, the user transmission 107 appears at the very end of the time slot 112, indicating that the user station is near or at the cell boundary. Because the third time slot 112 corresponds to a user station at the maximum communication distance for a particular base station, the delay 106 shown in the third time slot 112 represents the maximum round-trip propagation time and, hence, the maximum round-trip guard time.

In addition to propagation delay times, there also may be delays in switching between receive and transmit mode in the user station, base station, or both, which are not depicted in Fig. 1 for simplicity. Typical transmit/receive switching times are about two microseconds, but additional allocations may be made to account for channel ringing effects associated with multipath.

As cell size increases, TDD guard time must increase to account for longer propagation times. In such a case, guard time consumes an increasingly large portion of the

available time slot, particularly for shorter round trip frame durations. The percentage increase in time spent for overhead is due to the fact that TDD guard time is a fixed length, determined by cell radius, while the actual round trip frame duration varies according to the distance of the user station. Consequently, as cells get larger, an increasing amount of time is spent on overhead in the form of guard times rather than actual information transfer between user stations and the base station.

One conventional TDD system is the Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) system developed by the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI). In the DECT system, a base station transmits a long burst of data segmented into time slots, with each time slot having data associated with a particular user station. After a guard time, user stations respond in a designated group of consecutive time slots, in the same order as the base station sent data to the user stations.

Another system in current use is the Global System for Mobile communications ("GSM"). Figure 4 illustrates a timing pattern according to certain existing GSM standards. According to these standards, communication between a base station and user stations is divided into eight burst periods 402. Up to eight different user stations can communicate with a base station, one in each burst period 402.

GSM standards require two separate frequency bands. The base station transmits over a first frequency  $F_A$ , while the user stations transmit over a second frequency  $F_B$ . After a user station receives a base transmission 405 on the first frequency  $F_A$  during a particular burst period 402, the user station shifts in frequency by 45 MHz to the second frequency  $F_B$  and transmits a user transmission 406 in response to the base transmission 405 approximately three burst periods 402 later. The three burst period delay is assumed to be large enough to account for

propagation time between the base station and the user station.

It is important in the GSM system that the user transmissions 406 received at the base station fit into the appropriate burst periods 402. Otherwise, the user transmissions 406 from user stations using adjacent burst periods 402 could overlap, resulting in poor transmission quality or even loss of communication due to interference between user stations. Accordingly, each burst period 402 is surrounded by a guard times 407 to account for uncertain signal propagation delays between the base station and the user station. By comparing the time of the signal actually received from the user station 302 to the expected receive time, the base station may command the user station to advance or retard its transmission timing in order to fall within the proper burst period 402, a feature known as adaptive frame alignment. A specification relating to adaptive frame alignment for the GSM system is TS GSM 05.10.

A drawback of the described GSM system is that it requires two separate frequency bands. It also has a relatively rigid structure, which may limit its flexibility or adaptability to certain cellular environments.

Another system in presence use is known as Wide Area Coverage System (WACS), a narrowband system employing aspects of both FDMA and TDMA. Under WACS, as in GSM, two distinct frequency bands are used. One frequency band is used for user station transmissions, and the other frequency band is used for base station transmissions. The user station transmissions are offset by one-half of a time slot from the corresponding base station transmissions, in order to allow for propagation time between the base station and the user station. Standard WACS does not support spread spectrum communication (a known type of communication wherein the bandwidth of the transmitted signal exceeds the bandwidth of the data to be



transmitted), and has an overall structure that may be characterized as relatively rigid.

In a number of systems, the channel structure is such that a user station may have to transmit a response to a base station while receiving information on another channel. The capability for simultaneous transmission and reception generally requires the use of a diplexer, which is a relatively expensive component for a mobile handset.

It would be advantageous to provide a flexible system having the benefits of time division duplex communication, particularly in large cells, but without having an overhead of a full round-trip guard time in every time slot. It would further be advantageous to provide such a system requiring only a single frequency band for communication. It would further be advantageous to provide a TDMA or combination TDMA/FDMA system wherein user stations are not required to be fitted with a diplexer. It would further be advantageous to provide a time frame structure readily adaptable to single or multiple frequency bands, and for use in either a variety of communication environments.

#### Summary of the Invention

The present invention in one aspect provides an efficient means for carrying out time division multiplexed communication, particularly in large cell environments.

In one embodiment, in a first portion of a time frame, a base station issues consecutive base transmissions directed to each of the communicating user stations. A single collective guard time is allocated while the base station awaits a response from the first user station. The user stations then respond, one by one, in allocated time slots on the same frequency as the base station, with only minimal guard times between each reception. In order to prevent interference among the user transmissions, the base station commands the user stations to advance or retard their transmission timing.

To initiate communication between a base station and a user station, each base transmission may have a header indicating whether or not the slot pair is unoccupied. If a slot pair is free, the user station responds with a  
5 brief message in its designated portion of the slot pair. The user portion of the slot pair includes a full round-trip guard time allowance to account for the uncertain distance between the base station and the user station upon initial communication. The base station compares the  
10 actual time of receiving the user transmission with the expected time of reception, and determines how far away the user station is. In subsequent time frames, the base station may command the user station to advance or retard its timing as necessary so that full information messages  
15 may thereafter be sent without interference among user stations.

In another aspect of the invention, base transmissions are alternated with user transmissions over the same frequency band. The base station and user  
20 stations may precede their main data transmissions with a preamble, such as, for example, where desired for synchronization of spread spectrum communication signals or for conducting power control. The preamble may be transmitted at a designated time interval between two data  
25 transmissions. The base station may command the user station to advance or retard its timing based on a calculated round-trip propagation time.

In other embodiments of the invention, multiple frequency bands are utilized. For example, one frequency  
30 band may be used for base station transmissions, and another frequency band may be used for user station transmissions. Reverse-link user station transmissions are offset from the base station transmissions by a predetermined amount. A base station and user stations  
35 may transmit a preamble prior to a time slot designated for a main data transmission, and may interleave the preamble in a designated time interval between two time

other time slots. The preamble may consist of multiple bursts, one burst from each a different antenna, to allow channel sounding at the target. The base station may command the user station to advance or retard its timing  
5 based on a calculation of round-trip propagation delay time.

In another aspect of the present invention, a universal frame structure is provided for use in a TDMA or TDMA/FDMA system. A suitable frame structure employing  
10 ranging capability may be constructed from timing elements which may include provision for data transmissions, preambles, guard times, and the like. A frame structure may be constructed suitable for operation in various embodiments in either a high tier or a low tier  
15 environment, by selecting an appropriate combination of the generic timing elements.

A dual-mode base station structure is also provided capable of multiple frequency band operation. The base station takes advantage of a low IF digital correlator  
20 design.

Further variations, adaptations, details and refinements of the embodiments generally described above are also disclosed in herein.

## 25 Brief Description of the Drawings

The various objects, features and advantages of the present invention may be better understood by examining the Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiments found below, together with the appended figures, wherein:  
30 Figure 1 is an illustration of the basic round trip timing for a prior art TDD system, from a base station perspective.

Figure 2 is a graph of round-trip guard time as a percentage of the actual round trip frame duration in the  
35 prior art TDD system of Fig. 1.

Figures 3A and 3B are diagrams of cellular environments for communication.

Figure 4 is an illustration of a timing pattern according to existing GSM standards.

Figure 5A is an illustration of the basic round trip timing of a TDD/TDM/TDMA system, from a base station perspective, in accordance with one embodiment of the present invention.

Figure 5B is a timing diagram showing an initial communication link-up between a base station 304 and a user station 302.

Figure 5C is a timing diagram showing a variation of the TDD/TDM/TDMA system of Fig. 5A using an interleaved symbol transmission format.

Figure 5D is a chart comparing performance of the system of Fig. 5A, without forward error correction, and the system of Fig. 5C, with forward error correction.

Figure 6 is a graph of round-trip guard time as a percentage of the actual round trip frame duration in the embodiment of Fig. 5A.

Figure 7 is an illustration of an alternative timing protocol for reducing total round trip guard time.

Figure 8A is a hardware block diagram of a base station in accordance with an embodiment of the invention.

Figure 8B is a hardware block diagram of an alternative embodiment of a base station.

Figure 9 is a hardware block diagram of a user station in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention.

Figure 10A is a diagram of timing sub-elements in accordance with another embodiment of the present invention, and Figures 10B through 10E are diagrams of time frame structures expressed in terms of the timing sub-elements of Fig. 10A.

Figure 11A is a diagram of timing sub-elements in accordance with another embodiment of the present invention, and Figures 11B through 11D are diagrams of time frame structures expressed in terms of the timing sub-elements of Fig. 10A.

Figures 12A-C are tables of a preferred message formats for base station and user station transmissions.

Figures 13A-B are diagrams showing the construction of concatenated preambles, and Figure 13C is a chart comparing preamble performance. Figures 13D-E are graphs comparing preamble performance using matched and mismatched filters.

Figures 14-17 are charts comparing various performance aspects of high tier and low tier air interfaces incorporating selected features of the embodiments described herein.

Figure 18 is a block diagram of a low IF digital correlator.

Figure 19A is a block diagram of a dual-mode base station capable of operating over multiple frequencies and having both spread spectrum and narrowband communication capabilities, and Fig. 19B is a chart showing selected frequencies and other parameters for use in the dual-mode base station of Fig. 19A.

#### Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiments

The present invention provides in one aspect an efficient means for carrying out time division duplex communication, and is well suited for a large cell environment. Embodiments of the invention may take advantage of spread spectrum communication techniques, such as, for example, code division multiple access (CDMA) techniques in which communication signals are encoded using a pseudo-random coding sequence, or may be used in conjunction with frequency division multiple access (FDMA) techniques in which communication signals are multiplexed over different frequencies, or may be used in conjunction with a combination of CDMA, FDMA or other communication techniques.

Figure 3A is a diagram of a cellular environment for a communication system having base stations and user stations.

In Fig. 3A, a communication system 301 for communication among a plurality of user stations 302 includes a plurality of cells 303, each with a base station 304, typically located at the center of the cell 303. Each station (both the base stations 304 and the user stations 302) generally comprises a receiver and a transmitter. The user stations 302 and base stations 304 may communicate using time division duplex or any of the other communication techniques disclosed herein.

Figure 3B is a diagram of a cellular environment in which the invention may operate. As shown in Fig. 3B, a geographical region 309 is divided into a plurality of cells 303. Associated with each cell 303 is an assigned frequency F1, F2 or F3 and an assigned spread spectrum code or code set C1 through C7. In order to minimize interference between adjacent cells 303, in a preferred embodiment three different frequencies F1, F2 and F3 are assigned in such a manner that no two adjacent cells 303 have the same assigned frequency F1, F2 or F3.

To further reduce the possibility of intercell interference, different orthogonal spread spectrum codes or code sets C1 through C7 are assigned as shown in adjacent clusters 310. Although seven spread spectrum codes or code sets C1 through C7, which are convenient to form a 7-cell repeated pattern, are shown in Fig. 3B, the number of spread spectrum codes or code sets may vary depending upon the particular application. Further information regarding a particular cellular communication environment may be found in U.S. Application Serial No. 07/682,050 entitled "Three Cell Wireless Communication System" filed on April 8, 1991 in the name of Robert C. Dixon, and in U.S. Application Serial No. 08/284,053 entitled "PCS Pocket Phone/Microcell Communication Over-Air Protocol" filed on August 1, 1994 in the name of Gary B. Anderson et al., each of which is hereby incorporated by reference as if fully set forth herein.

While the use of spread spectrum for carrier modulation is not a requirement for practicing the invention, its use in the cellular environment of Fig. 3B may permit a very efficient frequency reuse factor of  $N = 3$  for allocating different carrier frequencies  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  and  $F_3$  to adjacent cells 303. Interference between cells 303 using the same carrier frequency  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  or  $F_3$  is reduced by the propagation loss due to the distance separating the cells 303 (no two cells 303 using the same frequency  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  or  $F_3$  are less than two cells 303 in distance away from one another), and also by the spread spectrum processing gain of cells 103 using the same carrier frequencies  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  or  $F_3$ . Additional interference isolation is provided through CDMA code separation. TDD or TDMA communication techniques may also be used in conjunction with the cellular architecture of Fig. 3B.

In a preferred embodiment of the invention using time division duplex, the same frequency  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  or  $F_3$  is used for all user stations 302 in communication with a particular base station 304. Interference between user stations 302 is avoided by requiring that different user stations 302 do not transmit at the same time, or at the same time as the base station 304. The base station 304 is allocated a first portion of a time slot during which the base station 304 transmits to a particular user station, and each user station 302 is allocated a second portion of the time slot during which it responds. Thus, the base station 304 may transmit to a first user station 302, await a response, and, after receiving a response from the first user station 302, transmit to a second user station 302, and so on.

As noted previously with respect to Fig. 1, the mobility of user stations 302 leads to unpredictability in the propagation delay times of transmissions from the base station 304 over air channels to the user stations 302, and from the user stations 302 over air channels back to the base station 304. Thus, the base station 304

generally does not know in advance how long the propagation delay will be for communicating with a particular user station 302. In order to plan for the worst case, conventional TDD systems provide a round-trip guard time in each time slot to ensure that communication will be completed with the first user station 302 before initiating communication with the second user station 302.

Typical round trip guard times are 6.7 microseconds per kilometer of cell radius; thus, for a cell 303 of 3 kilometer radius, a round trip guard time of 20 microseconds is needed. In conventional systems, the round-trip guard time is applied in each time slot 103 regardless of how near or far a user station 302 is from the base station 304. The required round-trip guard time therefore increases timing overhead and inherently limits the number of users in such conventional TDD systems.

As cell size increases, TDD guard time must increase to account for longer propagation times. The relationship between cell radius and guard time can be established as follows:

$$\text{TDD Guard Time} = 2 \times (\text{Cell Radius}) / (\text{Speed of Light})$$

Figure 2 is a graph of round-trip guard time as a percentage of the actual round trip frame duration (i.e., the amount of time actually necessary for a base transmission 105, a propagation delay time 106, and a user transmission 107) for a conventional TDD system such as depicted in Fig. 1. Four microseconds have been added to account for transmit/receive switching delays. The graph of Fig. 2 illustrates that, because TDD guard time is a fixed length, determined by the cell radius, while actual round trip transmission time varies according to the distance of the user station 302, an increasing amount of time is spent on overhead in the form of guard times rather than actual information transfer between user stations 302 and the base station 304 as cell radius increases. The efficiency of conventional TDD systems,



especially those with large cells, therefore suffers as a consequence of round trip guard times.

Figure 5A is an illustration of the basic round trip timing of a TDD/TDM/TDMA system, from a base station perspective, for reducing total round trip guard time in accordance with one or more aspects of the present invention.

In the Fig. 5A embodiment, a time frame 501 is divided into a transmission portion 502, a collective guard time portion 503, and a receiving portion 504. The transmission portion 502 comprises a plurality of transmit time slots 510. The receiving portion 504 comprises a plurality of receive time slots 511.

In the transmission portion 502, the base station 304 transmits to a plurality of user stations 302, one in each of the transmit time slots 510 of the transmission portion 502 of the time frame 501. During the collective guard time portion 503, the base station 304 waits for the last base transmission from the last transmit time slot 510 to be received by the appropriate user station 302, and for the first user transmission to arrive from a user station 302. In the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501, the base station 304 receives user transmissions, one in each receive time slot 511 of the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501.

A particular transmit time slot 510 and its corresponding receive time slot 511 may be thought of as collectively comprising a duplex time slot analogous to time slots 110, 111 and 112 shown in Fig. 1. Although there are eight time slots 510, 511 shown in Fig. 5A, more than eight or fewer than eight time slots 510, 511 can be used as needed for a particular application.

The base station 304 preferably transmits messages to and receives messages from each of the user stations 302 in a duplex fashion once during each time frame 501. In one embodiment of the invention, the user station 302 receiving a base transmission from the first transmit time

slot 510 is the first to send a responsive user transmission in the first receive time slot 511, the user station 302 receiving the base transmission from the second transmit time slot 510 is the second to send a responsive user transmission in the second receive time slot 511, and so on. In this manner, the base station 304 sends a series of consecutive base transmissions, each directed to a separate user station 302, and receives a series of consecutive user transmissions in matching return order.

Although the user stations 302 may respond in the same order as the base transmissions, alternatively the base station may include a command, in a header or otherwise, instructing a particular user station 302 to respond in a different position.

The collective guard time portion 503 of the time frame 501 is essentially a single collective idle time during which the base station 304 awaits a response from the first user station 302. The collective guard time portion 503 is necessary to allow the base transmission in the last transmit time slot 510 to reach the intended user station 302, which could be located at the cell periphery, before the first user station 302 responds. If the first user station 302 were permitted to respond before the expiration of the collective guard time portion 503, then its transmission could interfere with the last base transmission. The collective guard time portion 503 therefore needs to be roughly the same length as the delay 106 shown in the third time slot 112 of Fig. 1, which, as noted, represents the maximum round-trip guard time of the Fig. 1 system. However, unlike the Fig. 1 system, only one maximum round-trip guard time (i.e., the collective guard time portion 503) is needed in the Fig. 5A embodiment.

It should be noted that there are slight delay times, such as with the Fig. 1 system, for the base station 304 and the user stations 302 to switch from a transmit mode

to a receive mode, or from a receive mode to a transmit mode. These delays are roughly 2 microseconds for each switching operation. Unlike the conventional Fig. 1 system, wherein the base station needs to switch modes in each time slot 103, the base station 304 in the Fig. 5A embodiment may need to only switch once from transmit to receive mode and back again in a given time frame 501. Also unlike the Fig. 1 system, in which the base station must wait in each time slot 103 for the user station to switch from receive to transmit mode, only the first user station 302 responding in the time frame 501 of the Fig. 5A embodiment potentially adds a receive/transmit switching delay to the system.

In the Fig. 5A embodiment, the timing structure is preferably organized such that user-to-base messages from the user stations 302 arriving at the base station 304 during the receiving portion 504 do not overlap. If each user station 302 were to begin reverse link transmissions at a fixed offset from the time of forward link data reception according to its time slot number, overlapping messages and resulting interference would occasionally be seen by the base station 304. To prevent such interference of incoming user transmissions, each user station 302 biases its transmission start timing as a function its own two-way propagation time to the base station 304, as further explained below. Reverse link messages thus arrive in the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501 at the base station 304 in sequence and without overlap. In order to allow for timing errors and channel ringing, abbreviated guard bands 512 are provided between each pair of receive time slots 511. These abbreviated guard bands 512 are significantly shorter than the maximum round trip guard time 106 as described with respect to Fig. 1.

To bias its transmission start timing, in a preferred embodiment the base station 304 is provided with means for determining round trip propagation delay to each user

station 302. A round trip timing (RTT) measurement is preferably accomplished as a cooperative effort between the base station 304 and the user station 302 and therefore comprises a communication transaction between the base station 304 and the user station 302. An RTT transaction may be done upon initial establishment of communication between a base station 304 and a user station 302, and periodically thereafter as necessary. The measured round-trip time from the RTT transaction may also be averaged over time.

In an RTT transaction, the base station 304 sends an RTT command message instructing the user station 302 to return a short RTT reply message a predetermined delay period  $\Delta T$  after reception. The predetermined delay period  $\Delta T$  may be sent as part of the RTT command message, or may be pre-programmed as a system parameter. The base station 304 measures the time at which it receives the RTT reply message. The base station 304 then computes the propagation delay to the user station 302 based on the time of sending the RTT command message, the predetermined delay period  $\Delta T$ , and the time of receiving the short RTT reply message.

Once the base station 304 has computed the propagation delay to the user station 302, the base station 304 then sends a bias time message to the user station 302 either informing the user station 302 of the propagation delay measured in the RTT transaction, or providing a specific timing adjustment command. The user station 302 thereafter times its transmissions based on the information contained in the bias time message. Once timing has been established in such a manner, the base station 304 may periodically command the user station 302 to advance or retard its transmission timing to keep reverse link TDMA time slots aligned. The mechanics of adjusting the timing responsive to the timing adjustment commands may be similar to the techniques conventionally employed in the GSM system generally described elsewhere

herein. Timing adjustment command control may be carried out, for example, according to the techniques described in GSM specification TS GSM 05.10, which is incorporated by reference as if set forth fully herein. After a response  
5 from the user station 302 is received at the base station 304, the base station 304 may maintain closed loop control over the timing of the user station 302 by adjusting timing of the user station transmission as often as each time frame 501 if necessary.

10 For precise timing measurements in the RTT transaction, communication between the user station 302 and the base station 304 is preferably carried out using a direct sequence spread spectrum modulation format. Other formats can be used but may result in less accurate  
15 RTT measurements, leading to larger allowances needed in the abbreviated guard bands 512 for timing errors in the user station 302 transmissions.

Figure 5B is a timing diagram showing an example of initial communication link-up between a base station 304  
20 and a user station 302 in accordance with the system of Fig. 5A. To facilitate initial communication between a base station 304 and a user station 302, each base transmission during a transmit time slot 510 may have a brief header 550 preceding a data link message 551  
25 indicating whether or not the particular slot pair 510, 511 is available. If a slot pair 510, 511 is available, a user station 302 desiring to establish communication with the base station 304 responds with a brief reply message 562 in the receive time slot 511 of the slot pair  
30 510, 511. The receive time slot 511 should have a duration of at least a full round-trip guard time, plus the length of a reply message 562, to account for the initial maximum distance uncertainty between the base station 304 and the user station 302 upon initial  
35 communication.

The base station 304 compares the actual time of receiving the reply message 562 with the expected time of

reception, and determines how far away the user station 302 is. In subsequent time frames 501, the base station 304 may command the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing as necessary so that full length information messages may thereafter be sent without interference among user stations 302.

The timing protocol illustrated in Fig. 5B will now be explained in greater detail. A user station 302 desiring to establish communication with a base station 304 listens to the headers 550 transmitted from a base station 304 at the start of each transmit time slot 510. When the user station 302 detects a header 550 containing a status message indicating that the corresponding time slot pair 510, 511 is available or unoccupied, the user station 302 attempts to respond with a reply message. The header 550 may contain bits which define a delay time  $\Delta T$  and indicate to the responding user station 302 a predetermined delay time before it should transmit in reply. The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be measured with respect to a variety of references, but is preferably measured relative to the start of the corresponding receive time slot 511. The user station 302 preferably comprises means (such as timers and/or counters) for keeping track of the relative position and timing of the time slots 510 and 511 in order to respond accurately.

In the example of Fig. 5B, the delay time  $\Delta T$  represents a relative delay time measured from the start of the appropriate receive time slot 511. An exploded view of the receive time slot 511 is shown in Fig. 5B. At the appropriate receive time slot 511, the user station 302 delays for a delay time  $\Delta T$  before sending a reply message 562. The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be used by the user station 302 for error processing or other internal housekeeping tasks. As Fig. 5B is illustrated from the perspective of the base station 304 awaiting receipt of the reply message 562, the base station 304 will perceive a propagation delay 561 from the time the user station 302

transmits the reply message 362 until the time of actual receipt of the reply message 362. By measuring the difference in time between the end of the delay time  $\Delta T$  and the start of the reply message 562, the base station  
5 304 may ascertain the propagation delay 561.

The reply message 562 may therefore serve the function of the RTT reply message described earlier, in that the base station 304 ascertains the proper timing for the user station 302 by measuring the propagation delay  
10 561 in receiving the reply message 562.

Once the propagation delay 561 has been determined, the base station 304 can command the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing by a desired amount. For example, the base station 304 in the exemplary Fig. 5B  
15 system may command the user station 302 to advance its timing by an amount of time equal to the propagation delay time 561, so that the user station 302 transmits essentially at the very end of the abbreviated guard band 512. Thus, when the user station 302 is at the maximum  
20 range, the timing advance command will be set to zero (not including the delay  $\Delta T$ , which is implicit in the user station transmissions). Conversely, when the user station 302 is very close to the base station, the timing advance command will be set close to the full guard time provided  
25 (i.e., the maximum propagation delay time). The timing advance command may be expressed as a number of bits or chips, so that the user station 302 will respond by advancing or retarding its timing by the number of bits or chips specified. Alternatively, the timing advance  
30 command may be expressed as a fractional amount of seconds (e.g., 2 microseconds). As noted, the user station 302 may advance or retard its timing using techniques already developed and conventionally used for the GSM system described earlier, or by any other suitable means.

35 In one embodiment, the delay time  $\Delta T$  is preferably set equal to the receive/transmit switching time of the user station 302. Thus, the delay associated with a user

station 302 switching from a receive mode to a transmit mode is not included in the RTT measurement. The delay time  $\Delta T$  should also be selected short enough so that there will be no overlap between the reply message 562 of a particular user station 302 and the user-to-base transmissions in other receive time slots 511.

If two user stations 302 attempting to establish communication transmit in the same receive time slot 511 using short reply messages 562, the reply messages 562 may or may not overlap depending on how far each user station 302 is positioned from the base station 304. In some situations the simultaneous reply messages 562 will cause jamming. Should the base station 304 receive two reply messages 562 in the same receive time slot 511, the base station 304 may select the user station 302 with the stronger signal for communication.

Alternatively, the base station 304 may initiate a backoff procedure or otherwise resolve the conflict as appropriate for the particular application. For example, the base station 304 may issue a backoff command which causes each user station 302 to back off for a variable period based on an internal programming parameter unique to each user station 302 (e.g., such as a unique user identification number). As another alternative, if the base station 304 can discriminate between the two reply messages 562, then the base station 304 may instruct one or both user stations 302 to relocate to a different slot pair 510, 511.

The system of Figs. 5A-5B thus depicts in one aspect a combined TDD/TDM/TDMA message structure that adjusts reverse link transmission timing so that user-to-base messages transmitted from user stations 302 arrive at the base station 304 sequentially and do not overlap. The base station 304, using a TDM technique, transmits during the transmission portion 502 of a time frame 501 a single, long burst of data comprising a plurality of base-to-user messages, one base-to-user message per transmit time slot



510. After the transmission portion 502, the base station 304 switches to a receive mode. Each user station 302 extracts from the long base station burst the particular data that is intended for it. Reverse link transmissions are not allowed to commence until all user stations 302 have had a chance to receive their forward link data. The user stations 302 then respond, one by one, in allocated receive time slots 511 on the same frequency as used by the base station 304, with only minimal guard times 512 between each reception. In order to prevent interference among the user transmissions, the base station 304 commands the user stations 302 to advance or retard their transmission timing as necessary.

Figure 6 is a graph of total round trip guard time (i.e., the collective guard portion 503 plus abbreviated guard bands 512 and transmit/receive switching delays) as a percentage of frame time for the system of Figs. 5A-5B. Four microseconds has been added to account for transmit/receive switching delays, and it is assumed that reverse link TDMA time slots are separated by 2 microseconds to allow for timing errors. A time frame 501 having a duration of 4 milliseconds is selected for the example of Fig. 6. The graph of Fig. 6 illustrates that relatively modest overhead requirements are possible even with cell diameters approaching 25 miles. The graph of Fig. 6 also shows that, as the number of time slots increases, more total time per time frame 501 is allocated for user station timing errors, but that total overhead is nevertheless held to less than 10% for a 25 mile radius cell.

Figure 7 is an illustration of a TDD/TDM/TDMA timing structure having an alternative initial timing protocol for reducing total round trip guard time. Like Figs. 5A-5B, the TDM aspect of Fig. 7 relates to the base transmissions, while the TDMA aspect relates to the user transmissions.

The Fig. 7 embodiment uses the collective guard portion 503 (as previously shown in Fig. 5A) for initial establishment of communication and RTT measurement. The approach of Fig. 7 contrasts with the approach described with respect to Fig. 5B, wherein each of the receive time slots 511, as noted, are preferably of a duration no less than the maximum round-trip guard time (plus reply message length) due to the initial round trip timing uncertainty. In a Fig. 5B system wherein the time frame 501 comprises many receive time slots 511 of relatively short duration, then, for very large cells, the initial round trip timing uncertainty may cover several receive time slots 511. In such a case, attempts to send a reply message 562 during initial link-up by one user station 302 could interfere with the data link transmissions from other user stations 302, leading to interference or overlapping messages received by the base station 304 during the receive time slots 511.

In order to prevent such a situation, each of the receive time slots in the Fig. 5B system should, as noted, be of a duration no less than the sum of the maximum round-trip guard time plus the duration of a reply message 562. The maximum round trip propagation time therefore places a maximum limit on the number of time slots (and hence users) in the Fig. 5B system.

The Fig. 7 system resolves this same problem by using a designated portion of the time frame 501 for initial establishment of communication. In the system of Fig. 7, in order to prevent the possibility of RTT reply message overlap or interference yet provide the capability of handling more time slots (particularly in larger cells), initial communication link-up (including RTT transactions) are conducted during the idle time of the collective guard portion 503 between the end of transmission portion 502 of the time frame 501 up to and, if necessary, including the first receive time slot 511 of the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501. The collective guard portion 503

is thereby utilized in the Fig. 7 system for conducting RTT measurements and to assist in establishing an initial communication link between the base station 304 and a new user station 302.

5        In the Fig. 7 system, a transmission time slot 510 may comprise a header, similar to the header 550 shown in Fig. 5B. The header may indicate whether a particular time slot pair 510, 511 is free. If a time slot pair 510 is free, a user station 302 desiring to establish  
10 communication responds with a message indicating the desired time slot of communication. If no header is used, the user station 302 responds with a general request for access, and the base station 304 may in the following time frame 501 instruct the user station 302 to use a  
15 particular time slot pair 510, 511 for communication. The general request for access by the user station 302 may comprise a user station identifier, to allow the base station 304 to specifically address the user station 302 requesting access.

20        The header 550 in the Fig. 7 system may include a command indicating a delay time  $\Delta T$  after which a user station 302 desiring to establish communication may respond. Alternatively, such a delay time  $\Delta T$  may be pre-programmed as a system parameter, such that the user  
25 station 302 delays its response until the delay time  $\Delta T$  elapses. After detecting the end of the base transmission 502 and waiting for the delay time  $\Delta T$  to elapse, the user station 302 transmits an RTT reply message 701 or 702.

30        If the user station 302 is very close to the base station 304, then the RTT reply message 701 will appear to the base station 304 immediately after the end of the base transmission 502, and presumably within the collective guard portion 503.

35        If the user station 302 is near the cell periphery, then the RTT reply message 702 will appear to the base station 304 either towards the end of the collective guard portion 503 or within the first receive time slot 511 of

the receiving portion 504 of the time frame 501, depending on the particular system definition and timing. The first receive time slot 511 available for established data link communication is the first receive time slot 511  
5 designated after the maximum round-trip propagation delay (including message length) of a reply message from a user station 302 at the maximum cell periphery. Some guard time allowance may also be added to ensure that reply messages from more distant user stations 302 will not  
10 interfere with the reverse data link transmissions from user stations 302 in established communication.

In an embodiment wherein the headers 550 contain information as to the availability of time slot pairs 510, 511, the RTT reply message 701 or 702 may contain a time  
15 slot identifier indicating which available time slot the user station 302 desires to use for communication. The user station 302 may also determine time slot availability by monitoring the base transmission 502 and/or user transmissions 504 for a period of time, and thus transmit  
20 a RTT reply message 701 or 702 containing a time slot identifier indicating which available time slot pair 510, 511 the user station 302 desires to use for communication. In response, during the first transmit time slot 510 of the transmission portion 502, the base station 304 may  
25 issue a command approving the user station 302 to use the requested time slot pair 510, 511 for communication, instructing the user station 302 to use a different time slot pair 510, 511 for communication, or informing the user station 302 that the base station 304 is busy.

30 If no headers are used, or if the user station 302 does not have specific information as to the availability of time slot pairs 510, 511, the user station 302 may still transmit an RTT reply message 701 or 702 as a general request for access. In response, during the first  
35 transmit time slot 510 of the transmission portion 502, the base station 304 may issue a command instructing the user station 302 to use a specific time slot pair 510, 511

for communication, or informing the user station 302 that the base station 304 is busy. The general request for access by the user station 302 may comprise a user station identifier, to allow the base station 304 to specifically address the user station 302 requesting access.

In one embodiment of the Fig. 7 system, the first receive time slot 511 of the receiving portion 504 is used solely for receiving RTT reply messages 701 or 702 to establish communication, unless all the other time slot pairs 510, 511 are busy, in which case the first receive time slot 511 could be used for data link communication. In the latter case, if another time slot pair 510, 511 becomes available as a result of communication terminating with a different user station 302, the user station 302 occupying the first receive time slot 511 may be transferred to the available receive time slot 511, thus opening up the first receive time slot 511 for access by a new user station 302 seeking to establish communication with the same base station 304.

In the described embodiment, wherein both the collective guard portion 503 and the first receive time slot 511 of the receiving portion 504 are being used to receive RTT reply messages 701 or 702, the combined length of the collective guard time 503 and the first receive time slot 511 should be no less than the sum of the maximum round trip propagation time plus the duration of an RTT reply message 701 or 702.

In a variation of the Fig. 7 embodiment, only the collective guard portion 503 is used for initial communication link-up, and for receiving RTT reply messages 701. The first receive time slot 511 in this embodiment is not used for such a purpose. In this variation, the length of the collective guard portion 503 should be no less than the sum of the maximum round trip propagation time plus the duration of an RTT reply message 701.

After receiving an RTT reply message 701 or 702 at the base station 304, the manner of response of the base station 304 depends on the particular system protocol. As noted, the base station 304 may transmit using headers 550, but need not; the user station 302 may respond with an RTT reply message 701 or 702, with or without a specific time slot request; and the first receive time slot 511 may or may not be used to receive RTT reply messages 701 or 702. The manner of response of the base station 304 therefore depends on the particular structure of the system, and the particular embodiments described herein are not meant to limit the possible base/user station initial communication processes falling within the scope of the invention.

Where the first receive time slot 511 is being used along with the collective guard time 503 to receive RTT reply messages 701, 702, then the base station 304 may respond to an RTT reply message 701 or 702 with an initial communication response message in the first transmit time slot 510 of the transmit portion 502 of the immediately following time frame 501. The base station 304 may utilize a particular transmit time slot 510 (e.g., the first transmit time slot 510) for assisting in the initiation.

If an RTT reply message 701 or 702 identifies a specific time slot pair 510, 511 which the user station 302 desires to use for communication, then the base station 304 may respond to the user station 302 in either the header 550, the data message portion 551, or both, of the designated transmit time slot 510 in the next immediate time frame 510. If two user stations 302 send RTT reply messages 701 or 702 requesting the initiation of communication in the same time slot pair 510, 511, the base station 304 may send a response in the header 550 of the designated transmit time slot 510 selecting one of the two user stations 302 and instructing the other user station 302 to use a different time slot pair 510, 511 or

instruct it to backoff for a period of time, and may in the same time frame 501 transmit a data message in the data message portion 551 of the designated transmit time slot 510 intended for the selected user station 302.

5 If two user stations 302 attempt to access the base station 304 simultaneously (that is, within the same time frame 501), then the base station 304 may select the user station 302 with the stronger signal.

Alternatively, the base station 304 may initiate a  
10 backoff procedure or otherwise resolve the conflict as appropriate for the particular application. For example, the base station 304 may issue a backoff command which causes each user station 302 to back off for a variable period based on an internal programming parameter unique  
15 to each user station 302 (e.g., such as a unique user identification number).

As another alternative, the base station 304 may instruct one or both user stations 302 to relocate to a different slot pair 510, 511. If the reply messages 701,  
20 702 each contain a different time slot identifier (assuming that the user stations 302 had information as to which time slots were open, such as from the base station headers 550), then the base station 304 could initiate communication simultaneously with both user stations 302  
25 provided the reply messages 701, 702 were not corrupted by mutual interference (which may occur, for example, when the different user stations 302 are the same distance away from the base station 504).

As with the Fig. 5B embodiment, in the Fig. 7  
30 embodiment the RTT reply message 701 or 702 may be used by the base station 304 to ascertain the proper timing for the user station 302 by measuring the propagation delay in receiving the reply message 701 or 702. A user station 302 seeking to establish communication delays for a delay  
35 time  $\Delta T$  before sending a reply message 701 or 702 after receiving the base transmission 502. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the user station 302

to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the base transmission 502 to the time of actual receipt of the reply message 701 or 702, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

5        Once the propagation delay time has been determined, the base station 304 can command the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing by a desired amount, relative to the appropriate time slot pair 510, 511 to be used for communication. For example, the base station 304 may  
10        command the user station 302 to advance its timing by an amount of time equal to the round trip propagation time, so that the user station 302 transmits essentially at the very end of the abbreviated guard band 512. The user  
15        station 302 may, for example, advance or retard its timing using techniques developed and conventionally used in the GSM system described earlier, or by any other suitable means.

      The time delay  $\Delta T$  in Fig. 7 is preferably set equal to the larger of the transmit/receive switching time of  
20        the base station 304 and the receive/transmit switching time of the user station 302. This is to ensure that if the responding user station 302 is located extremely close to the base station 304, the delay of the user station 302 in switching from a receive mode to a transmit mode will  
25        not be included in the RTT measurement, and to allow the user station 302 adequate processing time. Once the user station 302 desiring to establish communication has detected the end of the base transmission 502, the user station 302 may commence its reply message 562 immediately  
30        after the delay time  $\Delta T$  without fear of interference, as it is not physically possible for the reply message 562 to overtake the outward-radiating forward link message so as to cause interference with the forward link reception by other user stations 302.

35        Figure 8A is an hardware block diagram of a base station 304 in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. The base station 304 of Fig. 8A comprises a



data interface 805, a timing command unit 806, a transmitter 807, an antenna 808, a receiver 809, a mode control 810, a TDD state control 811, and a propagation delay calculator 812.

5       Timing control for the system of Fig. 8A is carried out by the TDD state control 811. The TDD state control 811 comprises appropriate means, such as counters and clock circuits, for maintaining synchronous operation of the TDD system. The TDD state control 811 thereby  
10       precisely times the duration of the time frame 501 and its constituent parts, including each of the transmit time slots 510, the receive time slots 511, the abbreviated guard bands 512, and the collective guard portion 503.

15       The TDD state control 811 may be synchronized from time to time with a system clock such as may be located in a base station controller, a cluster controller, or an associated network, so as to permit global synchronization among base stations in a zone or cluster.

20       The mode control 810 selects between a transmit mode and a receive mode of operation. The mode control 810 reads information from the TDD state control 811 to determine the appropriate mode. For example, at the end of the transmission portion 502, as indicated by status bits in the TDD state control 811, the mode control 810  
25       may switch modes from transmit mode to receive mode. At the end of the receiving portion 504, as indicated by status bits in the TDD state control 811, the mode control 810 may switch modes from receive mode to transmit mode.

30       During the transmit mode, data to be transmitted is provided to the data interface 805 from a data bus 813. The data interface 805 provides the data to be transmitted to a timing command unit 806. As explained in more detail herein, the timing command unit 806 formats the data to be transmitted to include, if desired, a timing adjustment  
35       command 815. The data output by the timing command unit 806 may be in a format such as the transmission portion

502 shown in Fig. 5A, whereby data targeted for each user station 302 is properly segregated.

The output of the timing command unit 806 is provided to the transmitter 807, which modulates the data for communication and transmits the data targeted for each user station 302 in the proper transmit time slot 510. The transmitter 807 obtains necessary timing information from either the mode control 810, or directly from the TDD state control 811. The transmitter 807 may comprise a spread spectrum modulator such as is known in the art. The data is transmitted by transmitter 807 from antenna 808.

The user stations 302 receive the transmitted data, formulate responsive user-to-base messages, and send the user-to-base messages in return order. A structure of a user station 302, whereby receipt of the transmissions from the base station 304 and formulation of responsive messages is carried out, is shown in Fig. 9 and described further below. The messages from the user stations 302 appear at the base station 304 in the receive time slots 511.

After switching from transmit mode to receive mode, the antenna 808 is used to receive data from the user stations 302. Although a single antenna 808 is shown in the Fig. 8A embodiment, different antennas may be used for transmit and receive functions, and multiple antennas may be used for purposes of achieving the benefits of antenna diversity. The antenna 808 is coupled to a receiver 809. The receiver 809 may comprise a demodulator or a spread spectrum correlator, or both. Demodulated data is provided to the data interface 805 and thereupon to the data bus 813. Demodulated data is also provided to the propagation delay calculator 812, which calculates the propagation delay time for the RTT transaction.

In operation, the timing command unit 806 inserts a timing adjustment command, such as a time period  $T$  (which may or may not include the delay period  $\Delta T$  used in the

initial round trip timing transaction), into the transmit time slot 510 instructing the user station 302 to delay sending its response by an amount of time equal to the time period T. The timing adjustment command may be placed at a designated position in a base-to-user message sent during the appropriate transmit time slot 510. For example, the timing adjustment command may be placed in a header 550 or a data message portion 551 of the transmit time slot 510. At initial communication link-up, the timing adjustment command is preferably set to the receive/transmit switching delay time of a user station 302, and is thereafter adjusted based on a calculated propagation delay time.

The user station 302 receiving the timing adjustment command delays sending its response by an amount of time designated thereby. The responsive message sent by the user station 302 is received by the receiver 809 and provided to the propagation delay calculator 812. The propagation delay calculator 812 obtains precise timing information from the TDD state control 811, so that the propagation delay calculator 812 may accurately determine the over-air propagation delay of the responsive message sent from the user station 302. Specifically, the propagation delay may be calculated as the difference in time between the time of actual receipt of the responsive message from the user station 302, and the amount of time equal to the time T past the beginning of the appropriate receive time slot 511 (plus the delay period  $\Delta T$  if such a delay is programmed into each user response).

In a preferred embodiment, the propagation delay calculator 812 then calculates a new timing adjustment command 815 for the particular user station 302. The new timing adjustment command 815 is preferably selected so that the responsive message from the user station 302 in the following time frame 501 begins at the end of the abbreviated guard band 512 and does not overlap with the responsive message from any other user station 302. For

example, the new timing adjustment command 815 may be equal to the calculated round-trip propagation time for the particular user station 302.

The timing adjustment command 815 may be updated as often as necessary to maintain a sufficient quality of communication between the base station 304 and all of the user stations 302. The propagation delay calculator 812 therefore preferably stores the calculated timing adjustment command 815 for each independent user station 302. As the user station 302 moves closer to the base station 304, the timing adjustment command 815 is increased, while as the user station 302 moves farther away from the base station 304, the timing adjustment command 815 is decreased. Thus, in a dynamic manner, the timing of the user stations 302 is advanced or retarded, and the ongoing communications between the base station 304 and the user stations 302 will not be interrupted by overlapping responsive user-to-base messages received from the user stations 302.

Figure 8B is a hardware block diagram of an alternative embodiment of a base station 304. The Fig. 8B base station is similar to that of Fig. 8A, except that a start counter command and a stop counter command are employed as follows. At the start of a base transmission from the transmitter 807, a start counter command 830 is sent from the transmitter 807 to the TDD state control 811 for the target user station 302. When the receiver 809 receives a response from the target user station 302, the user station sends a stop counter command 831 to the TDD state control 811 for the target user station 302. The value stored in the counter for the particular user station 302 represents the round trip propagation delay time. A separate counter may be employed for each user station 302 with which the base station 304 is in contact.

Figure 9 is a hardware block diagram of a user station 302 in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention. The user station 302 of Fig. 9

comprises a data interface 905, a timing command interpreter 906, a transmitter 907, an antenna 908, a receiver 909, a mode control 910, and a TDD state control 911.

5       Timing control for the system of Fig. 9 is carried out by the TDD state control 911. The TDD state control 911 comprises appropriate means, such as counters and clock circuits, for maintaining synchronous operation of the user station 302 within the TDD system. The TDD state  
10 control 911 thereby precisely times the duration of the time frame 501 and its constituent parts, including each of the transmit time slots 510, the receive time slots 511, the abbreviated guard bands 512, and the collective guard portion 503.

15       The mode control 910 selects between a transmit mode and a receive mode of operation. The mode control 910 reads information from the TDD state control 911 to determine the appropriate mode. For example, the mode control 910, in response to status bits in the TDD state  
20 control 911, may switch modes to a receive mode during the appropriate transmit time slot 510 of the time frame 501. The mode control 910 may switch modes, in response to status bits in the TDD state control 911, to transmit mode during the appropriate receive time slot 511. At other  
25 times, the mode control 910 may maintain a dormant mode, or may be kept in a receive mode in order to monitor transmissions from the base station 304, to monitor the activity of other nearby base stations 304, or for other purposes.

30       During the transmit mode, data to be transmitted is provided to the data interface 905 from a data bus 913. The data interface 905 provides the data to be transmitted to the transmitter 907, which modulates the data for communication and transmits the data in the appropriate  
35 receive time slot 511. The transmitter 907 obtains necessary timing information from either the mode control 910, or directly from the TDD state control 911. The

transmitter 907 may (but need not) comprise a spread spectrum modulator such as is known in the art. The data is transmitted by transmitter 907 from antenna 908.

5 The base station 304 receives the transmitted data, formulates responsive base-to-user messages as desired, and sends the base-to-user messages in the appropriate transmit time slot 510.

10 In receive mode, the antenna 908 is used to receive data from the base station 304. Although a single antenna 908 is shown in the Fig. 9 embodiment, different antennas may be used for transmit and receive functions, or multiple antennas may be used to obtain antenna diversity. The antenna 908 is coupled to a receiver 909. The receiver 909 may comprise a demodulator or a spread  
15 spectrum correlator, or both. Demodulated data is provided to the data interface 905 and thereupon to the data bus 913. Demodulated data is also provided to the timing command interpreter 906, which applies the timing adjustment command received from the base station 304.

20 In operation, the timing command interpreter 906 parses the data received from the base station 304 to determine the timing adjustment command. Assuming the timing adjustment command comprises a time  $T$  equal to the calculated round-trip propagation (RTT) time, the timing  
25 command interpreter 906 may reset the clocks and/or timers in the TDD state control 911 at the appropriate instant (such as around the start of the next time frame 501) so as to achieve global re-alignment of its timing. If the timing adjustment command is an instruction to advance  
30 timing by an amount of time  $T$ , then the timing command interpreter 906 may reset the TDD state control 911 at a period of time  $T$  just prior to the elapsing of the current time frame 501. If the timing adjustment command is an instruction to retard timing by an amount of time  $T$ , then  
35 the timing command interpreter 906 may reset the TDD state control 911 at a period of time  $T$  just after the elapsing of the current time frame 501.

The timing adjustment command may, as noted, be expressed in terms of a number of bits or chips by which the user station 302 should advance or retard its timing. The timing adjustment command may also be expressed in  
5 terms of a fractional timing unit (e.g., milliseconds).

Alternatively, the timing command interpreter 906 may maintain an internal timing adjustment variable, thereby utilizing a delta modulation technique. The internal timing adjustment variable is updated each time a timing  
10 adjustment command is received from the base station 304. If the timing adjustment command is an instruction to advance timing, then the timing adjustment variable is decreased by an amount T. If the timing adjustment command is an instruction to retard timing, then the  
15 timing adjustment variable is increased by an amount T. The timing adjustment variable may be added to the output of the TDD state control 511 in order to synchronize to the base station timing. Alternatively, the timing adjustment variable may be provided directly to the  
20 transmitter 907 and the receiver 909, which alter the timing of their operations accordingly.

The timing command interpreter 906 may comprise a first order tracking circuit which integrates the requested change in transmission timing from time period  
25 to time period, and adjusts the timing of the user station 302 transmission on such a basis.

Figure 5C is a timing diagram, illustrated from a base station perspective, showing a variation of the TDD/TDM/TDMA system of Fig. 5A using an interleaved symbol  
30 transmission format. In Fig. 5C, a time frame 570 is divided into a transmission portion 571, a collective guard time portion 576, and a receiving portion 572, similar to Fig. 5A or Fig. 7. During the transmission portion 571, the base station 304 transmits to a plurality  
35 of user stations 302 during a plurality of transmit time slots 574. In each transmit time slot 574, rather than sending a message directed to a single user station 302,

the base station 304 sends an interleaved message 578 containing a sub-message 589 for each of the user stations 302 (or a sub-message 589 for general polling or other functions if the receive time slot is unoccupied). The user stations 302 therefore receive a portion of their total incoming message from each of the transmit time slots 574, and must listen over the entire transmission portion 571 to obtain their entire message for the time frame 570.

10 In more detail, as shown in Fig. 5C, each transmit time slot 574 comprises a plurality of sub-messages 589, preferably one sub-message 589 for each receive time slot 575 (and therefore one sub-message 589 for each potential user station 302). For example, if there are 16 transmit time slots 574 and 16 receive time slots 575, each transmit time slot 574 would comprises 16 sub-messages 589, denoted in order 589-1, 589-2, ... 589-16. Each sub-message 589 preferably comprises the same number of symbols, e.g. 40 symbols. The first sub-message 589-1 is  
15 intended for the first user station 302, the second sub-message 589-2 is intended for the second user station 302, and so on, up to the last sub-message 589-16. A user station 302 reads part of its incoming message from the appropriate sub-message 589 in the first transmit time slot 574, the next part of its incoming message from the appropriate sub-message 589 of the second transmit time slot, and so on, until the last transmit time slot 574, in which the user station 302 receives the last part of its message.

20 In each transmit time slot 574, preceding the interleaved message 578 is a preamble 577. The preamble 577 assists the user station 302 in synchronization, and may comprise a spread spectrum code. Preambles 577 appear in each transmit time slot 574 and are dispersed  
25 throughout the transmission portion 574, therefore allowing the user station 302 to support channel sounding operations useful for setting up a rake receiver (e.g.,



synchronization) and/or selection diversity. Because the user station 302 obtains its information over the entire transmission portion 571, the communication path is less sensitive to sudden fading or interference affecting only a relatively brief period of the transmission portion 571. Thus, if interference or fading corrupt information in a particular transmit time slot 574 (e.g., the second transmit time slot 574), the user station 302 would still have 15 sub-messages 589 received without being subject to such interference or fading.

By employing forward error correction techniques, the user station 302 can correct for one or more sub-messages 589 received in error. A preferred forward error correction technique utilizes Reed-Solomon codes, which can be generated by algorithms generally known in the art. The number of erroneous sub-messages 589 that can be corrected is given by the equation  $\text{INT}[(R - K)/2]$ , where  $R$  = the number of symbols sent to a user station 302 over a burst period,  $K$  = the number of symbols used for traffic information (i.e., non-error correction), and  $\text{INT}$  represents the function of rounding down to the nearest integer. Thus, for a Reed-Solomon code designated  $R(N, K) = R(40, 31)$ , up to  $\text{INT}[(40 - 31)/2] = 4$  erroneous sub-messages 589 can be corrected.

Although a particular symbol interleaving scheme is shown in Fig. 5C, other symbol interleaving techniques, such as diagonal interleaving, may also be used.

The user stations 302 respond over the reverse link in generally the same manner as described with respect to Figs. 5A or 7. Thus, the user stations 302 respond with a user transmission in a designated receive time slot 575 of the receive portion 572. The receive time slot 575 comprises a preamble 579 and a user message 580. The receive time slots 575 are separated by abbreviated guard times 573, and ranging may be used to instruct the user stations 302 to advance or retard their timing as previously mentioned.

Figure 5D is a chart comparing performance of a particular TDD/TDM/TDMA system in accordance with Fig. 5A, without forward error correction, and a particular system in accordance with Fig. 5C, with forward error correction.

5 Figure 5D plots frame error probability against signal-to-noise ratio ( $E_b/N_o$ ), in dB. In Fig. 5D are shown separate plots for different rake diversity channels  $L$  (i.e., resolvable multipaths) of 1, 2 and 4. The solid plot lines in Fig. 5D represent the performance of the Fig. 5A

10 system without forward error correction, while the dotted plot lines represent the performance of the Fig. 5C system with Reed-Solomon forward error correction. Figure 5D thus illustrates a substantial reduction in frame error probability over the Fig. 5A system by use of interleaved

15 symbol transmission and forward error correction.

Another embodiment of a time frame structure and associated timing components for carrying out communication between a base station and multiple user stations is shown in Figs. 10A-E. Figure 10A is a diagram

20 of timing sub-elements having predefined formats for use in a time division duplex system. The three timing sub-elements shown in Fig. 10A may be used to construct a time division duplex frame structure, such as the frame structures shown in Figs. 10B-E. Although systems

25 constructed in accordance with Figs. 10A-E preferably use spread spectrum for communication, spread spectrum is not required. However, the following description assumes the use of spread spectrum techniques. For the present example, a chipping rate of 5 MHz is preferred.

30 In Fig. 10A are shown a base timing sub-element 1001, a user datalink timing sub-element 1011, and a range timing sub-element 1021. For each of these sub-elements 1001, 1011, and 1021, as explained more fully below, timing is shown from the perspective of the base station

35 304 with the initial range of the user station 302 at zero for range timing sub-element 1021.

The base timing sub-element 1001 comprises a base preamble interval 1002, a base message interval 1003, and a transmit/receive switch interval 1004. The base preamble interval 1002 may be 56 chips in length. The  
5 base message interval 1003 may be 205 bits in length (or, equivalently, 1312 chips if using 32-ary encoding). In a preferred 32-ary encoding technique, each sequence of five data bits is represented by a unique spread spectrum code of 32 chips in length. The number of spread spectrum  
10 codes used is 32, each the same number of chips long (e.g., 32 chips), to represent all possible combinations of five data bits. From the set of 32 spread spectrum codes, individual spread spectrum codes are selectively combined in series to form a transmission in the base  
15 message interval 1003. The base message interval 1003 comprises a total of up to 41 5-bit data sequences, for a total of 205 bits; thus, a transmission in the base message interval 1003 may comprise a series of up to 41 spread spectrum codes, each selected from the set of 32  
20 spread spectrum codes, for a total of 1312 chips.

Although the present preferred system of Figs 10A-E is described using a 32-ary spread spectrum coding technique, other spread spectrum techniques, including other M-ary encoding schemes (such as 4-ary, 16-ary, etc.)  
25 may also be used, depending on the particular system needs.

The transmit/receive switch interval 1004 is preferably selected as a length of time sufficient to enable the switching of the base station 304 from a  
30 transmit mode to a receive mode or, in some embodiments, to enable the switching of a user station 302 from a receive mode to a transmit mode, and may be, for example, two microseconds in length.

The user datalink timing sub-element 1011 and the  
35 range timing sub-element 1021 each generally provide for transmissions by more than one user station 302. As explained further below, each of these timing sub-elements

1011, 1021 provides for transmission by a first user station 302 of a data message or a ranging message in the first part of the timing sub-element 1011 or 1021, and transmission by a second user station 302 of a control pulse preamble in the latter part of the timing sub-element 1011 or 1021. The control pulse preamble, as further described below, generally allows the base station 304 to carry out certain functions (e.g., power control) with respect to the second user station 302.

10 The user datalink timing sub-element 1011 comprises a datalink preamble interval 1012, a user message interval 1013, a guard band 1014, a transmit/receive switch interval 1015, a second preamble interval 1016, an antenna adjustment interval 1017, a second guard band 1018, and a  
15 second transmit/receive switch interval 1019. The preamble intervals 1012, 1016 may each be 56 chips in length. The user message interval 1013 may be 205 bits in length, or 1312 chips, using the 32-ary spread spectrum coding technique described above with respect to the base  
20 timing sub-element 1001. The guard bands 1014, 1018 may each be 102.5 chips in length. The transmit/receive switch intervals 1015, 1019 may each be of a duration sufficient to allow proper switching between transmit and receive modes, or between receive and transmit modes, as  
25 the case may be. The antenna adjustment interval 1017 may be of sufficient duration to allow transmission of a data symbol indicating selection of a particular antenna beam or permitting minor adjustments to the angle of a directional antenna at the base station 302, or permitting  
30 selection of one or more antennas if the base station 302 is so equipped.

The range timing sub-element 1021 comprises a ranging preamble interval 1022, a user ranging message interval 1023, a ranging guard band 1024, a transmit/receive switch  
35 interval 1025, a second preamble interval 1026, an antenna adjustment interval 1027, a second guard band 1028, and a second transmit/receive switch interval 1029. The

preamble intervals 1022, 1026 may each be 56 chips in length. The user ranging message interval 1023 may be 150 bits in length, or 960 chips, using the 32-ary spread spectrum coding technique described above with respect to  
5 the base timing sub-element 1001. The ranging guard band 1024 may be 454.5 chips in length. The other guard band 1028 may be 102.5 chips in length. The transmit/receive switch intervals 1025, 1029 may each be of a duration sufficient to allow proper switching between transmit and  
10 receive modes, or between receive and transmit modes, as the case may be. The antenna adjustment interval 1027 may be of sufficient duration to allow transmission of a data symbol for selecting a particular antenna beam or permitting minor adjustments to the angle of a directional  
15 antenna at the base station 302, or permitting selection of one or more antennas if the base station 302 is so equipped.

The total length of the base timing sub-element 1001 may be 1400 chips. The total length of each of the user  
20 datalink timing sub-element 1011 and the range timing sub-element 1021 may be 1725 chips. For these particular exemplary values, a chipping rate of 5 MHz is assumed.

Figure 10B is a timing diagram for a fixed time division duplex frame structure (or alternatively, a zero  
25 offset TDD frame structure) using the timing sub-elements depicted in Fig. 10A. The frame structure of Fig. 10B, as well as of Figs. 10C-E described below, is shown from the perspective of the base station 304.

In Fig. 10B, a time frame 1040 comprises a plurality  
30 of time slots 1041. For convenience, time slots are also designated in sequential order as TS1, TS2, TS3, etc. Each time slot 1041 comprises a base timing sub-element 1001 and either a user datalink timing sub-element 1011 or a range timing sub-element 1021. While the frame  
35 structure of Fig. 10B supports range timing sub-elements 1021, it is contemplated that communication in the Fig. 10B system, which may be denoted a fixed framing

structure, will ordinarily occur using user datalink timing sub-elements 1011.

It may be noted that the designated starting point of the time slots TS1, TS2, TS3, etc. is to some degree arbitrary in the Fig. 10B frame structure and various of the other embodiments as are described further herein. Accordingly, the frame structure may be defined such that time slots each start at the beginning of the user timing sub-elements 1011 or 1021, or at the start of the preamble interval 1016, or at the start or end of any particular timing interval, without changing the operation of the system in a material way.

In operation, the base station 304 transmits, as part of the base timing sub-element 1001 of each time slot 1041, to user stations 302 in sequence with which it has established communication. Thus, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the preamble interval 1002 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003. In the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, the base station 304 switches from a transmit mode to a receive mode. Likewise, the user station 302 during the transmit/receive switch interval 1004 switches from a receive mode to a transmit mode.

In the first time slot TS1, the base-to-user message transmitted in the base message interval 1003 is directed to a first user station M1, which may be mobile. After the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, the first user station M1 responds with a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1012 and with a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1013. Proper timing is preferably set upon initial establishment of communication, and the transmissions from the user stations, such as the first user station M1, may be maintained in time alignment as seen at the base station 304 by timing adjustment commands from the base station 304, such as the timing adjustment commands described with respect to Figs. 8-9 and elsewhere herein. However, a

round-trip guard time must be included in each time slot 1041 so as to allow the base-to-user message to propagate to the user station 302 and the user-to-base message to propagate to the base station 304. The depiction of the exploded time slot TS1 in Fig. 10B is generally shown with the assumption that the user station M1 is at zero distance from the base station 304; hence, the user-to-base messages appear in Fig. 10B directly after the transmit/receive switch interval 1004 of the base timing sub-element 1001. However, if the user station M1 is not immediately adjacent to the base station 304, then part of guard time 1014 will be consumed in the propagation of the user-to-base message to the base station 304. Thus, if the user station M1 is at the cell periphery, then the user-to-base message will appear at the base station 304 after the elapsing of a time period equal at most to the duration of guard time 1014. Timing adjustment commands from the base station 304 may allow a shorter maximum necessary guard time 1014 than would otherwise be possible.

After the transmission of the user-to-base message from the first user station M1, which may, as perceived by the base station 304, consume up to all of the user message interval 1013 and the guard band 1014, is another transmit/receive switch interval 1015. Following the transmit/receive switch interval 1015, a control pulse preamble is received from a second user station M2 during the preamble interval 1016. The function of the control pulse preamble is explained in more detail below. Following the preamble interval 1016 is an antenna adjustment interval 1017, during which the base station 304 adjusts its transmission antenna, if necessary, so as to direct it towards the second user station M2. Following the antenna adjustment interval 1017 is another guard band 1018, which accounts for the propagation time of the control pulse preamble to the base station 304. After the preamble interval is another transmit/receive

switching interval 1019 to allow the base station 304 opportunity to switch from a receive mode to a transmit mode, and to allow the second user station M2 opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

5       The control pulse preamble received during the preamble interval 1016 preferably serves a number of functions. The control pulse preamble may be used by the base station 304 to determine information about the communication link with the user station 302. Thus, the  
10       control pulse preamble may provide the base station 304 with a power measurement indicative of the path transmission loss and link quality over the air channel. The base station 304 may determine the quality of the received signal, including the received power and the  
15       signal-to-noise ratio. The base station 304 may also determine, in response to the power, envelope, or phase of the control pulse preamble, the direction or distance of the user station 302, and the degree of noise or multipath error to which the communication link with the user  
20       station 302 may be prone.

      In response to receiving the control pulse preamble in the preamble interval 1016 and determining the quality of the received signal and other operating parameters, the base station 304 may if necessary send a message  
25       commanding the user station 302 to adjust its power. Based on the quality of the received signal, the base station 304 may command the user station 302 to change (i.e., increase or decrease) its transmit power by a discrete amount (e.g., in minimum steps of 3 dB) relative  
30       to its current setting, until the quality of the control pulse preamble as periodically received by the base station 304 in the preamble interval 1016 is above an acceptable threshold.

      After the base station 304 determines the power  
35       setting of the user station 302, the base station 304 may adjust its own power as well. The base station 304 may adjust its power separately for each time slot 1041.



A preferred power control command from the base station 304 to the user station 302 may be encoded according to the Table 10-1 below:

Table 10-1

	<u>Power Control Command</u>	<u>Adjustment</u>
	000	No change
	001	-3 dB
	010	-6 dB
10	011	-9 dB
	100	+3 dB
	101	+6 dB
	110	+12 dB
	111	+21 dB

15 Although preferred values are provided in Table 10-1, the number of power control command steps and the differential therebetween may vary depending upon the particular application and the system requirements. Further details  
20 regarding the use of a control pulse preamble (i.e., control pulse) as a power control mechanism, and other related details, may be found in copending Application Serial Nos. 08/215,306 and 08/293,671, filed March 21, 1994 and August 1, 1994, respectively, both in the name of  
25 inventors Gary B. Anderson, Ryan N. Jensen, Bryan K. Petch, and Peter O. Peterson, both entitled "PCS Pocket Phone/Microcell Communication Over-Air Protocol," and both of which are hereby incorporated by reference as if fully set forth herein.

Returning to Fig. 10B, in the following time slot TS2 after time slot TS1, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the base preamble interval 1002 and transmits a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003, both directed to the second user station M2. The base station 304 thereby rapidly responds to the control pulse preamble sent by the user station M2. As with the first time slot TS1, following the base message

interval 1003 is a transmit/receive switch interval 1004 during which the base station 304 switches to a receive mode and the user station M2 switches to a transmit mode. The user station M2 then responds with a preamble in the  
5 datalink preamble interval 1012 and a user-to-base message in the user message interval 1013. The remaining steps in time slot TS2 are similar to those of the first time slot TS1, except with respect to the preamble interval 1016 as noted below.

10 It is assumed in the exemplary time frame 1040 of Fig. 10B that there is no established communication link in the third time slot TS3, and therefore the third time slot TS3 is free for communication. Because no user station 302 is in established communication during time  
15 slot TS3, no control pulse preamble is transmitted during the preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2. The base station 304 may indicate that a particular time slot 1041, such as time slot TS3, is available for communication by, for example, transmitting a general  
20 polling message during the base message interval 1003 of the time slot TS3.

Should a third user station M3 desire to establish communication with the base station 304, then, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling  
25 message during the base message interval 1003 of the third time slot TS3, the third user station M3 sends a general polling response message in a user message interval 1013 of the time slot TS3. When the third user station M3 responds with the general polling response message, the  
30 base station 304 may determine the range of the user station M3 and thereby determine a required timing adjustment for subsequent transmissions by the user station M3.

For efficiency reasons, the guard times 1014 and 1018  
35 are preferably kept to a minimum. The smaller the guard times 1014, 1018, the more user stations 302 may be supported by the frame structure of Fig. 10B. Typically,

therefore, the guard times 1014, 1018 will not be of sufficient duration to allow a full ranging transaction to occur. In particular, a ranging transaction (such as may be carried out using timing sub-element 1021 instead of timing sub-element 1011) may result in interference between the transmission of a user station 302 seeking to establish communication and the control pulse preamble of the user station 302 already in communication in the immediately following time slot 1041 with the base station 304. If the guard times are lengthened to permit ranging transactions, then fewer user stations 302 can be supported, particularly in a large cell environment. An alternative structure having improved efficiency in a large cell environment, along with the flexibility of ranging transactions, is shown in Figs. 10D and 10E and explained in more detail below.

It may be possible to minimize potential interference between ranging messages and control pulse preambles by using a particular designated spread spectrum code for only ranging messages, or for only control pulse preambles. However, code division multiplexing in such a manner may not provide satisfactory isolation between the interfering signals.

If a ranging transaction is supported in the Fig. 10B environment, then the latter portion of the time slot TS3 may comprise a range timing sub-element 1021, as described previously with respect to Fig. 10A, during which a ranging transaction is carried out between the base station 304 and user station M3, instead of timing sub-element 1011. In such a case, the user station M3 transmits a preamble during a ranging preamble interval 1022 of time slot TS3, and transmits a ranging message during the user ranging message interval 1023 of time slot TS3. The user station M3 delays transmitting the preamble and ranging message for an amount of time  $\Delta T$ . The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be communicated by the base station 304 as part of the general polling message, or may be a pre-

programmed system parameter. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the user station M3 to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the base message interval 1003 (i.e., the earliest possible receipt of the preamble and ranging message) to the time of actual receipt of the responsive preamble and ranging message from the user station M3, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

10 The ranging guard band 1024 in time slot TS3 is preferably of sufficient length to allow the ranging transaction between the base station 304 and the user station M3 to occur. Thus, the length of the ranging guard band 1024 is determined in part by the radius of the  
15 cell 303 in which the base station 304 is located, or may be determined in part by the maximum cell radius of the cellular system.

In response to receiving the ranging message from the user station M3 and determining the distance of the user station 302 and/or the propagation delay time thereto, the  
20 base station 304 may issue a timing adjustment command to the user station M3 in the next time frame 1040 instructing the user station M3 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount. For the time frame 1040  
25 immediately after communication with the user station M3 is established, the timing adjustment command may be set equal to the round-trip propagation time as determined by the base station 304 during the ranging transaction. Preferably, the timing adjustment command is selected so  
30 as to cause the user transmission from the user station M3 to the base station 304 in the subsequent time frame 1040 to be received by the base station 304 immediately after the end of the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, as described with respect to Fig. 10A.

35 In addition to its use for ranging purposes, the ranging message may also contain other information to assist the base station 304 in handshaking with the user

station M3. For example, the ranging message may contain as data a user identifier for the user station M3 seeking to establish communication. The ranging message may also indicate a preferred spread spectrum code to be used by the base station 304 and the particular user station M3 in subsequent communications.

The base station 304 may determine the range of the user station 302 by using the reception time of the control pulse preamble (or, alternatively, the user-to-base message) and periodically issue a timing adjustment command during the base-to-user message interval directed to the user station 302.

Figure 10C shows a subsequent time frame 1040 after communication has been established between the base station 304 and the third user station M3, with or without the use of a ranging transaction. In Fig. 10C, the transactions occurring in the first time slot TS1 between the user station M1 and the base station 304 are the same as those for Fig. 10B. Also, the transactions occurring in the second time slot TS2 between the user station M2 and the base station 304 are the same as those for Fig. 10B. However, during the second time slot TS2, instead of there being no transmitted control pulse preamble in the preamble interval 1016, the third user station M3 transmits a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2. Alternatively, the user station M3 may wait until the base station 304 acknowledges its ranging message, sent in the prior time frame 1040, before transmitting a control pulse preamble in each time slot TS2 preceding its designated time slot TS3 for communication.

The base station 304 may use the control pulse preamble for a variety of purposes, including power control and other purposes, as previously described. In the third time slot TS3 of Fig. 10C, the base station 304 may send an acknowledgment signal to the user station M3 during the base message interval 1003. The acknowledgment

signal may be sent using a spread spectrum code determined by a user identifier sent by the user station M3 as part of the ranging message. As part of the acknowledgment signal, or in addition thereto, the base station 304 sends  
5 a timing adjustment command instructing the user station M3 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount.

In the following time frames 1040, after establishing communication with the third user station M3 in the manner described above, communication may be carried out between  
10 the base station 304 and the third user station M3 in time slot TS3. In each preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2, the user station M3 transmits a control pulse preamble allowing the base station 304 to exercise power control, synchronize to the user station M3, or  
15 determine the distance of the user station M3. The base station 304 then sends a transmission directed to the user station M3 in the first portion of the third time slot TS3, and the user station M3 responds with a transmission directed to the base station 304 in the latter portion of  
20 the third time slot TS3. As part of each transmission from the base station 304, the base station 304 may update the timing adjustment command to the user station M3.

Should a user station 302 terminate communication in a time slot 1041 or be handed off to a new base station  
25 304, then the base station 304 may begin to transmit a general polling message during the newly opened time slot 1041, indicating that the time slot 1041 is free for communication. New user stations 302 may thereby establish communication with the same base station 304.

30 Figure 10D is a timing diagram for another embodiment of a frame structure in accordance with certain aspects of the present invention. Figure 10D shows an interleaved time division duplex frame structure using the timing sub-elements depicted in Fig. 10A. A time frame 1050  
35 comprises a plurality of time slots 1051. For convenience, time slots 1051 are designated in sequential order as TS1', TS2', TS3', etc. Each time slot 1051

comprises a base timing sub-element 1001 and either a user datalink timing sub-element 1011 or a user ranging sub-element 1021, as described in more detail below.

The primary difference between the frame structure of Figs. 10B-C and the frame structure of Fig. 10D is that the frame structure of Fig. 10D may be considered interleaved in the sense that each user station 302 does not respond immediately to the communication from the base station 304 intended for it, but rather delays its response until a subsequent time slot 1051. The effect of the interleaved frame structure of Fig. 10D is that guard times can be shorter, allowing more time slots 1051 per time frame 1050, and therefore more user stations 302 per base station 304. The interleaved frame structure of Fig. 10D also allows efficient use of ranging transactions between the base station and the user stations, particularly upon initial link-up of communication. Because the frame structure of Fig. 10D is interleaved, the first time slot TS1' comprises a transmission from the base station 304 to the first user station M1 and a responsive transmission, not from the first user station M1, but from the last user station MN.

In operation of the Fig. 10D system, the base station 304 transmits, as part of the base timing sub-element 1001 of each time slot 1051, to user stations 302 with which it has established communication. The base station 304 thus transmits a preamble during the preamble interval 1002 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003. In the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, the base station 304 switches from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

In the first time slot TS1', the base-to-user message transmitted in the base message interval 1003 is directed to a first user station M1, which may be mobile. After the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, the last user station MN to have been sent a message from the base station in the last time slot TSN' of the prior time frame

1050 transmits a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1012 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1013. The frame structure of Fig. 10D, as noted previously, is shown from a perspective of the base station 304, and the transmissions from the user stations, such as user station MN, are maintained in time alignment as seen by the base station 304 by timing adjustment commands from the base station 304, similar to the timing adjustment commands described elsewhere herein. Proper timing is preferably set upon initial establishment of communication, by use of a ranging transaction.

After the transmission of the user-to-base message from the first user station M1, which may, as perceived by the base station 304, consume up to all of the user message interval 1013 and the guard band 1014, is another transmit/receive switch interval 1015. Following is another transmit/receive switch interval 1015 to allow appropriate switching of modes. Following the transmit/receive switch interval 1015, a control pulse preamble is received from a second user station M2 during the preamble interval 1016. The control pulse preamble sent during the preamble interval 1016 may serve functions such as those described with respect to the Fig. 10B-C embodiments. Thus, the base station 304 may determine, in response to the power, envelope, or phase of the control pulse preamble, the direction or distance of the user station M2, and/or the degree of noise or multipath error to which the communication link with the user station M2 may be prone. The base station 304 may command the user station M2 to adjust its power based on the quality and strength of the received control pulse preamble.

After the preamble interval 1016 is an antenna adjustment interval 1017 during which the base station 304 has opportunity to adjust its transmission antenna, if necessary, to direct it towards the second user station M2. Following the preamble interval 1016 is an antenna adjustment interval 1017, during which the base station



304 adjusts its transmission antenna, if necessary, so as to direct it towards the second user station M2. Following the antenna adjustment interval 1017 is another guard band 1018, which accounts for the propagation time of the control pulse preamble to the base station 304. After the preamble interval is another transmit/receive switching interval 1019 to allow the base station 304 opportunity to switch from a receive mode to a transmit mode, and to allow the second user station M2 opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

In the following time slot TS2 after time slot TS1, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the base preamble interval 1002 and transmits a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003, both directed to the second user station M2. The base station 304 thereby rapidly responds to the control pulse sent by the user station M2. As with the first time slot TS1', following the base message interval 1003 occurs a transmit/receive switch interval 1004 during which the base station 304 switches to a receive mode. Unlike the Fig. 10B-C embodiment, in which the latter portion of the time slot TS2' is used for receiving a transmission from the second user station M2, in the Fig. 10D embodiment the latter portion of the time slot TS2' is used for receiving a transmission from the first user station M1. While the first user station M1 is in the process of transmitting, the second user station M2 thus has the opportunity to process the data received from the base station 304 during the same time slot TS2', and to transmit a responsive transmission timed to arrive at the base station 304 in the following time slot TS3' without interfering with other transmissions from either the base station 304 or other user stations 302.

Thus, in the second time slot TS2', the base station receives from the first user station M1 a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1012 and a user-to-base message in the user message interval 1013.

It is assumed in the exemplary time frame 1050 shown of Fig. 10D that there is no established communication link in the duplex channel comprising the base portion of the third time slot TS3' and the user portion of the fourth time slot TS4', and therefore that particular duplex channel is free for communication. Because no user station 302 is in established communication during the duplex channel, no control pulse preamble is transmitted during the preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2'. The base station 304 may indicate that a particular duplex channel is available for communication by, for example, transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1003 of the duplex channel, such as during the base message interval 1003 of time slot TS3'.

Should a new user station M3 desire to establish communication with the base station 304, then the new user station M3 waits until an open user portion of a time slot 1051, such as the fourth time slot TS4' in the present example, to take action. Thus, ordinary communication is carried out between the base station 304 and the second user station M2 in the latter portion of the third time slot TS3' in a manner similar to that of the first user station M1. Moreover, because another user station M4 is in established communication with the base station 304, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1016 of the third time slot TS3' from the next user station M4. In the subsequent time slot TS4', the base station 304 sends a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1003 to the user station M4. The user station M4 responds with a user-to-base message in the following time slot TS5'.

In the meantime, during the fourth time slot TS4', the new user station M3 attempts to establish communication with the base station 304. Thus, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1003 of the third time slot TS3', the new user station M3 sends a

general polling response message in a user message interval 1013 of the following time slot TS4'. When the new user station M3 responds with the general polling response message, the base station 304 may determine the range of the user station M3 and thereby determine a required timing adjustment for subsequent transmissions by the user station M3.

The latter portion of the time slot TS4' preferably comprises a range timing sub-element 1021 as previously described with respect to Fig. 10A. Thus, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling message in the base message interval 1003 of the third time slot TS3', the new user station M3 sends a ranging message in a user ranging message interval 1023 of the following time slot TS4'. The depiction of the exploded time slot TS4' in frame structure in Fig. 10D assumes that the user station M3 is at zero distance from the base station 304; hence, the user-to-base messages appear in Fig. 10D directly after the transmit/receive switch interval 1004 of the base timing sub-element 1001. However, if the user station M3 is not immediately adjacent to the base station 304, then part of guard time 1014 will be consumed in the propagation of the user-to-base message to the base station 304. Thus, if the user station M3 is at the cell periphery, then the user-to-base message will appear at the base station 304 after the elapsing of a time period equal at most to the duration of guard time 1014. Timing adjustment commands from the base station 304 may allow a shorter maximum necessary guard time 1014 than would otherwise be possible.

When the base station 304 receives the response from the new user station M3, the base station 304 may determine the range of the user station M3 and thereby determine a required timing advance for subsequent transmissions by the user station M3.

In more detail, a ranging transaction is carried out between the base station 304 and the user station M3,

whereby the user station M3 transmits a preamble during a ranging preamble interval 1022 of time slot TS4' and a ranging message during the user ranging message interval 1023 of time slot TS4'. The user station M3 delays  
5 transmitting the preamble and ranging message for an amount of time  $\Delta T$ . The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be communicated by the base station 304 as part of the general polling message, or may be a pre-programmed system parameter. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the  
10 user station M3 to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the base message interval 1003 in the fourth time slot TS4' (i.e., the earliest possible receipt of the preamble and ranging message) to the time of actual receipt of the responsive  
15 preamble and ranging message from the user station M3, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

The ranging guard band 1024 in time slot TS4' is preferably of sufficient length to allow the ranging transaction between the base station 304 and the user  
20 station M3 to occur. Thus, the length of the ranging guard band 1024 is determined in part by the radius of the cell 303 in which the base station 304 is located, or may be determined in part by the maximum cell radius of the cellular system.

25 In response to receiving the ranging message from the user station M3 and determining the distance of the user station 302 and/or the propagation delay time thereto, the base station 304 may issue a timing adjustment command to the user station M3 in the next time frame 1050  
30 instructing the user station M3 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount. For the time frame 1050 immediately after communication with the user station M3 is established, the timing adjustment command may be set equal to the round-trip propagation time as determined by  
35 the base station 304 during the ranging transaction. Preferably, the timing adjustment command is selected so as to cause the user transmission from the user station M3

to the base station 304 in the subsequent time frame 1050 to be received by the base station 304 immediately after the end of the transmit/receive switch interval 1004, as described with respect to Fig. 10A, giving the base station 304 an opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode, but not interfering with the base-to-user message sent in the base message interval 1003.

The base station 304 may periodically instruct a user station 302 to adjust its timing by issuing subsequent timing adjustment commands, e.g., as often as each time frame. The base station 304 may monitor the distance of the user station 302 by measuring the time of receipt of the user-to-base message. Preferably, however, the base station 304 monitors the range of the user station 302 by using the reception time of the control pulse preamble, because of the preamble's known timing and message structure, and responds during the base-to-user message interval with a timing adjustment command.

In addition to being used for ranging purposes, the ranging message may also contain other information to assist the base station 304 in handshaking with the user station M3. For example, the ranging message may contain as data a user identifier for the user station M3 seeking to establish communication. The ranging message may also indicate a preferred spread spectrum code to be used by the base station 304 and the particular user station M3 in subsequent communications.

Figure 10E shows a subsequent time frame 1050 after a ranging transaction has been completed with the third user station M3. In Fig. 10E, the transactions between the user stations M1, MN and the base station 304 occurring in the first time slot TS1' are the same as for Fig. 10D. Also, the transactions between the user stations M1, M2 and the base station 304 occurring in the second time slot TS2 are the same as for Fig. 10D. However, during the second time slot TS2', instead of there being no transmitted control pulse preamble in the

preamble interval 1016, the third user station M3 may transmit a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2'. Alternatively, the user station M3 may wait until the base station 304 acknowledges its ranging message sent in the prior time frame 1050 before transmitting a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1016 of each preceding time slot TS2'.

The base station 304 may use the control pulse preamble for a variety of purposes, including power control and other purposes, as previously described. In the third time slot TS3' of Fig. 10E, the base station 304 may respond by sending an acknowledgment signal to the user station M3 during the base message interval 1003. The acknowledgment signal may be sent using a spread spectrum code determined by a user identifier sent by the user station M3 as part of the ranging message. As part of the acknowledgment signal, or in addition thereto, the base station 304 preferably sends a timing adjustment command instructing the user station M3 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount.

In following time frames 1050, communication may be carried out between the base station 304 and the user station M3 in an interleaved fashion in time slots TS3' and TS4' (in addition to the receipt of the control pulse preamble in the second time slot TS2' each time frame 1050). In each preamble interval 1016 of the second time slot TS2', the user station M3 transmits a control pulse preamble allowing the base station 304 to take certain actions -- for example, to exercise power control, synchronize to the user station M3, or determine the distance of the user station M3. The base station 304 then sends a communication directed to the user station M3 in the first portion of the third time slot TS3', and the user station M3 responds with a communication directed to the base station 304 in the latter portion of the following time slot TS4'. During each communication from

the base station 304, the base station 304 may update the timing adjustment command to the user station M3.

Should a user station 302 terminate communication in a time slot 1051 or be handed off to a new base station 304, then the base station 304 may begin to transmit a general polling message during the newly opened time slot 1051, indicating that the time slot 1051 is free for communication. New user stations 302 may thereby establish communication with the same base station 304.

In another embodiment of the present invention, described with respect to Figs. 11A-D, two frequency bands are used for communication instead of a single frequency band.

Figure 11A is a diagram of timing sub-elements having predefined formats for use in an FDD/TDMA system. The three timing sub-elements shown in Fig. 11A may be used to construct an FDD/TDMA frame structure, such as the frame structures shown in Figs. 11B-D. Although systems constructed in accordance with Figs. 11A-D preferably use spread spectrum for communication, spread spectrum is not required. The following description, however, assumes the use of spread spectrum techniques. For the present example, unless otherwise specified, a chipping rate of 2.8 MHz is preferred, although the chipping rate selected depends upon the application.

In Fig. 11A are shown a base timing sub-element 1101, a user datalink timing sub-element 1110, and a range timing sub-element 1121. For each of these sub-elements 1101, 1110, and 1121, as explained more fully below, timing is shown from the perspective of the base station 304 with the range of the user station 302 at zero.

The base timing sub-element 1101 comprises a base preamble interval 1102, a base message interval 1103, three more preamble burst intervals 1104, 1105, and 1106 (collectively referred to as a 123-preamble burst interval 1109), a base fill code interval 1107, and a transmit/receive switch interval 1108. The base preamble

interval 1102 may be 56 chips in length. The base message interval 1103 may be 205 bits in length, or 1312 chips using 32-ary coding, as described previously herein with respect to Figs. 10A-E. The base message interval 1103  
5 comprises a total of up to 41 5-bit data sequences, for a total of 205 bits; thus, a transmission in the base message interval 1103 may comprise a series of up to 41 spread spectrum codes, each selected from the set of 32 spread spectrum codes, for a total of 1312 chips.

10 Although the present preferred system of Figs 11A-E is described using 32-ary spread spectrum coding techniques, other spread spectrum techniques, including other M-ary coding schemes (such as 4-ary, 16-ary, etc.) may also be used, depending on the particular system  
15 requirements.

The three preamble burst intervals 1104, 1105, and 1106 are each preferably 56 chips in length; thus, the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 is preferably 168 chips in length. The transmit/receive switch interval 1108 is  
20 preferably selected as a length of time sufficient to enable the switching of the base station 304 from a transmit mode to a receive mode and may be, for example, 32 chips or 11.43 microseconds in length. The transmit/receive switch interval 1108 and the base fill  
25 code interval 1107 collectively comprise, in a preferred embodiment, a length of 189 chips.

Thus, the total length of the base timing sub-element 1101 is preferably 1750 chips (for the assumed 2.8 MHz chipping rate), which matches the length of the user  
30 datalink timing sub-element 1110 and the range timing sub-element 1121 as described below. In the Figs. 11A-D embodiment, it is preferred to have the base timing sub-element 1101 equal in length to the user timing sub-elements 1110, 1121 to maintain synchronicity in the dual-  
35 frequency band system described in Figs. 11A-D, wherein the base station 304 communicates over one frequency band and the user stations 302 over another frequency band.



The user datalink timing sub-element 1110 and the range timing sub-element 1121 each generally provide for transmissions by more than one user station 302. As explained further below, these timing sub-elements 1110, 1121 provide for transmission by a first user station 302 of a data message or a ranging message in the first part of the timing sub-element 1110 or 1121, and transmission by a second user station 302 of a control pulse preamble in the latter part of the timing sub-element 1110 or 1121. The control pulse preamble, as further described below, generally allows the base station 304 to carry out certain functions (e.g., power control) with respect to the second user station 302.

The user datalink timing sub-element 1110 comprises a datalink preamble interval 1112, a user message interval 1113, a guard band 1114, a transmit/receive switch interval 1115, a second preamble interval 1116, an antenna adjustment interval 1117, a second guard band 1118, and a second transmit/receive switch interval 1119. The preamble intervals 1112, 1116 may each be 56 chips in length. The user message interval 1113 may be 205 bits in length, or 1312 chips, using the 32-ary spread spectrum coding technique described previously herein. The length of the guard bands 1114, 1118 may vary, but should be sufficient to allow receipt of the pertinent message transmissions without interference. The transmit/receive switch intervals 1115, 1119 may each be of a duration sufficient to allow proper switching between transmit and receive modes, or between receive and transmit modes, as the case may be. The antenna adjustment interval 1117 may be of sufficient duration to allow transmission of a data symbol for selecting a particular antenna beam or permitting minor adjustments to the angle of a directional antenna at the base station 302, or permitting selection of one or more antennas if the base station 302 is so equipped.

The range timing sub-element 1121 comprises a ranging preamble interval 1122, a user ranging message interval 1123, a ranging guard band 1124, a transmit/receive switch interval 1125, a second preamble interval 1126, an antenna  
5 adjustment interval 1127, a second guard band 1128, and a second transmit/receive switch interval 1129. The preamble intervals 1122, 1126 may each be 56 chips in length. The user ranging message interval 1123 may be 150 bits in length, or 960 chips, using the 32-ary spread  
10 spectrum coding technique described previously herein. The length of the ranging guard band 1124 may vary depending, for example, on cell radius, but should be sufficient to allow receipt of a ranging message without interference. The other guard band 1128 should likewise  
15 be of sufficient length to allow receipt of the pertinent information without interference. The transmit/receive switch intervals 1125, 1129 may each be of a duration sufficient to allow proper switching between transmit and receive modes, or between receive and transmit modes, as  
20 the case may be. The antenna adjustment interval 1127 may be of sufficient duration to allow transmission of a data symbol for selecting a particular antenna beam or permitting minor adjustments to the angle of a directional antenna at the base station 302, or permitting selection  
25 of one or more antennas if the base station 302 is so equipped.

The total length of each of the user datalink timing sub-element 1110 and the range timing sub-element 1121 may be 1750 chips, or the same length as the base timing sub-  
30 element 1101. These particular exemplary values assume a chipping rate of 2.8 MHz.

Figure 11B is a timing diagram for a fixed or zero offset FDD/TDMA frame structure using the timing sub-  
elements depicted in Fig. 11A. The frame structures of  
35 Figs. 11B-E are shown from the perspective of the base station 304.

Figure 11B is a frame structure for a system using two frequency bands for communication in addition to certain aspects of time division multiple access. A first frequency band 1170, also referred to as a base station frequency band, is used primarily for communication from a base station 304 to user stations 302. A second frequency band 1171, also referred to as a user station frequency band, is used primarily for communication from the user stations 302 to the base station 304. The two frequency bands 1170, 1171 are preferably located 80 MHz apart. The 80 MHz frequency separation helps to minimize co-channel interference and allows easier construction of filters in the receiver for filtering out potentially interfering signals from the reverse path communication.

In the frame structure of Fig. 11B, a time frame 1140 comprises a plurality of time slots 1141. For convenience, time slots are designated in sequential order as TS1", TS2", TS3", and so on. Each time slot 1141 comprises a base timing sub-element 1101 on the base station frequency band 1170, and either a user datalink timing sub-element 1110 or a range timing sub-element 1121 on the user station frequency band 1171. The time slots 1141 are shown from the perspective of the base station 304, so that the base timing sub-elements 1101 and the user timing sub-elements 1110, 1121 appear lined up in Fig. 11B. While the frame structure of Fig. 11B supports range timing sub-elements 1121 on the user station frequency band 1171, it is contemplated that communication from the user stations 302 to the base station 304 in the Fig. 11B system will ordinarily occur using user datalink timing sub-elements 1110.

In operation, the base station 304 transmits, as part of the base timing sub-element 1101 of each time slot 1141, in sequence to user stations 302 with which the base station 304 has established communication. More specifically, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user

message during the base message interval 1103. After the base message interval 1103, the base station 304 transmits three short preamble bursts in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 directed to a different user station 302.

5 In the exemplary system of Fig. 11B, the three preamble bursts in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 are directed to the user station 302 to which the base station 304 will be sending a main data message two time slots 1141 later.

10 The three short preamble bursts sent in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 may be used for forward link diversity sensing and forward link power control purposes. Each of these three preamble bursts may be transmitted on a different antenna to allow receiving user stations 302  
15 an opportunity to make a diversity selection for an upcoming forward link data message in a subsequent time slot 1141.

Following the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 is the base fill code interval 1107, during which the base  
20 station 304 transmits a fill code. Following the base code fill interval 1107 is the transmit/receive switch interval 1104, during which the base station 304 may switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode. If the base station 304 has separate transmit and receive  
25 hardware, however, then the base station need not switch modes, and may instead continue to transmit a fill code during the transmit/receive switch interval 1104.

The specific communication exchanges shown in the example of Fig. 11B will now be explained in more detail.  
30 In the first time slot TS1", on the base station frequency band 1170, the base station transmits a base-to-user message in the base message interval 1103 directed to a first user station M1. The base station 304 then transmits a 123-preamble burst during the 123-preamble  
35 burst interval 1109, directed to another user station M3. Simultaneous with the base station transmissions, the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band

1171, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the last user station MN with which the base station 304 is in communication. During the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the first time slot TS1" on the user station frequency band 1171, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble from the user station M2 to which the base station 304 is to transmit in the following time slot TS2".

10 The functions of the control pulse preamble sent during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 are similar to those described earlier with respect to the control pulse preamble of Figs. 10A-E (e.g., power control, antenna adjustment, etc.). Following the  
15 preamble interval 1116 is an antenna adjustment interval 1117, during which the base station 304 has an opportunity to adjust its transmission antenna, if necessary, so as to direct it towards the second user station M2 based upon information acquired from receipt of the control pulse  
20 preamble. Following the antenna adjustment interval 1117 is another guard band 1118, which accounts for the propagation time of the control pulse preamble to the base station 304. After the preamble interval is another transmit/receive switching interval 1119 to allow the base  
25 station 304 opportunity to switch from a receive mode to a transmit mode (if necessary), and to allow the second user station M2 opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

In the following time slot TS2" after the first time  
30 slot TS1", the base station 304 transmits, using the base station frequency band 1170, a preamble during the base preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103, both directed to the second user station M2. The base station 304 thereby  
35 rapidly responds to the control pulse preamble sent by the user station M2. It is assumed, however, in the exemplary time frame 1140 of Fig. 11B that the base station 304 is

not in established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot TS4" over the base station frequency band 1170. Thus, in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 following the base message interval 1103, the base station 304 does not transmit a 123-preamble burst directed to a user station 302.

Simultaneous with the base station transmissions in the second time slot TS2", the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1171, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the user station M1 with which the base station 304 communicated in the first time slot TS1". Similar to the first time slot TS1", during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the second time slot TS2" on the user station frequency band 1171, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble from the user station M3 to which the base station 304 is to transmit in the following time slot TS3".

In the third time slot TS3", the base station 304 transmits, using the base station frequency band 1170, a preamble during the base preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103, both directed to the third user station M3. Following the base message interval 1103 is a 123-preamble burst interval 1109 during which the base station 304 transmits three short preamble bursts (i.e., the 123-preamble burst) directed to a different user station M5, with which the base station 304 intends to communicate two time slots 1141 later.

Simultaneous with the base station transmissions, the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1171, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the user station M2 with which the base station 304 communicated in the previous time slot TS2". Because the base station 304 is not in

established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot TS4" over the base station frequency band 1170, the base station 304 does not receive a control pulse preamble during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the third time slot TS3" on the user station frequency band 1171.

A similar exchange is carried out in the fourth time slot TS4", and in subsequent time slots 1141 as well. Whether or not particular user-to-base message, base-to-user messages, and preambles or control pulse preambles are transmitted depends on whether or not the base station 304 is in communication with a user station 302 requiring such exchanges at the particular time.

Thus, in general, to support communication between a user station 302 and base station 304 communicating during a single time slot 1141, four messages are exchanged in each time frame 1140 between the particular user station 302 and the base station 304. The base station 304 first sends a 123-preamble in a 123-preamble interval 1109 of the time slot 1141 two slots 1141 prior to which the base station 304 intends to transmit to the user station 302. In the following time slot 1141, on a different frequency band 1171, the user station 302 responds by sending a control pulse preamble, which is received at the base station 304 during the control pulse preamble interval 1116. In the following time slot 1141, after making determinations as to power adjustment and/or timing adjustment, the base station 304 transmits to the user station 304 a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103 on the base station frequency band 1170. In the following time slot 1141, after adjusting its power and/or timing, the user station 304 responds with a user-to-base message, which is received at the base station 304 during the user message interval 1113.

As noted, it is assumed in the exemplary time frame 1140 of Fig. 11B that the base station 304 is not in established communication with any user station 302 during

the fourth time slot TS4" over the base station frequency band 1170. The base station 304 may indicate that a particular time slot 1141, such as time slot TS4", is available for communication by, for example, transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1103 of the time slot TS4".

Should a user station 302 desire to establish communication with the base station 304 (such as in the fourth time slot TS4"), then, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1103 of the fourth time slot TS4", the new user station 302 may send a general polling response message during a user message interval 1113 of the following time slot TS5" (not shown). When the new user station 302 responds with a general polling response message, the base station 304 may determine the range of the user station 302 and thereby determine a required timing adjustment for subsequent transmissions by the user station 302. The base station 304 may thereafter issue periodic timing adjustment commands to maintain receipt of user-to-base transmissions at the start of each user timing interval. The base station 304 may monitor the distance of the user station 302 by looking to the time of receiving either the control pulse preamble or the user-to-base message from a user station 302.

For efficiency reasons, the guard times 1114 and 1118 are preferably kept to a minimum. The smaller the guard times 1114, 1118, the more user stations 302 may be supported by the frame structure of Fig. 11B. Typically, therefore, the guard times 1114, 1118 will not be of sufficient duration to allow a full ranging transaction to occur. In particular, a ranging transaction may result in interference between the transmission of a user station 302 seeking to establish communication and the control pulse preamble of the user station 302 already in communication in the immediately following time slot 1141 with the base station 304. If the guard times are



lengthened to permit ranging transactions, then fewer user stations 302 can be supported, particularly in a large cell environment. An alternative structure having improved efficiency in a large cell environment, along with the flexibility of ranging transactions, is shown in Figs. 11C and 11D and explained in more detail below.

Proper timing is preferably set upon initial establishment of communication, and the transmissions from the user stations, such as the first user station M1, may be maintained in time alignment as seen at the base station 304 by timing adjustment commands from the base station 304, similar to the timing adjustment commands described elsewhere herein. A full round-trip guard time need not be included in each time slot 1141 because the user stations 302 and base station 304 transmit on different frequency bands, preventing interference between base-to-user messages and user-to-base messages.

The depiction of the frame structure in Figs. 11A-B assumes that the user stations 302 are at zero distance from the base station 304, and therefore the user-to-base message appears immediately after the preamble interval 1112 or 1122. However, if the user station 302 is not immediately adjacent to the base station 304, then part of guard time 1114 shown in Fig. 11A will be consumed in the propagation of the preamble and user-to-base message to the base station 304. Thus, if the user station 302 is at the cell periphery, then the user-to-base message will appear at the base station 304 after the elapsing of a time period equal at most to the duration of guard time 1114. In order to ensure that the guard times 1114 and 1118 are kept to a minimum, timing adjustment commands are preferably transmitted from the base station 304 periodically so as to keep the user preambles and user-to-base messages arriving at the base station 304 as close to the start of the user timing sub-element 1110 as possible, without interfering with the transmissions of the previous use station 302.

If a ranging transaction is supported in the Fig. 11B environment, then the portion of a time slot 1141 on the user station frequency band 1171 may comprise a range timing sub-element 1121, as described previously with respect to Fig. 11A, during which a ranging transaction is carried out between the base station 304 and a new user station 302. Thus, the user station 302 transmits a preamble during a ranging preamble interval 1122 of time slot 1141, and transmits a ranging message during the user ranging message interval 1123 of time slot 1141. The user station 302 delays transmitting the preamble and ranging message for an amount of time  $\Delta T$ . The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be communicated by the base station 304 as part of the general polling message, or may be a pre-programmed system parameter. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the user station 302 to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the previous time slot 1141 to the time of actual receipt of the responsive preamble and ranging message from the user station 302, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

In the above described embodiment supporting ranging transactions, the ranging guard band 1124 is preferably of sufficient length to allow the ranging transaction between the base station 304 and the user station 302 to occur. Thus, the length of the ranging guard band 1124 is determined in part by the radius of the cell 303 in which the base station 304 is located, or may be determined in part by the maximum cell radius of the cellular system.

In response to receiving the ranging message from the user station 302 and determining the distance of the user station 302 and/or the propagation delay time thereto, the base station 304 may issue a timing adjustment command to the user station 302 in the next time frame 1140 instructing the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount. For the time frame 1140 immediately after communication with the user station 302

is established, the timing adjustment command may be set equal to the round-trip propagation time as determined by the base station 304 during the ranging transaction. Preferably, the timing adjustment command is selected so  
5 as to cause the user transmission from the user station 302 to the base station 304 in the subsequent time frame 1140 to be received by the base station 304 immediately after the end of the previous time slot 1141.

In addition to being used for ranging purposes, the  
10 ranging message may also contain other information to assist the base station 304 in handshaking with the user station 302. For example, the ranging message may contain as data a user identifier for the user station 302 seeking to establish communication. The ranging message may also  
15 indicate a preferred spread spectrum code to be used by the base station 304 and the particular user station 302 in subsequent communications.

It may be possible to minimize potential interference between ranging messages and control pulse preambles by  
20 using a particular designated spread spectrum code for only ranging messages, or for only control pulse preambles. However, code division multiplexing in such a manner may not provide satisfactory isolation between the interfering signals, or may require unacceptably long time  
25 slots.

In the following time frames 1140, after establishing communication with user station M3 in the manner described above, communication may be carried out between the base station 304 and the user station M3 in an interleaved  
30 fashion over several time slots 1140. As part of each transmission from the base station 304, the base station 304 may update the timing adjustment command to the user station M3.

Should a user station 302 terminate communication in  
35 a time slot 1141 or be handed off to a new base station 304, then the base station 304 may begin to transmit a general polling message during the newly opened time slot

1141, indicating that the time slot 1141 is free for communication. New user stations 302 may thereby establish communication with the same base station 304.

A simple means to adapt an FDD/TDMA system such as shown in Fig. 11B to emulate a TDD system is to alternately black out time slots on each of the two frequency bands 1170 and 1171. Thus, during time slot TS1", the base station 304 transmits to a user station M<sub>1</sub> over frequency band 1170, while no transmission is conducted over frequency band 1171. During the next time slot TS2", the user station M<sub>1</sub> responds over frequency band 1171, while no transmission is conducted over frequency band 1170. The next two time slots TS3" and TS4" are used for duplex communication between the base station 304 and the next user station M<sub>2</sub>, with the user slot in TS3" and the base slot in TS4" being dormant. The described frame structure generally supports fewer user stations 302 than the frame structure shown in Fig. 11B due to the dormancy of alternating time slots on each frequency band 1170 and 1171, but allows a TDD interface such as shown in Fig. 10B to be emulated with minimal modification to the base and user stations (e.g., by transmitting and receiving on different frequency bands). If both frequency bands 1170 and 1171 are selected to be the same, then the system will be true TDD, thus allowing the same hardware to be capable of either FDD/TDMA or TDD operation simply by appropriate selection of the frequency bands and appropriate selection of the time slots (i.e., by selecting in an alternating manner) on the forward and reverse links during which to transmit.

Figure 11C is a timing diagram for an offset interleaved FDD/TDMA frame structure using the timing sub-elements depicted in Fig. 11A, as shown from the perspective of the base station 304. As described further below, the offset interleaved FDD/TDMA frame structure of Fig. 11C permits larger cells by allowing time for user stations 302 to receive base station transmissions

intended for them before having to reply, and may prevent the need for a costly diplexer in the user station 302.

Figure 11C is a frame structure for a system using two frequency bands for communication in addition to certain aspects of time division multiple access. A first frequency band 1172, also referred to as a base station frequency band, is used primarily for communication from a base station 304 to user stations 302. A second frequency band 1173, also referred to as a user station frequency band, is used primarily for communication from the user stations 302 to the base station 304. The two frequency bands 1172, 1173 are preferably located 80 MHz apart. The 80 MHz frequency separation helps to minimize co-channel interference and allows easier construction of filters in the receiver for filtering out potentially interfering signals from the reverse path communication.

In the frame structure of Fig. 11C, a time frame 1150 comprises a plurality of time slots 1151. For convenience, time slots are designated in sequential order as OTS1, OTS2, OTS3, and so on. Each time slot 1151 comprises a base timing sub-element 1101 on the base station frequency band 1170, and either a user datalink timing sub-element 1110 or a range timing sub-element 1121 on the user station frequency band 1171. The time slots 1151 are shown from the perspective of the base station 304, so that the base timing sub-elements 1101 and the user timing sub-elements 1110, 1121 appear staggered in Fig. 11C by a predetermined offset time 1160. The frame structure of Fig. 11C supports both range timing sub-elements 1121 and user datalink timing sub-elements 1110 on the user station frequency band 1171.

In operation, the base station 304 transmits, as part of the base timing sub-element 1101 of each time slot 1151, in sequence to user stations 302 with which the base station 304 has established communication. Thus, the base station 304 transmits a preamble during the preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base

message interval 1103. After the base message interval 1103, the base station 304 transmits three short preamble bursts in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 directed to a different user station 302. In the exemplary system of  
5 Fig. 11C, the three preamble bursts in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 are directed to the user station 302 to which the base station 304 will be sending a main data message two time slots 1151 later.

As with the system of Fig. 11B, the three short  
10 preamble bursts sent in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 may be used for forward link diversity sensing and forward link power control purposes. Each of these three preamble bursts may be transmitted on a different antenna to allow receiving user stations 302 an opportunity to  
15 make a diversity selection for an upcoming forward link data message in a subsequent time slot 1151.

Following the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 is the base fill code interval 1107, during which the base station 304 transmits a fill code. Following the base  
20 code fill interval 1107 is the transmit/receive switch interval 1104, during which the base station 304 may switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode. Preferably, however, the base station 304 has separate transmit and receive hardware, and therefore does not need  
25 to switch modes. Instead, the base station 304 may continue to transmit a fill code during the transmit/receive switch interval 1104.

The specific communication exchanges shown in the example of Fig. 11C will now be explained in more detail.  
30 In the first time slot OTS1, on the base station frequency band 1172, the base station transmits a base-to-user message in the base message interval 1103 directed to a first user station M1. The base station 304 then transmits a 123-preamble burst during the 123-preamble  
35 burst interval 1109, directed to another user station M3. Simultaneous with the base station transmissions, but offset therefrom by an offset time 1160, the base station

304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1173, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the last user station MN with which the base station 304 is in communication. During the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the first time slot OTS1 on the user station frequency band 1173, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble from the user station M2 to which the base station 304 is to transmit in the following time slot OTS2.

The functions of the control pulse preamble sent during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 are similar to those described earlier with respect to the control pulse preamble of Figs. 10A-E and 11B (e.g., power control, antenna adjustment, etc.). Following the preamble interval 1116 is an antenna adjustment interval 1117, during which the base station 304 has an opportunity to adjust its transmission antenna, if necessary, so as to direct it towards the second user station M2 based upon information acquired from receipt of the control pulse preamble. Following the antenna adjustment interval 1117 is another guard band 1118, to allow for propagation of the control pulse preamble to the base station 304. After the preamble interval is another transmit/receive switching interval 1119 to allow the base station 304 opportunity to switch from a receive mode to a transmit mode (if necessary), and to allow the second user station M2 opportunity to switch from a transmit mode to a receive mode.

In the following time slot OTS2 after the first time slot OTS1, the base station 304 transmits, using the base station frequency band 1172, a preamble during the base preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103, both directed to the second user station M2. The base station 304 thereby rapidly responds to the control pulse preamble sent by the user station M2. It is assumed, however, in the exemplary

time frame 1150 of Fig. 11C that the base station 304 is not in established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot OTS4 over the base station frequency band 1172. Thus, in the 123-preamble burst interval 1109 following the base message interval 1103 in the second time slot OTS2, the base station 304 does not transmit a 123-preamble burst directed to a user station 302.

Simultaneous with the base station transmissions in the second time slot OTS2 but offset therefrom by an offset time 1160, the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1173, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the user station M1 with which the base station 304 communicated in the first time slot OTS1. As with the first time slot OTS1, during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the second time slot OTS2 on the user station frequency band 1173, the base station 304 receives a control pulse preamble from the user station M3 to which the base station 304 is to transmit in the following time slot OTS3.

In the third time slot OTS3, the base station 304 transmits, using the base station frequency band 1172, a preamble during the base preamble interval 1102 and a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103, both directed to the third user station M3. Following the base message interval 1103 is a 123-preamble burst interval 1109 during which the base station 304 transmits three short preamble bursts (i.e., the 123-preamble burst) directed to a different user station M5, with which the base station 304 will communicate two slots 1151 later.

Simultaneous with the base station transmissions but offset therefrom by an offset time 1160, the base station 304 receives, on the user station frequency band 1173, a preamble during the datalink preamble interval 1112 and a



user-to-base message during the user message interval 1113 from the user station M2 with which the base station 304 communicated in the previous time slot OTS2. Because the base station 304 is not in established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot OTS4 over the base station frequency band 1172, the base station 304 does not receive a control pulse preamble during the control pulse preamble interval 1116 of the third time slot OTS3 on the user station frequency band 1173.

10 A similar exchange is carried out in the fourth time slot OTS4, and in subsequent time slots 1151 as well. Whether or not particular user-to-base message, base-to-user messages, and preambles or control pulse preambles are transmitted depends on whether or not the base station 15 304 is in communication with a user station 302 requiring such exchanges at the particular time.

Thus, in general, to support communication between a user station 302 and base station 304 communicating during a single time slot 1151, four messages are exchanged in 20 each time frame 1150 between the particular user station 302 and the base station 304. The base station 304 first sends a 123-preamble in a 123-preamble interval 1109 of the time slot 1151 two slots 1151 prior to which the base station 304 intends to transmit to the user station 302. 25 In the following time slot 1151, on a different frequency band 1173 and delayed by an offset time 1160, the user station 302 responds by sending a control pulse preamble, which is received at the base station 304 during the control pulse preamble interval 1116. In the following 30 time slot 1151, after making determinations as to power adjustment and/or timing adjustment, the base station 304 transmits to the user station 304 a base-to-user message during the base message interval 1103 on the base station frequency band 1172. In the following time slot 1151, 35 after adjusting its power and/or timing, the user station 304 responds with a user-to-base message, which is

received at the base station 304 during the user message interval 1113.

It is assumed in the exemplary time frame 1150 of Fig. 11C that the base station 304 is not in established communication with any user station 302 during the fourth time slot OTS4 over the base station frequency band 1172. The base station 304 may indicate that a particular time slot 1151, such as time slot OTS4, is available for communication by, for example, transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1103 of the time slot OTS4.

Should a user station 302 desire to establish communication with the base station 304 (such as in the fourth time slot OTS4), then, in response to the base station 304 transmitting a general polling message during the base message interval 1103 of the fourth time slot OTS4, the new user station 302 may send a general polling response message during a user message interval 1113 of the following time slot OTS5. When the new user station 302 responds with a general polling response message, the base station 304 may determine the range of the user station 302 and thereby determine a required timing adjustment for subsequent transmissions by the user station 302.

For efficiency reasons, the guard times 1114 and 1118 are preferably kept to a minimum. The smaller the guard times 1114, 1118, the more user stations 302 may be supported by the frame structure of Fig. 11C.

Proper timing is preferably set upon initial establishment of communication, and the transmissions from the user stations, such as the first user station M1, may be maintained in time alignment as seen at the base station 304 by timing adjustment commands from the base station 304, similar to the timing adjustment commands described elsewhere herein. A full round-trip guard time need not be included in each time slot 1151 because the user stations 302 and base station 304 transmit on

different frequency bands, preventing interference between base-to-user messages and user-to-base messages.

The depiction of the frame structure in Fig. 11C (i.e., the exploded time slots 1151) assumes that the user stations 302 are at zero distance from the base station 304. However, if the user station 302 is not immediately adjacent to the base station 304, then part of guard time 1114 (as shown in Fig. 11A) will be consumed in the propagation of the preamble and user-to-base message to the base station 304. Thus, if the user station 302 is at the cell periphery, then the user-to-base message will appear at the base station 304 after the elapsing of a time period equal at most to the duration of guard time 1114. In order to ensure that the guard times 1114 and 1118 are kept to a minimum, timing adjustment commands are preferably transmitted from the base station 304 periodically so as to keep the user preambles and user-to-base messages arriving at the base station 304 as close to the start of the user timing sub-element 1110 as possible, without interfering with the transmissions of the previous use station 302.

When a user station 302 first establishes communication with the base station 304 in the Fig. 11C frame structure, a ranging transaction is carried out. The time slot 1151 on the user station frequency band 1173 during which the ranging transaction is initiated preferably comprises a range timing sub-element 1121, as described previously with respect to Fig. 11A. The user station 302 transmits a preamble during a ranging preamble interval 1122 of time slot 1151, and transmits a ranging message during the user ranging message interval 1123 of time slot 1151. The user station 302 delays transmitting the preamble and ranging message for an amount of time  $\Delta T$ . The delay time  $\Delta T$  may be communicated by the base station 304 as part of the general polling message, or may be a pre-programmed system parameter. The base station 304 determines the propagation delay from the user station 302

to the base station 304 by measuring the round trip propagation delay from the end of the previous time slot 1151 to the time of actual receipt of the responsive preamble and ranging message from the user station 302, taking into account the delay time  $\Delta T$ .

The ranging guard band 1124 should be of sufficient length to allow the ranging transaction between the base station 304 and the user station 302 to occur. Thus, the length of the ranging guard band 1124 is determined in part by the radius of the cell 303 in which the base station 304 is located, or may be determined in part by the maximum cell radius of the cellular system.

In response to receiving the ranging message from the user station 302 and determining the distance of the user station 302 and/or the propagation delay time thereto, the base station 304 may issue a timing adjustment command to the user station 302 in the next time frame 1150 instructing the user station 302 to advance or retard its timing by a designated amount. For the time frame 1150 immediately after communication with the user station 302 is established, the timing adjustment command may be set equal to the round-trip propagation time as determined by the base station 304 during the ranging transaction. Preferably, the timing adjustment command is selected so as to cause the user transmission from the user station 302 to the base station 304 in the subsequent time frame 1150 to be received by the base station 304 immediately after the end of the previous time slot 1151.

In addition to being used for ranging purposes, the ranging message may also contain other information to assist the base station 304 in handshaking with the user station 302. For example, the ranging message may contain as data a user identifier for the user station 302 seeking to establish communication. The ranging message may also indicate a preferred spread spectrum code to be used by the base station 304 and the particular user station 302 in subsequent communications.

It may also be possible to minimize potential interference between ranging messages and control pulse preambles by using a particular designated spread spectrum code for only ranging messages, or for only control pulse preambles. However, it is anticipated that in most cases the use of an offset time 1160 between time slots 1151 on the base frequency band 1172 and the user frequency band 1173 should sufficiently separate the relevant transmissions in time so as to result in a system having minimal interference between user stations 302.

An advantage of the frame structure of Figs. 11C-D utilizing the offset time 1160 is that a diplexer, a device which allows simultaneous transmission and reception of signals, is generally not necessary in the user station 302. With the fixed offset frame structure of Fig. 11B, on the other hand, a diplexer may be necessary to support a high density of users, particularly in a large cell environment, because a user station 302 may need to transmit in a time slot 1141 prior to receiving the entire base-to-user message intended for it sent in the previous time slot 1141. Because Fig. 11B is constructed from a perspective of the base station 304, the time slots 1141 appear lined up to the base station 304, but the user station 302 is required to send its information in advance of the user portion of the time slot 1141 in order for the information to arrive at the base station 304 lined up as shown in Fig. 11B. In a large cell environment, where a user station 302 is distant, the user station 302 may be required to send its information prior to receiving the entire base-to-user message. In order to do so, the user station 302 may require the capability to transmit and receive information simultaneously, and may thus require a diplexer. In a protocol requiring that the user station 302 receive the base message before responding, the Fig. 11B system may thus not be suitable in a very large cell environment.

In the Fig. 11C-D embodiment, time slots 1151 on the user frequency band 1173 are offset from those on the base frequency band 1172 by an offset time 1160. The offset time 1160 allows the base-to-user message to propagate to the user station 302 prior to transmission of the user-to-base message by the user station 302. The user station 302 therefore does not need a diplexer, which can be a relatively expensive component. Operation without a diplexer is particularly beneficial where the user station 302 is embodied as a mobile handset, because it is often important to keep manufacturing costs of the handset as low as possible. Other hardware efficiency may also be achieved by not requiring simultaneous transmission and reception; for example, the user station 302 could use the same frequency synthesizer for both transmitting and receiving functions.

Figure 11D shows a subsequent time frame 1150 after a ranging transaction has been completed with the third user station M3. In Fig. 11D, the transactions between the user stations M1, MN and the base station 304 occurring in the first time slot OTS1 are the same as for Fig. 11C. Also, the transactions between the user stations M1, M2 and the base station 304 occurring in the second time slot OTS2 are the same as for Fig. 11C. However, during the second time slot OTS2, instead of there being no transmitted control pulse preamble in the preamble interval 1116, the third user station M3 may transmit a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1116 of the second time slot OTS2. Alternatively, the user station M3 may wait until the base station 304 acknowledges its ranging message sent in the prior time frame 1150 before transmitting a control pulse preamble during the preamble interval 1116 of each preceding time slot OTS2.

In the following time frames 1150, after establishing communication with the third user station M3 in the manner described above, communication may be carried out between

the base station 304 and the user station M3 as shown in Fig. 11D. As part of each transmission from the base station 304, the base station 304 may update the timing adjustment command to the user station M3.

- 5 Should a user station 302 terminate communication in a time slot 1151 or be handed off to a new base station 304, then the base station 304 may begin to transmit a general polling message during the newly opened time slot 1151, indicating that the time slot 1151 is free for  
10 communication. New user stations 302 may thereby establish communication with the same base station 304.

Figures 12A-C are tables showing preferred message formats for base station and user station transmissions. Tables 12B-1 through 12B-3 show message formats for  
15 transmissions used in handshaking or an acquisition mode. Tables 12C-1 through 12C-4 show message formats (both symmetric and asymmetric) after acquisition when in traffic mode. It should be noted that the asymmetric message formats are intended for use in the TDD based  
20 system variants, but not the FDD based systems. Tables 12A-1 through 12A-4 show the header format for each of the different message types in Tables 12B-1 through 12C-4.

For example, Table 12A-1 shows a header format for a base polling transmission (general or specific) as  
25 described earlier. The header format of Table 12A-1 comprises 21 bits. The particular header format comprises 10 fields totalling 19 bits, leaving two spare bits. The fields include a B/H field of 1 bit identifying whether the transmission source is a base station or a user  
30 station; an E field of 1 bit which may be used as an extension of the B/H field; a G/S field of 1 bit indicating whether the polling message is general or specific; a P/N field of 1 bit indicating whether the transmission is in a polling or traffic message; an SA  
35 field of 1 bit used for identification checking and verification; a PWR field of 3 bits used for power control; a CU field of 2 bits indicating slot utilization;

an opposite link quality field of 2 bits indicating how well the sending unit is receiving the opposite sense link; a timing adjustment command of 3 bits providing a command to the user station to adjust its timing if  
5 necessary; and a header FCW (frame check word) field of 4 bits used for error detection (similar to a CRC).

A header format for a base traffic transmission is shown in Table 12A-2. The header format is the same as that of Table 12A-1, except that an additional B/W grant  
10 field of 2 bits for the allocation of addition bandwidth to the user station 302 through time slot aggregation or asymmetric time slot use. The header format of Table 12A-2 utilizes 21 bits.

A header format for a mobile or user polling  
15 transmission is shown in Table 12A-3. The header format is similar to that of Table 12A-1, except that it does not include a CU field or a timing command field. Also, the header format of Table 12A-3 includes a B/W request field of 1 bit for a request of additional bandwidth or time  
20 slots. The Table 12A-3 header format includes 6 spare bits.

A header format for a mobile or user traffic transmission is shown in Table 12A-4. The header format of Table 12A-4 is the same as that of Table 12A-3, except  
25 that the B/W request field is designated in place of a B/W grant field.

Thus, the header formats for user stations 302 and base stations 304 are selected to be the same length in the exemplary embodiment described with respect to Figs.  
30 12A-C, whether or not in polling or traffic mode, and whether or not the polling message is general or specific.

Tables 12B-1 through 12B-3 show message formats for transmissions used in handshaking or an acquisition mode. Table 12B-1 shows a message format of 205 bits for a base  
35 general polling transmission. The message format of Table 12B-1 includes a header field of 21 bits, which comprises fields shown in Table 12A-1; a base ID field of 32 bits



for identifying the base station 304 transmitting the general polling message; various network and system identification fields, such as a service provider field of 16 bits which may be used to indicate, e.g., a telephone network or other communication source, a zone field of 16 bits which may be used to identify, e.g., a paging cluster, and a facility field of 32 bits; a slot number field of 6 bits indicating the slot number of the associated general polling transmission so as to assist the user station 302 in synchronization; and a frame FCW field of 16 bits for error correction and transmission integrity verification.

A message format of 150 bits for a mobile or user station response transmission is shown in Table 12B-3. The message format of Table 12B-3 includes a header field of 21 bits, which comprises fields shown in Table 12A-3; a PID field of 40 bits for identifying the user station 302 responding to the general polling message; a service provider field of 16 bits; a service request field of 16 bits indicating which of a variety of available services from the base station 304 is being sought; a mobile capability field of 8 bits; and a frame FCW field of 16 bits. The mobile capability field comprises two sub-fields, a type or capability sub-field of 2 bits indicating the user station's capability (e.g., diplexer, interleaving of traffic slots), and a home base slot number field of 6 bits for echoing the slot number received from the slot number field of the base general polling transmission. The user station polling response transmission, at 150 bits, is substantially shorter than a base station polling transmission or a traffic message transmission so as to accommodate ranging transactions and allow for uncertain initial propagation delay time from the user station 302 seeking to establish communication.

A message format of 205 bits for a base station specific polling transmission is shown in Table 12B-2. The message format of Table 12B-2 includes a header field

of 21 bits, which comprises fields shown in Table 12A-1; a correlative ID field of 8 bits indicating the relative slot location; a result field of 8 bits; a PID field of 40 bits for echoing the identification number received from the user station 302; a map type field of 8 bits for indicating, e.g., the number of time slots for the particular base station 304; a map field of 32 bits, indicating which slots are in use (which the user station 302 may evaluate in gauging potential slot aggregation); a slot number field of 6 bits; and a frame FCW field of 16 bits.

Tables 12C-1 through 12C-4 show message formats (both symmetric and asymmetric) after acquisition when in traffic mode. Tables 12A-1 and 12A-2 are base station traffic mode message formats; the message format of Table 12A-1 is used for a symmetric frame structure, and the format of Table 12A-2 is used for an asymmetric frame structure. Similarly, Tables 12A-3 and 12A-4 are mobile or user station traffic mode message formats; the message format of Table 12A-3 is used for a symmetric frame structure, and the format of Table 12A-4 is used for an asymmetric frame structure.

In a symmetric frame structure, each of the traffic mode messages is 205 bits in length. Each of the traffic mode message comprises a D-channel field (or data field) of 8 bits in length for slow data rate messaging capability, and a B-channel field (or bearer field) of 160 or 176 bits in length, depending on whether or not a frame FCW field of 16 bits is used.

In an asymmetric frame structure, used only in TDD system variants, the traffic mode message from one source is a different length, usually much longer, than the traffic mode message from the other source. The asymmetric frame structure allows a much higher data bandwidth in one direction of the communication link than the other direction. Thus, one of the traffic mode messages is 45 bits in length, while the other traffic

mode messages is 365 bits in length. The total length for a forward and reverse link message still totals 410 bits, as with the symmetric frame structure. Each of the traffic mode message comprises a D-channel field (or data  
5 field) of 8 bits in length for slow data rate messaging capability, and a B-channel field (or bearer field) of either 0, 16, 320 or 336 bits in length, depending on which source has the higher transmission rate, and depending on whether or not a frame FCW field of 16 bits  
10 is used.

Base and user messages are preferably sent using an M-ary encoding technique. The base and user messages are preferably comprised of a concatenated sequence of data symbols, wherein each data symbol represents 5 bits. A  
15 spread spectrum code, or symbol code, is transmitted for each data symbol. Thus, a transmitted symbol code may represent a whole or a portion of a data field, or multiple data fields, or portions of more than one data field, of a base or user message.

20 Because processing load generally increases proportionally to the length of preambles, which often require asynchronous processing, concatenated preamble code structures similar to those used in MPRF modes of the APG-63 radar may be used in the various communication  
25 interfaces described herein. A general description of APG-63 radar may be found in Morris, Airborne Pulsed Doppler Radar (Artech House 1988).

Figures 13A-B are diagrams showing the construction of concatenated preambles. In Fig. 13A, a length 112  
30 preamble code is formed by taking a kronecker product between a Barker-4 (B4) code 1302 and a Minimum Peak Sidelobe-28 (MPS28) code 1301. In one sense, the resultant preamble can be thought of as an MPS28 code wherein each "chip" is in actuality a B4 sequence. One  
35 advantage of this preamble structure is that correlation processing can be accomplished using a 4-tap B4 matched filter 1310 followed by a 28 non-zero tap MPS28 \*

[1,0,0,0] matched filter 1311, as shown in Fig. 13B. In terms of processing complexity, the technique of Figs. 13A-B is roughly the equivalent of a 32-tap matched filter, except with a higher memory requirement. Performance can be enhanced by embodying the first stage filter 1310 as a mismatched filter instead of a matched filter, thereby reducing sidelobes in the filter response.

Figures 13D and 13E are graphs comparing the filter response for concatenated preambles using matched filters and mismatched filters, respectively. For the purposes of Figs. 13D and 13E, a length 140 preamble is assumed. The preamble comprises a kronecker product between a Barker-5 (B5) code and an MPS28 code. Figure 13D shows a composite filter response for the MPS28  $\otimes$  B5, length 140 preamble processed by a 5-tap B5 matched filter 1310 followed by a 28-tap MPS28 matched filter 1311. Four sidelobe spikes 1320 of about -14 dB are apparent in the graph of Fig. 13D. Figure 13E shows a composite filter response for the same preamble processed by a 17-tap B5 mismatched filter 1310 followed by a 28-tap MPS28 matched filter 1311, showing elimination of the sidelobe spikes 1320 shown in Fig. 13D.

As an alternative processing mechanism, M of N detectors can be used for detection alert purposes while the full length preamble is used for detection confirmation and channel sensing/equalization purposes. Code sets may be created having preambles using different MPS28 codes exhibiting low cross-correlation. A potential limitation with this approach is that there are only two MPS28 codewords. Thus, to create an N=7 code reuse pattern, "near" MPS28 codewords may be included so as to enlarge the potential available preambles exhibiting favorable cross-correlation characteristics. The two MPS28 codewords have peak temporal sidelobe levels of -22.9 dB, while the near MPS28 codewords have peak temporal sidelobe levels of -19.4 dB.

Preamble processing may further be augmented by taking advantage of the control pulse preamble (e.g., in preamble interval 1016) and 123-preamble message transmissions described earlier herein with respect to  
5 Figs. 10A-11D. The control pulse preamble and 123-preamble transmissions generally have fixed timing with respect to the initial preamble transmissions (e.g., in preamble intervals 1002 or 1102) preceding each main user or base transmission, and can be used to aid in  
10 synchronization particularly on the reverse link where two full-length preamble transmissions are associated with each main user or base transmission. Preamble length is effectively doubled by processing both the control pulse preamble or 123-preamble, and the preambles preceding the  
15 main user or base transmission.

Figures 14-17 are charts comparing various performance aspects of selected high tier and low tier air interfaces incorporating designated features of the embodiments described herein. By the term "high tier" is  
20 generally meant system coverage over a wide area and hence low capacity. Conversely, the term "low tier" is generally applied to communication services for localized high capacity and/or specialized needs. In one scheme, users are assigned to the lowest tier possible to preserve  
25 capacity in higher tiers.

In general, high tier applications are characterized by relatively large cells to provide umbrella coverage and connectivity, wherein users tend to have high measured mobility factors (e.g., high speed vehicular). High tier  
30 operations may also be characterized by high transmit power at the base station, high gain receive antennas, and high elevation antenna placement. Factors such as delay spread (resulting from multiple propagation delays due to reflections) and horizontal phase center separation as  
35 applied to multipath and antenna diversity can be quite important. For example, increased antenna complexity and aperture size may weigh against the use of large numbers

of diversity antennas in high tier applications. Receiver sensitivity may also be an important limiting factor. Small coherence bandwidths make spread spectrum waveforms favored in high tier applications.

5 Low tier applications are generally characterized by smaller cells with coverage limited by physical obstructions and number of radiating centers rather than receiver sensitivity. Small delay spreads allow for higher symbol rate and favor antenna diversity techniques  
10 for overcoming multipath fading. Either spread spectrum or narrowband signals may be used, and narrowband signals may be advantageous for achieving high capacity spot coverage and dynamic channel allocation. Dynamic channel assignment algorithms are favored to provide rapid  
15 response to changing traffic requirements and to permit relatively small reuse patterns by taking advantage of physical obstructions. Low tier applications may include, for example, wireless local loop, spot coverage for "holes" in high tier coverage, localized high capacity,  
20 and wireless Centrex.

While certain general characteristics of high tier and low tier applications have been described, these terms as applied herein are not meant to restrict the applicability of the principles of the present invention  
25 as set forth in its various embodiments. Categorization as high or low tier is merely intended to facilitate illustration of the exemplary embodiments described herein, and provide useful guideposts in system design. The designations of high or low tier are not necessarily  
30 exclusive of one another, nor do they necessarily encompass all possible communication systems.

High tier and low tier designations may be applied to operations in either the licensed or unlicensed frequency bands. In the unlicensed isochronous band (1910-1920  
35 MHz), FCC rules essentially require a TDD or TDMA/FDD hybrid because of the narrow available frequency range, with a maximum signal bandwidth of 1.25 MHz. "Listen

before talk" capability is commonly required in order to sense and avoid the transmissions of other users prior to transmitting. Applications in the isochronous band are typically of the low tier variety, and include wireless PBX, smart badges (e.g., position determining devices and passive RF radiating devices), home cordless, and compressed video distribution. Dynamic channel allocation and low tier structure is preferred due to the FCC requirements. Further, power limitations generally preclude large cells.

In the Industrial Scientific Medical (ISM) band (2400-2483.5 MHz), applications are similar to the unlicensed isochronous band, except that the federal regulations are somewhat less restrictive. Spread spectrum techniques are preferred to minimize transmission power (e.g., to 1 watt or less), with a minimum of 10 dB processing gain typically required. A TDD or TDMA/FDD hybrid structure is preferred due to the small frequency range of the ISM band.

Figure 14 is a summary chart comparing various air interfaces, generally grouped by high tier and low tier designations. The first column of Fig. 14 identifies the air interface type. The air interface type is identified by the chipping rate, tier, and frame structure -- either TDD (single frequency band with time division) or FDD/TDMA (multiple frequency bands with time division), such as described earlier with respect to Figs. 10A-E and 11A-D. Thus, for example, the identifier "5.00HT" appearing in the first row of the first column of the chart of Fig. 14 identifies the air interface as having a chipping rate of 5.00 Megachips (Mcp), being high tier, and having a TDD structure. Similarly, the identifier "0.64LF" appearing in the sixth row of column one identifies the air interface as having a chipping rate of 0.64 Mcp, being low tier, and having an FDD/TDMA structure. A total of 16 different air interfaces (10 high tier, 6 low tier) are summarized in Fig. 14.

The second column of the chart of Fig. 14 identifies the duplex method, which is also indicated, as described above, by the last initial of the air interface type. The third column of the chart of Fig. 14 identifies the number of time slots for each particular air interface type. For the particular described embodiments, time slots range from 8 to 32. The fourth column of the chart of Fig. 14 identifies the chipping rate (in MHz) for each particular air interface type. The fifth column of the Fig. 14 chart indicates the number of channels in each allocation, which is an approximation of the number of supportable RF channels given a particular bandwidth allocation (e.g., 30 MHz), and may vary according to a chosen modulation technique and the chipping rate. The sixth column of the Fig. 14 chart indicates the sensitivity (in dBm) measured at the antenna post. The seventh and eighth columns of the Fig. 14 chart indicate the number of base stations required in different propagation environments, with 100% being a reference set with respect to the 5.00HT air interface. The propagation environments considered in the Fig. 14 chart include  $R^2$  (open area),  $R^4$  (urban), and  $R^7$  (low antenna urban), as listed.

The air interface types in Fig. 14 are also broken into four general categories, including high tier, low tier, unlicensed isochronous, and ISM air interface types. High tier operation assumes antenna diversity ( $L_{ant}$ ) using two antennas, a number of resolvable multipaths ( $L_{rake}$ ) of two, and a 30 MHz bandwidth allocation. The number of resolvable multipaths is generally a function of receiver capability, delay spread and antenna placement. Low tier operation assumes antenna diversity using three antennas, a single resolvable communication path, and a 30 MHz bandwidth allocation. Unlicensed isochronous operation assumes antenna diversity using three antennas, a single resolvable communication path, and a 1.25 MHz channel bandwidth. ISM operation assumes antenna diversity using



three antennas, a single resolvable communication path, and an 83.5 MHz bandwidth allocation.

Figure 15 compares the digital range limits (in miles) for the air interfaces described in Fig. 14. Digital range depends in part upon the number of time slots employed and whether ranging (i.e., timing adjustment control) is used. The multiple columns under the heading "Ranging Used" indicate whether or not timing control is implemented in the system, and correspond in the same order to the multiple columns under the "Time Slots" heading, which indicates the number of time slots used. The multiple columns under the "Digital Range" heading correspond in the same order to the columns under the "Ranging Used" and the "Time Slots" headings. Thus, for example, with the 5.00HT air interface, there are three possible embodiments shown. A first embodiment uses 32 time slots and ranging (timing adjustment), leading to a digital range of 8.47 miles. A second embodiment uses 32 time slots and no ranging, leading to a digital range of 1.91 miles. A third embodiment uses 25 time slots and no ranging, leading to a digital range of 10.06 miles.

It may be observed from the exemplary system parameters shown in the Fig. 15 chart that digital range may be increased either by reducing the number of time slots used, increasing the chipping rate, utilizing multiple frequency bands (i.e., using FDD and TDD techniques), or using ranging (timing adjustment).

Figure 16 is a chart describing the impact of various air interface structures on base-user initial handshaking negotiations and on time slot aggregation. The variables considered in Fig. 16 are whether the base station 304 operates in a ranging or non-ranging mode, whether the user station 302 has a diplexer, whether a forward link antenna probe signal is employed, and whether interleaved traffic streams are supported. The number of base time slots which must occur between each communication are shown under the heading "Number of Base Slots Forbidden

Between." The number is different for initial acquisition transactions, which appear under the sub-heading "GP/SP Negotiations" (GP referring to general polling messages, and SP referring to specific polling messages, as explained previously herein), and for traffic mode transactions, which appear under the heading "Same Mobile Traffic Slots." The latter number determines maximum slot aggregation, which appears in the last column (as a percentage of the total time frame).

10 From the Fig. 16 chart, it can be seen that supporting ranging transactions may require a system to take into consideration delays in initial acquisition transactions. Further, the ability to support ranging transactions may also impact slot aggregation potential.

15 This impact may be mitigated or eliminated if the user station 302 is outfitted with a diplexer, allowing the user station 302 to transmit and receive signals simultaneously.

Tables A-1 through A-28 (pp. 103-130) set forth illustrative high tier and low tier air interface specifications in more detail. In particular, specifications are provided for the air interfaces designated as 5.00 HT, 2.80 HF, 1.60 HF, 1.40 HF, 0.64 LF, 0.56 LF, and 0.35 LF in various configurations.

25 Figure 13C is a chart comparing preamble detection performance in high tier and low tier environments for a number of different air interfaces previously described. Longer preambles may be desired for asynchronous code separation, particularly in high tier applications.

30 Shorter preambles may suffice for selected non-spread low tier and unlicensed isochronous environments, particularly where larger average N reuse patterns are employed.

The Fig. 13C chart tabulates preamble detection performance in Rayleigh fading assuming use of three antennas and employment of antenna diversity techniques, wherein the strongest of the three antenna signals is selected for communication. For preamble detection, it is

desirable to have at least a 99.9% detection probability to ensure reliable communications and to prevent the preamble from becoming a link performance limiting factor. Antenna probe detections are not required to be as  
5 reliable because they are used only in diversity processing, so a failure to detect an antenna probe signal merely leads to a power increase command for the forward link.

Associated with each air interface type listed in the  
10 Fig. 13C chart is an exemplary preamble codeword length in the second column thereof, and an exemplary antenna probe codeword length (for each of three antenna probe signals in three-antenna diversity) in the fourth main column thereof. Codeword length is given in chips. The third  
15 main column and the fifth main column of the Fig. 13C chart compare detection performance for a 99.9% detection threshold and a 90% detection threshold, respectively, for the case of no sidelobe and a -7 dB peak sidelobe. As preamble codeword length decreases, relative cross-  
20 correlation power levels (i.e., the power difference between the peak autocorrelation power level and the cross-correlation power level) increase. Thus, the Fig. 13C chart shows that raising detection thresholds to reject cross-correlation sidelobes from other transmitters  
25 also leads to degraded preamble detection performance. A higher signal-to-noise ratio for the system may be necessary where preamble detection thresholds are raised.

A flexible, highly adaptable air interface system has thus far been described, having application to TDD and  
30 FDD/TDMA operations wherein either spread spectrum or narrowband signal techniques, or both, are employed. Basic timing elements for ranging transactions and traffic mode exchanges, including a provision for a control pulse preamble, are used in the definition of a suitable frame  
35 structure. The basic timing elements differ slightly for TDD and FDD/TDMA frame structures, as described with respect to Figs. 10A and 11A. The basic timing elements

may be used in either a fixed or interleaved format, and either zero offset format or an offset format, as previously described. The frame structures are suitable for use in high tier or low tier applications, and a  
5 single base station or user station may support more than one frame structure and more than one mode (e.g., spread spectrum or narrowband, or low or high tier).

Advantages exist with both the TDD and FDD/TDMA air interface structures. A TDD structure more readily  
10 supports asymmetric data rates between forward and reverse links by shifting a percentage of the timeline allocated to each link. A TDD structure allows for antenna diversity to be accomplished at the base station 304 for both the forward and reverse links since the propagation  
15 paths are symmetric with respect to multipath fading (but not necessarily interference). A TDD structure also permits simpler phased array antenna designs in high-gain base station installations because separate forward and reverse link manifold structures are not needed. Further,  
20 TDD systems are more able to share frequencies with existing fixed microwave (OFS) users because fewer frequency bands are needed.

An FDD/TDMA structure may reduce adjacent channel interference caused by other base or mobile transmissions.  
25 An FDD/TDMA system generally has 3 dB better sensitivity than a comparable TDD system, therefore potentially requiring fewer base stations and being less expensive to deploy. An FDD/TDMA structure may lessen sensitivity to multipath induced intersymbol interference because half  
30 the symbol rate is used as compared with TDD. Further, mobile units in an FDD/TDMA system may use less power and be cheaper to manufacture since bandwidths are halved, D/A and A/D conversion rates are halved, and RF related signal processing elements operate at half the speed. An  
35 FDD/TDMA system may require less frequency separation between adjacent high and low tier operations, and may allow base stations to operate without global

synchronization, particularly when in low tier modes. Digital range may also be increased in an FDD/TDMA system because the timelines are twice as drawn out.

Figure 18 is a block diagram of a particular low IF digital correlator for use in a receiver operating in conjunction with the air interface structures disclosed herein, although it should be noted that a variety of different correlators may be suitable for use in the various embodiments disclosed herein. In the Fig. 18 correlator, a received signal 1810 is provided to an analog-to-digital (A/D) converter 1811. The A/D converter 1811 preferably performs one or two bit A/D conversion and operates at roughly four times the code rate or higher. Thus, code rates of 1.023 MHz to 10.23 MHz result in sample rates for A/D converter 1811 in the range of 4 to 50 MHz.

The A/D converter 1811 outputs a digitized signal 1812, which is connected to two multipliers 1815 and 1816. A carrier numerically controlled oscillator (NCO) block 1821 and a vector mapping block 1820 operate in conjunction to provide an appropriate frequency for demodulation and downconversion to a low IF frequency. The vector mapping block 1820 outputs a sine signal 1813 and a cosine signal 1814 at the selected conversion frequency. The sine signal 1813 is connected to multiplier 1815, and the cosine signal 1816 is connected to multiplier 1816, so as to generate an I IF signal 1830 and a Q IF signal 1831. The I IF signal 1830 is connected to an I multiplier 1842, and the Q IF signal 1831 is connected to a Q multiplier 1843.

A code NCO block 1840 and a code mapping block 1841 operate in conjunction to provide a selected spread spectrum code 1846. The selected spread spectrum code 1846 is coupled to both the I multiplier 1842 and the Q multiplier 1843. The output of the I multiplier 1842 is connected to an I summer 1844 which counts the number of matches between the I IF signal 1030 and the selected

100

spread spectrum code 1846. The output of the Q multiplier 1843 is connected to an Q summer 1845 which counts the number of matches between the Q IF signal 1031 and the selected spread spectrum code 1846. The I summer 1844  
5 outputs an I correlation signal 1850, and the Q summer 1845 outputs a Q correlation signal 1851.

Alternatively, a zero IF digital correlator may be used instead of a low IF digital correlator. A zero IF digital correlator performs I and Q separation prior to  
10 A/D conversion, hence requiring the use of two A/D converters instead of one. The A/D converters for the zero IF correlator may operate at the code rate, instead of at four times the code rate as is done by A/D converter 1811.

15 Figure 19A is a block diagram of an exemplary dual-mode base station capable of operating over multiple frequencies and having both spread spectrum and narrowband communication capabilities. The base station block diagram of Fig. 19A includes a frequency plan architecture  
20 for use with a low IF digital transceiver ASIC 1920. The base station may employ an FDD technique wherein the user stations 302 transmit at the lower duplex frequency, and the base station 304 transmits at the higher duplex frequency. The base station of Fig. 19A preferably uses  
25 a direct synthesis digital CPM modulator, such as described, for example, in Kopta, "New Universal All Digital CPM Modulator," IEEE Trans. COM (April 1987).

The Fig. 19A dual-mode base station comprises an antenna 1901, preferably capable of operating at a 2 GHz  
30 frequency range. The antenna 1901 is connected to a diplexer 1910, which allows the base station to simultaneously transmit and receive signals through the antenna 1901. The transmitted and received signals are translated to appropriate frequencies generated by  
35 multiplying or dividing a master clock frequency output from a master oscillator 1921. The master oscillator 1921 generates a master frequency (e.g., 22.4 MHz) which is

provided to a clock divider circuit 1922 for dividing the master frequency by a predefined factor, e.g., 28. The master oscillator 1921 is also connected to another clock divider circuit 1926 which divides the master frequency by a programmable parameter M, determined by the physical layer with over which the base station operates. The output of clock divider circuit 1926 may be further divided down by another clock divider 1927 which divides by a programmable parameter M2, in order to support a second mode of operation over a different physical layer, if desired.

Signals to be transmitted are provided by ASIC 1920 to a digital-to-analog (D/A) converter 1933, which is clocked by a signal from clock divider circuit 1926. The output of the D/A converter 1933 is connected to a low pass filter 1934 to provide smoothing of the signal envelope. The low pass filter 1934 is connected to a multiplier 1936. An output from the clock divider circuit 1922 is connected to a frequency multiplier circuit 1935 which multiplies its input by a conversion factor, such as 462. The frequency multiplier circuit 1935 is connected to a multiplier 1936, which multiplies its inputs to generate an IF transmission signal 1941. The IF transmission signal 1941 is connected to a spread spectrum bandpass filter 1937 and a narrowband bandpass filter 1938. The spread spectrum bandpass filter 1937 is a wideband filter, while the narrowband bandpass filter 1938 operates over a relatively narrow bandwidth. The bandpass filters 1937 and 1938 filter out, among other things, CPM modulator spurs from the transmitter. A multiplexer 1939 selects between an output from the spread spectrum bandpass filter 1937 and an output from the narrowband bandpass filter 1938, depending upon the mode of operation of the base station.

Multiplexer 1939 is connected to a multiplier 1931. The clock divider circuit 1922 is connected to another clock divider circuit 1923, which divides its input by a

factor, e.g., of 4. The output of the clock divider circuit 1923 is connected to a frequency multiplier circuit 1930, which multiplies its input by a factor of  $(N + 400)$ , where  $N$  defines the frequency of the receiving channel, as further described herein. The frequency multiplier circuit 1930 is connected to the multiplier 1931, which multiplies its inputs to generate an output signal 1942. The output signal 1942 is connected to the diplexer 1910, which allows transmission of the output signal 1942 over the antenna 1901.

Signals received over the antenna 1901 pass through the diplexer 1910 and are provided to a multiplier 1951. Clock divider circuit 1923 is connected to a frequency multiplier circuit 1950, which multiplies its input by a factor of, e.g.,  $N$ . The frequency multiplier circuit 1950 is connected to multiplier 1951, which combines its inputs and generates a first IF signal 1944. The first IF signal 1944 is connected to a spread spectrum bandpass filter 1952 and a narrowband bandpass filter 1953. The spread spectrum bandpass filter 1952 is a wideband filter, while the narrowband bandpass filter 1953 operates over a relatively narrow bandwidth. The bandpass filters 1952 and 1953 remove image noise and act as anti-aliasing filters. A multiplexer 1954 selects between an output from the spread spectrum bandpass filter 1952 and an output from the narrowband bandpass filter 1953.

Multiplexer 1954 is connected to a multiplier 1960. An output from frequency multiplier circuit 1935 is also connected to multiplier 1960, which outputs a final IF signal 1946. The final IF signal 1946 is connected to a low pass filter 1961 and thereafter to an A/D converter 1962. The A/D converter 1962 is clocked at a rate determined by the clock divider circuit 1926. The output of the A/D converter is provided to ASIC 1920 for correlation and further processing. In particular, the received signal may be processed by the low IF correlator



shown in Fig. 18 and described above, in which case A/D converter 1961 may be the same as A/D converter 1811.

Typically, due to cost and equipment constraints, only one narrowband and one spread spectrum mode will be supported, although as many modes as needed can be supported by a single base station by providing similar additional hardware.

Figure 19B is a chart showing selected frequencies and other parameters for use in the dual-mode base station of Fig. 19A. The Fig. 19B chart is divided according to spread spectrum and narrowband modes. The first three columns relate to different transmission rates using spread spectrum techniques, and the latter four columns relate to different transmission rates using narrowband techniques. The frequencies in each column are given in megahertz. The master oscillator frequency is designated in Fig. 19B as  $f_0$ . M and M2 are programmable divide ratios for clock divider circuits 1926 and 1927. The sample rate in Fig. 19B applies to the A/D converter 1962 and D/A converter 1933. The  $F_s/(1B+F_{ch})$  figure represents the sampling ratio. The final IF frequency and second IF frequency are the center frequencies of the bandpass filters. Towards the bottom of Fig. 19B are sample first LO and N numbers for three different input frequencies, 1850 MHz, 1850.2 MHz, and 1930 MHz.

The frequencies and other parameters appearing in the Fig. 19B chart may be selected by use of a microprocessor or other software controller, which may refer to the system timing information or clocks as necessary to coordinate the time of switching the selected frequencies and other parameters when necessary.

A user station 302 may be designed in a similar fashion to the dual-mode base station of Figs. 19A-B, except that a user station 304 may not require a diplexer 1910 in air interface structures wherein the user station 302 does not need to transmit and receive simultaneously. Also, frequency multiplier circuits 1930 and 1950 would be

swapped because the user station 302 transmits and receives on the opposite frequency bands from the base station 304.

## 5 Alternative Embodiments

While preferred embodiments are disclosed herein, many variations are possible which remain within the concept and scope of the invention, and these variations would become clear to one of ordinary skill in the art after perusal of the specification, drawings and claims herein.

For example, although several embodiments have generally been described with reference to spread spectrum communication, the invention is not limited to spread spectrum communication techniques. In some narrowband applications, no preamble would be required as code synchronization is not an issue (although synchronization within a TDD or TDMA structure would still be necessary).

Moreover, while the control pulse preamble described with respect to Figs. 10A-E and 11A-D facilitates operation in some environments, these embodiments may also be implemented without the control pulse preamble. The various functions carried out by the control pulse preamble (e.g., power control, antenna selection, and the like) may be accomplished by analyzing other portions of the user transmission, or may not be necessary.

In an alternative embodiment, one or more system control channels are used so as to facilitate paging of and other transactions with user stations 302 operating within a covered region. In this embodiment, the control channel or channels provide base station or system information including traffic information at neighboring base stations to assist in handoff determinations, system identification and ownership information, open time slot information, antenna scan and gain parameters, and base station loading status. The control channel or channels may also specify user station operating parameters (e.g.,

timer counts, or actionable thresholds for power control, handoff, and the like), provide incoming call alerting (e.g., paging), provide time frame or other synchronization, and allocate system resources (e.g., time slots).

In heavy traffic (i.e., where a substantial portion of time slots are in use), it may be beneficial to dedicate a fixed time slot to handling paging transactions so as to minimize user station standby time. Further, a fixed paging time slot may eliminate the need for periodically transmitting a general polling message from the base station in various time slots when open, and thereby eliminate possible interference between polling messages from the base station 304 and forward link traffic transmissions. System information is preferably broadcast over the fixed paging time slot at or near full power so as to enable user stations 302 at a variety of ranges to hear and respond to the information.

This alternative embodiment may be further modified by outfitting the user stations 302 with selection diversity antennas and eliminating the user of control pulse preamble transmissions. Two preambles may be sent on the forward link, rather than using a control pulse preamble followed by a reverse link transmission followed by another forward link transmission. A comparison of such a structure with the previous described embodiments is shown in Fig. 17. In Fig. 17, the air interface type is identified in the first column as before, but with a trailing "D" indicating a user station 302 having a selection diversity antenna, and a trailing "P" indicating a user station 302 having no diversity selection antenna but employing a control pulse preamble (or "PCP"). As shown in the Fig. 17 chart, digital range is improved for the alternative embodiment employing a diversity antenna, or the number of time slots may be increased. These gains accrue because elimination of the pulse control preamble increases time available in each time frame, which may be

devoted to expanding the serviceable range or increasing the number of available time slots.

In another alternative embodiment, user transmissions are conducted before base transmissions. In this embodiment, no control pulse preamble may be needed as the base station 304 obtains information relating to mobile power and channel quality by analyzing the user transmission. However, in such an embodiment, there is a longer delay from when the base station 304 issues an adjustment command to the user station 302 until the user station actually effectuates the adjustment command in the following time frame, thereby increasing latency in the control loop. Whether or not the control loop latency adversely impacts performance depends on the system requirements.

In addition to the above modifications, inventions described herein may be made or used in conjunction with inventions described, in whole or in part, in the following patents or co-pending applications, each of which is hereby incorporated by reference as if fully set forth herein:

U.S. Patent 5,016,255, issued in the name of inventors Robert C. Dixon and Jeffrey S. Vanderpool, entitled "Asymmetric Spread Spectrum Correlator";

U.S. Patent 5,022,047, issued in the name of inventors Robert C. Dixon and Jeffrey S. Vanderpool, entitled "Spread Spectrum Correlator";

U.S. Patent 5,285,469, issued in the name of inventor Jeffrey S. Vanderpool, entitled "Spread Spectrum Wireless Telephone System";

U.S. Patent 5,291,516, issued in the name of inventors Robert C. Dixon and Jeffrey S. Vanderpool, entitled "Dual Mode Transmitter and Receiver";

U.S. Patent No. 5,402,413, issued in the name of inventor Robert C. Dixon, entitled "Three Cell Wireless Communication System";

5 U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/161,187, filed December 3, 1993, in the name of inventor Robert C. Dixon, entitled "Method and Apparatus for Establishing Spread Spectrum Communication";

10 U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/146,491, filed November 1, 1993, in the name of inventors Robert A. Gold and Robert C. Dixon, entitled "Despreading/Demodulating Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum Signals";

15 U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/293,671, filed August 18, 1994, in the name of inventors Robert C. Dixon, Jeffrey S. Vanderpool, and Douglas G. Smith, entitled "Multi-Mode, Multi-Band Spread Spectrum Communication System";

20

U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/293,671 filed on August 1, 1994, in the name of inventors Gary B. Anderson, Ryan N. Jensen, Bryan K. Petch, and Peter O. Peterson, entitled "PCS Pocket Phone/Microcell Communication Over-Air Protocol";

25

U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/304,091, filed September 1, 1994, in the name of inventors Randy Durrant and Mark Burbach, entitled "Coherent and Noncoherent CPM Correlation Method and Apparatus";

30

U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/334,587, filed November 3, 1994, in the name of inventor Logan Scott, entitled "Antenna Diversity Techniques"; and

35

U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/383,518, filed February 3, 1995, Lyon & Lyon Docket No. 201/081, in the name of inventor Logan Scott, entitled "Spread Spectrum Correlation Using SAW Device."

5

It is also noted that variations in the transmission portion 502 of the time frame 501 may be employed. For example, systems employing error correction on the forward link (i.e., the base transmission) may interleave data  
10 destined for different user stations 302 across the entire burst of the transmission portion 502.

## Spread TDD

Link Designer 3  
PDD Setup for page 145 Operation

		TDD, Spread M-ary with 5.000 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps		TDD, Spread M-ary with Big Slots 5.000 MHz Chip Rate 25.0 x 8.00 kbps		TDD, Spread M-ary Var Slots, Ranging 5.000 MHz Chip Rate		TDD, Spread M-ary Var Slots, Linked 5.000 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps	
	Slotting Efficiency:	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
5	2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	625.00	625.00	800.00	800.00	625.00	625.00	625.00	625.00
	Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Base T/R Switch Time (usec):	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
10	Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
	Total Switch Time (usec):	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20
15	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0	0	0	0	0	0	102.5	102.5
	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	20.50	20.50
	Max Range Bin Step Size (mi):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	1.91	1.91
	Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	19.20	60.20	60.20
20	Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
	TDD Max Cell Radius (mi):	1.91	1.91	10.06	10.06	8.47	8.47	0.00	0.00
	Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	41.00	41.00	216.00	216.00	181.80	181.80	0.00	0.00
	Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):	205.00	205.00	1080.00	1080.00	909.00	909.00	0.00	0.00
	Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	102.50	102.50	540.00	540.00	454.50	454.50	0.00	0.00
	Total Guard Time (usec):	60.20	60.20	235.20	235.20	201.00	201.00	60.20	60.20
	Slot Structure Efficiency:	90.37%	90.37%	70.60%	70.60%	67.84%	67.84%	90.37%	90.37%

Table A-1





111

## Spread TDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):		291.20	273.60	291.20	273.60	220.80	203.20	291.20	273.60
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		8	8	8	8	5.25	5.25	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		256	256	200	200	168	168	256	256
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:		32	32	25	25	21	21	32	32
Superframe Duration (msec):		20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:		3125		4000		3125		3125	
Chip Duration (usec):		0.20		0.20		0.20		0.20	
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):		(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-2

112

## Spread TDD

5	Base Tx Preamble START:	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0
	Base Tx Preamble END:	11.20	56	11.20	56	11.20	56	11.20	56
	Base Tx Message START:	11.20	56	11.20	56	11.20	56	11.20	56
	Base Tx Message END:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
	Base Tx Antenna Message START:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
10	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) START:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) END:	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368	273.60	1368
	Base T->R Switch START:	280.00	1400	280.00	1400	280.00	1400	280.00	1400
	Base T->R Switch END:	280.00	1400	280.00	1400	280.00	1400	280.00	1400
	Base Rx Preamble START:	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456
15	Base Rx Preamble END:	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456
	Base Rx Message START:	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456	291.20	1456
	Base Rx Message END:	553.60	2768	553.60	2768	553.60	2768	553.60	2768
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 START:	553.60	2768	553.60	2768	553.60	2768	553.60	2768
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 END:	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5
20	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 START:	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 END:	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5	574.10	2870.5
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) START:	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5	580.50	2902.5
25	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) END:	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 START:	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5	598.10	2990.5
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 END:	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch START:	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093	618.60	3093
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch END:	625.00	3125	625.00	3125	625.00	3125	625.00	3125
	Leftovers (Better be Zero):	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0

Table A-2

## Spread TDD

## Data Rates/RF Channel:

5	BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz):	5000	5000	5000	5000	5000	5000	5000	5000
	Frequency Rouse Factor (N):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz):	15000	15000	15000	15000	15000	15000	15000	15000
	S/I (dB):	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
	Noise Figure G 290K (dB):	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
	Antenna Temperature (K):	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300
	Sys kt inc. NF (dBm/Hz):	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9
	Sys kt inc. NF (mW/kHz):	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14
10	Implementation Loss (dB):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	1/(S.BW) (num):	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05	5E-05
15	M-ary NonCoher Format:	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Bits per Symbol:	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
	Required Frame Error Rate:	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02
	Frame Length for Kb/No Calc. (bits):	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
	Actual Eqv. Frame Length (bits):	205	205	205	205	205	205	205	205
	Antenna Diversity Factor:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Rake Diversity Factor:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
20	Required Eb/No (dB):	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897
	1/Eb/NoL (num):	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962
25	Sensitivity in S/I (dBm):	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05	-97.05
	Sensitivity, Therm Noise Only (dBm):	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00	-100.00
	S/I Induced Sensitivity Loss (dB):	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95
	Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW):	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10	2E-10
	Max Simplex Data Rate (kbps):	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25	781.25
	Max Simplex Symbol Rate (kps):	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25	156.25
	Chips per Symbol:	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00
	Symbol Duration (usec):	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400	6.400
30	Chips per Bit:	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
	Processing Gain per bit (dB):	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06

Table A-3

Spread TDD

S	S/(N+1) into A/D (dB) > S/N into A/D (dB):	2.93		2.93		2.93		2.93		2.93		2.93	
		5.88		5.88		5.88		5.88		5.88		5.88	
5	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps):	353.00	353.00	275.78	275.78	275.78	275.78	265.00	265.00	265.00	265.00	353.00	353.00
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps):	353.00	353.00	275.78	275.78	275.78	275.78	265.00	265.00	265.00	265.00	353.00	353.00
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB):		0.00				0.00		0.00		0.00		0.00

Table A-3



116

## Spread FDD

Link Designer 3  
FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

	FDD, Spread M-ary Var Var Slots, Ranging 2.800 MHz Chip Rate	FDD, Spread M-ary Var Slots, Linked 2.800 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps	FDD, Spread M-ary with Small Slots 2.800 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps	FDD, Spread M-ary with Big Slots 2.800 MHz Chip Rate 28.0 x 8.00 kbps
Slotting Efficiency:	Reverse Link Link	Reverse Link Link	Reverse Link Link	Reverse Link Link
5	2-way Message Frame Duration (usec): Base T/R Switch Time (chips): Base T/R Switch Time (usec): Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips): Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec): Base R/T Switch Time (chips): Base R/T Switch Time (usec): Total Switch Time (usec):	625.00 0 0.00 32 11.43 0.00 32 11.43 22.86	625.00 0 0.00 32 11.43 0.00 32 11.43 22.86	625.00 0 0.00 32 11.43 0.00 32 11.43 22.86
10		625.00 0 0.00 32 11.43 0.00 32 11.43 22.86	625.00 0 0.00 32 11.43 0.00 32 11.43 22.86	625.00 0 0.00 32 11.43 0.00 32 11.43 22.86
15	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips): Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec): Max Range Bin Step Size (mi): Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	0 0.00 0.00 22.86	0 0.00 0.00 22.86	0 0.00 0.00 22.86
20	Number of 2-way TDD Guards: TDD Max Cell Radius (mi): Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec): Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips): Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips): Total Guard Time (usec): Slot Structure Efficiency:	1 13.67 146.79 411.00 411.00 169.64 72.86	2 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 65.00 89.60	1 -0.00 -0.00 -0.00 -0.00 52.14 91.66

Table A-5

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)



## Spread FDD

	Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	434.29	572.86	560.00	572.86	560.00	572.86	560.00	572.86
	One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
	Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	168	256	256	256	256	256	224	224
5	Max# of Voice Channels per RF Channel:	21	32	32	32	32	32	28	28
	Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
	Chips/Slot:	1750		1750		1750		2000	
	Chip Duration (usec):	0.36		0.36		0.36		0.36	
10	Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-6



119

## Spread FDD

5	Base Tx Preamble START:	0.00	0	112	0.00	0	112	0.00	0	112	0.00	0	112
	Base Tx Preamble END:	40.00	112	0	40.00	112	0	40.00	112	0	40.00	112	0
	Base Tx Message START:	40.00	112	0	40.00	112	0	40.00	112	0	40.00	112	0
	Base Tx Message END:	508.57	1424	1312	508.57	1424	1312	508.57	1424	1312	508.57	1424	1312
	Base Tx Antenna Message START:	508.57	1424	0	508.57	1424	0	508.57	1424	0	508.57	1424	0
	Base Tx Antenna Message END:	572.86	1604	180	572.86	1604	180	572.86	1604	180	572.86	1604	180
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) START:	572.86	1604	0	572.86	1604	0	572.86	1604	0	572.86	1604	0
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) END:	613.57	1718	114	613.57	1718	114	613.57	1718	114	613.57	1718	114
10	Base T->R Switch START:	613.57	1718	0	613.57	1718	0	613.57	1718	0	613.57	1718	0
	Base T->R Switch END:	625.00	1750	32	625.00	1750	32	625.00	1750	32	625.00	1750	32
	Base Rx Preamble START:	625.00	1750	0	625.00	1750	0	625.00	1750	0	625.00	1750	0
	Base Rx Preamble END:	665.00	1862	112	665.00	1862	112	665.00	1862	112	665.00	1862	112
	Base Rx Message START:	665.00	1862	0	665.00	1862	0	665.00	1862	0	665.00	1862	0
	Base Rx Message END:	1007.86	2822	960	1007.86	2822	960	1007.86	2822	960	1007.86	2822	960
15	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 START:	1007.86	2822	0	1007.86	2822	0	1007.86	2822	0	1007.86	2822	0
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 END:	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411	1154.64	3233	411
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 START:	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 END:	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) START:	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0	1154.64	3233	0
20	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) END:	1166.07	3265	32	1166.07	3265	32	1166.07	3265	32	1166.07	3265	32
	Base Rx PCP START:	1166.07	3265	0	1166.07	3265	0	1166.07	3265	0	1166.07	3265	0
	Base Rx PCP END:	1217.50	3409	144	1217.50	3409	144	1217.50	3409	144	1217.50	3409	144
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 START:	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 END:	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0
25	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0	1217.50	3409	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	1238.57	3468	59	1238.57	3468	59	1238.57	3468	59	1238.57	3468	59
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch START:	1238.57	3468	0	1238.57	3468	0	1238.57	3468	0	1238.57	3468	0
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch END:	1250.00	3500	32	1250.00	3500	32	1250.00	3500	32	1250.00	3500	32
	Leftovers (Better be Zero):	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0

Table A-6

120

## Spread FDD

## Data Rates/RF Channel:

5	BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz):	2800	2800	2800	2800	2800	2800	2800	2800
	Frequency Rouse Factor (N):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz):	16800	16800	16800	16800	16800	16800	16800	16800
	S/I (dB):	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
	Noise Figure G 290K (dB):	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
10	Antenna Temperature (K):	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300
	Sys KT inc. NF (dBm/Hz):	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9	-169.9
	Sys KT inc. NF (mW/kHz):	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14	1E-14
	Implementation Loss (dB):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	I/(S.BW) (num):	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05	9E-05
15	M-ary NonCoher Format:	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	32
	Bits per Symbol:	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
	Required Frame Error Rate:	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02	1.0E-02
	Frame Length for Kb/No Calc. (bits):	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
	Actual Eqv. Frame Length (bits):	150	150	150	150	150	150	150	150
20	Antenna Diversity Factor:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Rake Diversity Factor:	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Required Eb/No (dB):	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897	7.9897
	1/Eb/NoL (num):	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962	0.07962
	Sensitivity in S/I (dBm):	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57	-99.57
25	Sensitivity, Therm Noise Only (dBm):	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52	-102.52
	S/I Induced Sensitivity Loss (dB):	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95	2.95
	Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW):	1.1E-10	1.1E-10	1.1E-10	1.1E-10	1.1E-10	1.1E-10	1.1E-10	1.1E-10
	Max Simplex Data Rate (kbps):	437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50	437.50
	Max Simplex Symbol Rate (ksps):	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5
30	Chips per Symbol:	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00	32.00
	Symbol Duration (usecl):	11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429	11.429
	Chips per Bit:	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40	6.40
	Processing Gain per bit (dB):	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06	8.06

Table A-7

## Spread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB):	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93
	S/N into A/D (dB):	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps):	159.38	200.50	196.00	200.50	200.50	200.50	171.50	175.44
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps):	159.38	200.50	196.00	200.50	200.50	200.50	171.50	175.44
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB):		0.00		0.00		0.00		0.00

Table A-7



Spread FDD

5	Num Geographic Sectors (1 Base/Sector):	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	Sector Loss Due to Antenna Overlap:	15.04	15.04	15.04	15.04	15.04	15.04	15.04	15.04
	Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity:	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55
	Total Number of RF Channels at Site:	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
	14 GOS Erlangs Handeled at Site:	28.64	49.19	49.19	49.19	49.19	49.19	49.19	49.19
	24 GOS Erlangs Handeled at Site:	31.32	52.94	52.94	52.94	52.94	52.94	52.94	52.94

Table A-8

## Spread FDD

## Link Designer 3

## FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

FDD, Spread M-ary Var Slots, Linked 1.600 MHz Chip Rate 20.0 x 8.00 Kbps		FDD, Spread M-ary with Small Slots 1.600 MHz Chip Rate 20.0 x 8.00 Kbps		FDD, Spread M-ary with Big Slots 1.600 MHz Chip Rate 16.0 x 8.00 Kbps	
Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
1000.00	1000.00	1000.00	1000.00	1250.00	1250.00
0	24	0	24	0	24
0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00
24	0	24	0	24	0
15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00
24	0	24	0	24	0
15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00	15.00	0.00
30.00	15.00	30.00	15.00	30.00	15.00
0	90	0	90	0	490
0.00	56.25	12.50	56.25	0.00	306.25
0.00	5.24	1.16	5.24	0.00	28.52
30.00	71.25	55.00	71.25	30.00	321.25
1	1	2	1	2	1
21.66	0.00	0.00	0.00	12.81	0.00
232.50	0.00	0.00	0.00	275.00	0.00
372.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	440.00	0.00
372.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	220.00	0.00
262.50	71.25	55.00	71.25	305.00	321.25
73.75	92.88	94.50	92.88	75.60	74.30

Table A-9

## Slotting Efficiency:

5	2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	Base T/R Switch Time (usec):	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	Total Switch Time (usec):
		0	24	0	15.00	0	0.00	15.00
		0.00	15.00	24	0	15.00	0.00	30.00
10	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0	90	0	56.25	0	0.00	56.25
	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	5.24	0.00	71.25	0.00	0.00	71.25
15	Max Range Bin Step Size (m):	30.00	71.25	30.00	71.25	30.00	71.25	71.25
	Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	21.66	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	TDD Max Cell Radius (m):	232.50	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	372.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
20	Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):	372.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	262.50	71.25	262.50	71.25	262.50	71.25	71.25
	Total Guard Time (usec):	73.75	92.88	73.75	92.88	73.75	92.88	92.88
	Slot Structure Efficiency:							



## Spread FDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):		725.00	928.75	945.00	928.75	945.00	928.75	945.00	928.75	945.00	928.75
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):		105	160	160	160	160	160	160	160	160	160
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:		13.125	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Superframe Duration (msec):		20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:		1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600
Chip Duration (usec):		0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):											
		(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-10







## Spread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB) :	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93
	S/N into A/D (dB) :	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps) :	92.19	116.09	118.13	116.09	118.13	116.09	118.13	116.09
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps) :	92.19	116.09	118.13	116.09	118.13	116.09	118.13	116.09
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB) :		0.00		0.00		0.00		0.00

Table A-11

130

## Spread FDD

**Voice Channel/GOS Calculations:**

	Vocoder Rate (kbps) :				Vocoder Rate per Vocoder (kbps) :				Vocoder Rate per Voice Circuit (kbps) :				
	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00
5	Number of RP Channels/Sector: 1 1 1 1												
	Deployed System Bandwidth (MHz) :				Max Number Voice Channels Supported:				Percentage of Handsets in TSI/HO:				
	9.60	9.60	9.60	9.60	13.1	20.0	20.0	20.0	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%
10	Erlangs Supported at 1% GOS:				Erlangs Supported at 2% GOS:				Single Tandem Framing Delay (msec) :				
	5.78	10.53	10.53	10.53	5.78	10.53	10.53	10.53	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00
	6.48	11.53	11.53	11.53	6.48	11.53	11.53	11.53	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00
	Base Station Transmit Duty Cycle:				Handset Single Slot Tx Duty Cycle:				Capacity Calculations:				
	92.88%	92.88%	92.88%	92.88%	5.52%	5.52%	4.73%	4.73%	92.88%	92.88%	92.88%	92.88%	92.88%
15	Handset Peak Transmit Power (mW) :				Handset Average Transmit Power (mW) :				Handset Antenna Gain (dBi) :				
	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	16.57	16.57	14.18	14.18	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
20	Base Peak Transmit Power (mW) :				Base Average Transmit Power (mW) :				Base Antenna Gain (dBi) :				
	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	278.63	278.63	24.5	24.5	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00
25	Num Geographic Sectors (1 Base/Sector) :				Sector Loss Due to Antenna Overlap:				Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity:				
	3	3	3	3	15.0%	15.0%	2.55	2.55	3	3	3	3	3
	Total Number of RF Channels at Site:				1% GOS Erlangs Handled at Site:				2% GOS Erlangs Handled at Site:				
	3	3	3	3	14.74	26.84	26.84	26.84	29.41	29.41	29.41	29.41	29.41
	16.52	29.41	29.41	29.41	15.0%	15.0%	2.55	2.55	14.18	14.18	14.18	14.18	14.18
	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	19.80	19.80	19.80	19.80	21.93	21.93	21.93	21.93	21.93

Table A-12

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

131

## Spread FDD

## Link Designer 3

FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

## Slotting Efficiency:

5	2-way Message Frame Duration (usec): Base T/R Switch Time (chips): Base T/R Switch Time (usec): Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips): Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec): Base R/T Switch Time (chips): Base R/T Switch Time (usec): Total Switch Time (usec):	Reverse Link 1250.00 0 0.00 17.14 0 17.14 17.14 34.29	Forward Link 1250.00 24 17.14 0 0 0 0 17.14	Reverse Link 1250.00 0 0.00 17.14 0 17.14 17.14 34.29	Forward Link 1250.00 24 17.14 0 0 0 0 17.14	Reverse Link 1428.57 0 0.00 17.14 0 17.14 17.14 34.29	Forward Link 1428.57 24 17.14 0 0 0 0 17.14
10	Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips): Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec): Max Range Bin Step Size (mi): Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	0 0.00 0.00 34.29	212 151.43 14.10 168.57	67 47.86 4.46 130.00	212 151.43 14.10 168.57	0 0.00 0.00 34.29	462 330.00 30.74 347.14
15	Number of 2-way TDD Guards: TDD Max Cell Radius (mi): Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec): Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips): Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips): Total Guard Time (usec): Slot Structure Efficiency:	1 27.88 299.29 419.00 419.00 333.57 73.31	1 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 168.57 86.51	2 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 130.00 89.60	1 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 168.57 86.51	2 4.46 95.71 134.00 67.00 130.00 89.60	1 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 308.57 75.70
20							

Table A-13

## Spread FDD

	# of Ant Probes to Send (Forward Link) :	0	3	0	3	0	0
	Base Antenna Probe Length (chips) :	28	28	28	28	28	28
	Antenna Switch Time (chips) :	2	2	2	2	2	2
	Total Chips per Antenna Word (chips) :	30	30	30	30	30	30
5	PCP Sync Word Length (chips) :	112	0	112	0	112	0
	Antenna Select (symbols) :	1	0	1	0	1	0
	Antenna Select (bits) :	5	0	5	0	5	0
	PCP Duration (chips) :	144	0	144	0	144	0
10	Sync Word Length (chips) :	112	112	112	112	112	112
	Overhead Length (chips) :	256	202	256	202	256	202
	Header Message Length (bits) :	21	21	21	21	21	21
	D-Channel Message Length (bits) :	8	8	8	8	8	8
	B-Channel Message Length (bits) :	105	160	160	160	160	160
	R-Channel Message Length (bits) :	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	CRC Bits in Traffic Mode (bits) :	16	16	16	16	16	16
	Simplex Message Length (bits) :	150	205	205	205	205	205
	Simplex Message Length (symbols) :	30	41	41	41	41	41
	Simplex Message Length (chips) :	960	1312	1312	1312	1312	1312
	Total Number of Chips:	1216	1514	1568	1514	1568	1514

Table A-13

## Spread FDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	868.57	1081.43	1120.00	1081.43	1120.00	1081.43	1120.00	1081.43	1120.00	1081.43
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	84	128	128	128	128	128	128	128	128	128
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:	10.5	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16
Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:	1750		1750		1750		1750		1750	
Chip Duration (usec):	0.71		0.71		0.71		0.71		0.71	
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-14





## Spread FDD

## Data Rates/RF Channel:

5	BW per RF Channel/Chip Rate (kHz): Frequency Rouse Factor (N): Minimum System Bandwidth (kHz): S/I (dB): Noise Figure G 290K (dB): Antenna Temperature (K): Sys kt inc. NF (dBm/Hz): Sys kt inc. NF (mW/kHz): Implementation Loss (dB): I/(S·BW) (num):	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018	1400 3 8400 6 4 300 -169.9 1E-14 3 0.00018
10	M-ary NonCoher Format: Bits per Symbol: Required Frame Error Rate: Frame Length for Kb/No Calc. (bits): Actual Eqv. Frame Length (bits): Antenna Diversity Factor: Rake Diversity Factor: Required Eb/No (dB): 1/Eb/NoL (num):	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962	32 5 1.0E-02 200 150 2 2 7.9897 0.07962
15	Sensitivity in S/I (dBm): Sensitivity, Therm Noise Only (dBm): S/I Induced Sensitivity Loss (dB): Required Sensitivity in S/I (mW): Max Simplex Data Rate (kbps): Max Simplex Symbol Rate (kaps): Chips per Symbol: Symbol Duration (usec): Chips per Bit: Processing Gain per bit (dB):	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06	-102.58 -105.53 2.95 5.5E-11 218.75 43.75 32.00 22.857 6.40 8.06
20										
25										
30										

Table A-15

## Spread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB):	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93	2.93
	S/N into A/D (dB):	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88	5.88
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps):	80.19	94.63	98.00	94.63	94.63	82.80
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps):	80.19	94.63	98.00	94.63	94.63	82.80
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB):		0.00		0.00	0.00	0.00

Table A-15



138

## Unspread FDD

## Link Designer 3

FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

FDD, No Spread Var Slots, Ranging 0.640 MHz Chip Rate 26.3 x 8.00 kbps

FDD, No Spread Var Slots, Ranging 0.640 MHz Chip Rate 40.0 x 8.00 kbps

FDD, No Spread with Small Slots 0.640 MHz Chip Rate 40.0 x 8.00 kbps

FDD, No Spread with Big Slots 0.640 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps

## Slotting Efficiency:

	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
5	500.00	500.00	500.00	500.00	500.00	500.00
2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	0	8	0	8	0	8
Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	0.00	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00	12.50
Base T/R Switch Time (usec):	8	0	8	0	8	0
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	8	0	8	0	8	0
Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00	12.50	0.00
Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	25.00	12.50	25.00	12.50	25.00	12.50
Total Switch Time (usec):	0	34	0	34	0	114
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0.00	53.13	0.00	53.13	0.00	178.13
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	4.95	0.00	4.95	0.00	16.59
Max Range Bin Step Size (mi):	25.00	65.63	25.00	65.63	25.00	190.63
Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	1	2	1	2	1	1
Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	10.77	0.00	10.77	0.00	10.77	0.00
TDD Max Cell Radius (mi):	115.63	0.00	115.63	0.00	115.63	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	74.00	0.00	74.00	0.00	74.00	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):	74.00	0.00	74.00	0.00	74.00	0.00
Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	140.63	65.63	140.63	65.63	140.63	65.63
Total Guard Time (usec):	71.881	86.881	71.881	86.881	71.881	86.881
Slot Structure Efficiency:	83.131	86.881	83.131	86.881	83.131	86.881

Table A-17



## Unspread FDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	329.69	434.38	415.63	434.38	415.63	434.38	415.63	434.38
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	210	320	320	320	320	320	320	320
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:	26.25	40	40	40	40	40	40	40
Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:	320	320	320	320	320	320	320	320
Chip Duration (usec):	1.56	1.56	1.56	1.56	1.56	1.56	1.56	1.56
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-18







## Unspread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB):	13.64	13.64	24.27	24.27	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	S/N into A/D (dB):	13.64	13.64	24.28	24.28	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps):	230.00	278.00	266.00	278.00	278.00	266.00	212.80	222.40
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps):	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps):	230.00	278.00	266.00	278.00	278.00	266.00	212.80	222.40
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB):		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00			0.00

Table A-19

**Voice Channel/GDS Calculations:**

5	Vocoder Rate (kbps) :	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00
	Overhead Rate per Vocoder (Kbps) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Data Rate per Voice Circuit (Kbps) :	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	8.00
	Number of RP Channels/Sector:	1	1	1	1	1	1
	Deployed System Bandwidth (MHz) :	7.68	7.68	7.68	7.68	7.68	7.68
	Max Number Voice Channels Supported:	26.3	40.0	40.0	40.0	32.0	32.0
	Percentage of Handsets in TSI/HO:	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%	25.00%
	Erlangs Supported at 1% GOS:	14.84	25.38	25.38	25.38	19.29	19.29
	Erlangs Supported at 2% GOS:	16.09	27.12	27.12	27.12	20.76	20.76
	Single Tandem Framing Delay (msec) :	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00	20.00
	Dual Tandem Framing Delay (msec) :	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00	40.00
	Base Station Transmit Duty Cycle:	86.88%	86.88%	86.88%	86.88%	69.50%	69.50%
	Handset Single Slot Tx Duty Cycle:	2.51%	2.08%	2.08%	2.08%	2.08%	2.08%
15	Capacity Calculations:		(dbm)	(dbm)	(dbm)		(dbm)
	Handset Peak Transmitt Power (mW) :	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00
	Handset Average Transmitt Power (mW) :	7.54	6.23	6.23	6.23	6.23	6.23
	Handset Antenna Gain (dBD) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Base Peak Transmitt Power (mW) :	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00	300.00
	Base Average Transmitt Power (mW) :	260.63	260.63	260.63	260.63	208.50	208.50
	Base Antenna Gain (dBD) :	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00	17.00
20	Num Geographic Sectors (1 Base/Sector) :	3	3	3	3	3	3
	Sector Loss Due to Antenna Overlap:	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%	15.0%
	Net Sectorization Gain in Capacity:	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55	2.55
	Total Number of RP Channels at Site:	3	3	3	3	3	3
	1% GOS Erlangs Handeled at Site:	37.84	64.72	64.72	64.72	49.19	49.19
	2% GOS Erlange Haneled at Site:	41.02	69.16	69.16	69.16	52.94	52.94
25							

Table A-20

145

## Unspread FDD

Link Designer 3  
FDD Setup for page 145 Operation

† FDD, No Spread Var Slots, No Spread with Small Slots, ranging 0.560 MHz Chip Rate  
FDD, No Spread with Big Slots, 0.560 MHz Chip Rate 32.0 x 8.00 kbps

## Slotting Efficiency:

	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link	Reverse Link	Forward Link
2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):	571.43	571.43	571.43	571.43	571.43	571.43
Base T/R Switch Time (chips):	0	8	0	8	0	8
Base T/R Switch Time (usec):	0.00	14.29	0.00	14.29	0.00	14.29
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):	8	0	8	0	8	0
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):	14.29	0.00	14.29	0.00	14.29	0.00
Base R/T Switch Time (chips):	8	0	8	0	8	0
Base R/T Switch Time (usec):	14.29	0.00	14.29	0.00	14.29	0.00
Total Switch Time (usec):	28.57	14.29	28.57	14.29	28.57	14.29
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):	0	34	19	34	0	34
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):	0.00	60.71	33.93	60.71	0.00	60.71
Max Range Bin Step Size (mi):	0.00	5.66	3.16	5.66	0.00	5.66
Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):	28.57	75.00	96.43	75.00	28.57	75.00
Number of 2-way TDD Guards:	1	1	2	1	2	1
TDD Max Cell Radius (mi):	12.31	0.00	0.00	0.00	3.16	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):	132.14	0.00	0.00	0.00	67.86	0.00
Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):	74.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	38.00	0.00
Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):	74.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	38.00	0.00
Total Guard Time (usec):	160.71	75.00	96.43	75.00	96.43	75.00
Slot Structure Efficiency:	71.88%	86.88%	83.13%	86.88%	83.13%	86.88%

Table A-21

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)



## Unspread FDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	376.79	496.43	475.00	496.43	475.00	496.43	475.00	496.43
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	183.75	280	280	280	280	280	280	280
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:	22.9688	35	35	35	35	35	35	35
Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chips/Slot:	320	320	320	320	320	320	320	320
Chip Duration (usec):	1.79	1.79	1.79	1.79	1.79	1.79	1.79	1.79
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

5

Table A-22

## Unspread FDD

5	Base Tx Preamble START:	0.00	0	28	0.00	0	28	0.00	0	28	0.00	0	28
	Base Tx Preamble END:	50.00	28	28	50.00	28	28	50.00	28	28	50.00	28	28
	Base Tx Message START:	50.00	28	0	50.00	28	0	50.00	28	0	50.00	28	0
	Base Tx Message END:	416.07	233	205	416.07	233	205	416.07	233	205	416.07	233	205
	Base Tx Antenna Message START:	416.07	233	0	416.07	233	0	416.07	233	0	416.07	233	0
	Base Tx Antenna Message END:	496.43	278	45	496.43	278	45	496.43	278	45	496.43	278	45
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) START:	496.43	278	0	496.43	278	0	496.43	278	0	496.43	278	0
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) END:	557.14	312	34	557.14	312	34	557.14	312	34	557.14	312	34
	Base T->R Switch START:	557.14	312	0	557.14	312	0	557.14	312	0	557.14	312	0
	Base T->R Switch END:	571.43	320	8	571.43	320	8	571.43	320	8	571.43	320	8
10	Base Rx Preamble START:	571.43	320	0	571.43	320	0	571.43	320	0	571.43	320	0
	Base Rx Preamble END:	621.43	348	28	621.43	348	28	621.43	348	28	621.43	348	28
	Base Rx Message START:	621.43	348	0	621.43	348	0	621.43	348	0	621.43	348	0
	Base Rx Message END:	889.29	498	150	889.29	498	150	889.29	498	150	889.29	498	150
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 START:	889.29	498	0	889.29	498	0	889.29	498	0	889.29	498	0
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 END:	1021.43	572	74	1021.43	572	74	1021.43	572	74	1021.43	572	74
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 START:	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 END:	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0	1021.43	572	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	1035.71	580	8	1035.71	580	8	1035.71	580	8	1035.71	580	8
20	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) START:	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) END:	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0
	Base Rx PCP START:	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0	1035.71	580	0
	Base Rx PCP END:	1094.64	613	33	1094.64	613	33	1094.64	613	33	1094.64	613	33
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 START:	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 END:	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0	1094.64	613	0
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	1128.57	632	19	1128.57	632	19	1128.57	632	19	1128.57	632	19
	Base R->T Switch START:	1128.57	632	0	1128.57	632	0	1128.57	632	0	1128.57	632	0
	Base R->T Switch END:	1142.86	640	8	1142.86	640	8	1142.86	640	8	1142.86	640	8
25	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch END:	1142.86	640	0	1142.86	640	0	1142.86	640	0	1142.86	640	0
	Leftovers (Better be Zero):	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0	0.00	0	0

Table A-22



## Unspread FDD

5	S/(N+I) into A/D (dB):	13.64	13.64	24.27	24.27	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
		13.64	13.64	24.28	24.28	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	S/N into A/D (dB):								
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps):	201.25	243.25	232.75	243.25	243.25	243.25	212.80	222.40
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps):								
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps):	201.25	243.25	232.75	243.25	243.25	243.25	212.80	222.40
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB):								
		201.25	243.25	232.75	243.25	243.25	243.25	212.80	222.40
		0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

Table A-23





152

Unspread FDD		Link Designer 3.1		FDD Setup for page 145 Operation		FDD, No Spread Var Slots, Linked 0.350 MHz Chip Rate 25.0 x 8.00 kbps		FDD, No Spread with Small Slots 0.350 MHz Chip Rate 25.0 x 8.00 kbps		FDD, No Spread with Big Slots 0.350 MHz Chip Rate 20.0 x 8.00 kbps	
Slotting Efficiency:		Reverse Link		Forward Link		Reverse Link		Forward Link		Reverse Link	
2-way Message Frame Duration (usec):		800.00		800.00		800.00		800.00		1000.00	
Base T/R Switch Time (chips):		0		8		0		8		0	
Base T/R Switch Time (usec):		0.00		22.86		0.00		22.86		0.00	
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (chips):		8		0		8		0		8	
Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (usec):		22.86		0.00		22.86		0.00		22.86	
Base R/T Switch Time (chips):		8		0		8		0		8	
Base R/T Switch Time (usec):		22.86		0.00		22.86		0.00		22.86	
Total Switch Time (usec):		45.71		22.86		45.71		22.86		45.71	
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (chips):		0		3		0		3		0	
Mobile Timing Error Allowance (usec):		0.00		8.57		0.00		8.57		0.00	
Max Range Bin Step Size (m):		0.00		0.80		0.53		0.80		0.00	
Total Non Guard Time Overhead (usec):		45.71		31.43		57.14		31.43		45.71	
Number of 2-way TDD Guards:		1		1		2		1		2	
TDD Max Cell Radius (m):		15.17		0.00		-0.00		0.00		9.85	
Total TDD Guard Time Available (usec):		162.86		0.00		-0.00		0.00		211.43	
Total TDD Guard Time Available (chips):		57.00		0.00		-0.00		0.00		74.00	
Guard Time per TDD Guard (chips):		57.00		0.00		-0.00		0.00		37.00	
Total Guard Time (usec):		208.57		31.43		57.14		31.43		257.14	
Slot Structure Efficiency:		73.93%		96.07%		92.86%		96.07%		74.29%	

Table A-25



## Unspread FDD

Transmit Slot Duration (usec):	585.71	768.57	742.86	768.57	742.86	768.57	742.86	768.57
One Slot B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	5.25	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
Aggregate B-Channel Data Rate (kbps):	131.25	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
Max # of Voice Channels per RF Channel:	16.4063	25	25	25	25	25	25	25
Superframe Duration (msec):	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20
Chip Duration (usec):	280	280	280	280	280	280	280	280
Chip Duration (usec):	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86	2.86
Base Slot Layout (mobile at zero range):	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)	(usec)	(chips)

Table A-26

155

5	Base Tx Preamble START:	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0	0
	Base Tx Preamble END:	71.43	25	71.43	25	71.43	25	71.43	25	71.43	25	25	25
	Base Tx Message START:	71.43	25	71.43	25	71.43	25	71.43	25	71.43	25	25	25
	Base Tx Message END:	657.14	230	657.14	230	657.14	230	657.14	230	657.14	230	230	230
	Base Tx Antenna Message START:	657.14	230	657.14	230	657.14	230	657.14	230	657.14	230	230	230
	Base Tx Antenna Message END:	768.57	269	768.57	269	768.57	269	768.57	269	768.57	269	269	269
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) START:	768.57	269	768.57	269	768.57	269	768.57	269	768.57	269	269	269
	Base Twiddles Thumbs (FDD only) END:	777.14	272	777.14	272	777.14	272	777.14	272	777.14	272	272	272
	Base T->R Switch START:	777.14	272	777.14	272	777.14	272	777.14	272	777.14	272	272	272
	Base T->R Switch END:	800.00	280	800.00	280	800.00	280	800.00	280	800.00	280	280	280
10	Base Rx Preamble START:	800.00	280	800.00	280	800.00	280	800.00	280	800.00	280	280	280
	Base Rx Preamble END:	871.43	305	871.43	305	871.43	305	871.43	305	871.43	305	305	305
	Base Rx Message START:	871.43	305	871.43	305	871.43	305	871.43	305	871.43	305	305	305
	Base Rx Message END:	1300.00	455	1300.00	455	1300.00	455	1300.00	455	1300.00	455	455	455
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 START:	1300.00	455	1300.00	455	1300.00	455	1300.00	455	1300.00	455	455	455
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 or 2 END:	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	512	512
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 START:	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	512	512
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 1 END:	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	512	512
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) START:	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	1462.86	512	512	512
	Mobile 1->2 Transient Time (T/R) END:	1485.71	520	1485.71	520	1485.71	520	1485.71	520	1485.71	520	520	520
20	Base Rx PCP START:	1485.71	520	1485.71	520	1485.71	520	1485.71	520	1485.71	520	520	520
	Base Rx PCP END:	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	550	550
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 START:	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	550	550
	Base Rx Guard Time 1 END:	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	550	550
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 START:	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	1571.43	550	550	550
	Base Rx Time Error Allowance 2 END:	1577.14	552	1577.14	552	1577.14	552	1577.14	552	1577.14	552	552	552
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch START:	1577.14	552	1577.14	552	1577.14	552	1577.14	552	1577.14	552	552	552
	Mob 2->1 Trans or Base R->T Switch END:	1600.00	560	1600.00	560	1600.00	560	1600.00	560	1600.00	560	560	560
	Lettovers (Better be Zero):	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0	0
	25	Lettovers (Better be Zero):	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0

Table A-26

## Data Rates/RF Channel:

[illegible]

Table A-27

157

## Unspread FDD

5	S/(N+1) into A/D (dB) :	13.64	13.64	24.27	24.27	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	S/N into A/D (dB) :	13.64	13.64	24.28	24.28	18.94	18.94	17.01	17.01
	Max Duplex Data Rate (kbps) :	129.38	168.13	162.50	168.13	162.50	168.13	130.00	134.50
	Pilot Channel Overhead (kbps) :	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Bearer Channel Duplex Rate (kbps) :	129.38	168.13	162.50	168.13	162.50	168.13	130.00	134.50
	Link Asymmetry Factor (dB) :		0.00		0.00		0.00		0.00

Table A-27





159

These and other variations and modifications to the communication techniques disclosed herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art, and are considered to fall within the scope and spirit of the invention and  
5 to be within the purview of the appended claims.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

Claims

1. A method of time division duplex communication between a base station and a user station over a single frequency band, comprising the steps of
- 5 transmitting, over a designated frequency band, a user message from a user station directed to a base station,
- receiving said user message at said base station,
- calculating at said base station, based on the time
- 10 of receiving said user message at said base station, a distance of said user station relative to said base station, and
- transmitting, over said designated frequency band, a base message from said base station directed to said user
- 15 station, said base message comprising a timing adjustment command whereby timing of a subsequent message from said user station directed to said base station over said designated frequency band is advanced or retarded.
- 20 2. The method of claim 1 wherein at least one of said user message and said base message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.
3. The method of claim 1 wherein said user station
- 25 maintains a timing variable, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing variable in order to advance or retard said timing.
4. The method of claim 1 wherein said user station
- 30 maintains a timing parameter relative to a fixed reference, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing parameter in order to advance or retard said timing.

161

5        5.    The method of claim 1 wherein said step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station comprises a step of calculating a propagation delay of said base message to reach said user station and said user message to reach said base station.

10       6.    The method of claim 1 further comprising a step of adjusting a relative timing of subsequent messages from said user station by periodically transmitting from said base station to said user station, over said designated frequency, subsequent timing adjustment commands.

15       7.    The method of claim 1 wherein said user message is transmitted in response to a general polling message sent by said base station in an attempt to establish communication with said base station.

20       8.    The method of claim 1 wherein said user station is in established communication with said base station, and wherein said user message comprises a control pulse preamble.

25       9.    The method of claim 8 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a plurality of concatenated codes.

      10.   The method of claim 9 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a kronecker product of a minimum peak sidelobe code and a Barker code.

30       11.   The method of claim 1 wherein said user station is in established communication with said base station, and wherein said user message comprises a traffic mode user-to-base message.

162

12. A method of time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, wherein said base station communicates sequentially during a time frame with the user stations in established communication with said base station, and wherein said time frame is divided into a plurality of time slots of equal duration, said method comprising the steps of

transmitting over a designated frequency band, during a designated time slot in a first time frame, a first base-to-user message from said base station to a user station,

receiving at said base station, during said designated time slot in said first time frame and over said designated frequency band, a first user-to-base message from said user station,

transmitting, during said designated time slot in a second time frame subsequent to said first time frame and over said designated frequency band, a second base-to-user message from said base station to said user station, said second base-to-user message comprising a timing adjustment command, and

receiving at said base station, during said designated time slot in said second time frame and over said designated frequency band, a second user-to-base message from said user station, said second user-to-base message advanced or retarded in time in response to said timing adjustment command.

13. The method of claim 12 further comprising a step of, after receiving said first user-to-base message and before transmitting any subsequent base-to-user message from said base station, receiving at said base station a control pulse preamble from a second user station over said designated frequency band.

14. The method of claim 13 further comprising the steps of

transmitting, during a second time slot immediately  
5 following said first time slot in said first time frame,  
and over said designated frequency band, a third base-to-  
user message from said base station to said second user  
station, said third base-to-user message comprising a  
timing adjustment command, and  
10 receiving at said base station, during said second  
time slot and over said designated frequency band, a third  
user-to-base message from said second user station, said  
third user-to-base message advanced or retarded in time in  
response to said timing adjustment command.

15

15. The method of claim 14 wherein said control  
pulse preamble comprises a spread spectrum code.

16. The method of claim 14 wherein said control  
20 pulse preamble comprises a plurality of concatenated  
codes.

17. The method of claim 12 wherein at least one of  
said first user-to-base message, said second user-to-base  
25 message, said first base-to-user message, and said second  
base-to-user message is transmitted using a spread  
spectrum technique.

18. The method of claim 12 wherein said user station  
30 maintains a timing variable, and wherein said timing  
adjustment command modifies said timing variable in order  
to advance or retard the timing of said second user-to-  
base message.

164

19. The method of claim 12 wherein said user station maintains a timing parameter relative to a fixed reference, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing parameter in order to advance or retard the timing of said second user-to-base message.

20. The method of claim 12 further comprising a step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station.

21. The method of claim 20 wherein said step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station comprises a step of calculating a propagation delay of said first base-to-user message to reach said user station and said first user-to-base message to reach said base station.

22. The method of claim 20 further comprising a step of receiving at said base station, prior to transmitting said second user-to-base message, and over said designated frequency band, a control pulse preamble from said user station, wherein said step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station comprises a step of calculating a propagation delay of said first base-to-user message to reach said user station and said control pulse preamble to reach said base station.

23. A system for carrying out time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, said system comprising

a plurality of time frames, and  
a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, each of said time slots comprising

165

a base message interval during which a base message may be sent over a predetermined frequency band by a base station to a user station in established communication with said base station,

5 a user message interval during which a user message may be sent over said predetermined frequency band to said base station by said user station in established communication with said base station, wherein said base station periodically transmits, during  
10 said base message interval, a timing adjustment command to said user station in established communication with said base station.

24. The system of claim 23 wherein at least one of  
15 said base message and said user message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

25. The system of claim 23 wherein said user station maintains a timing variable, and wherein said timing  
20 adjustment command modifies said timing variable in order to advance or retard a timing of said user station.

26. The system of claim 23 wherein said user station maintains a timing parameter relative to a fixed  
25 reference, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing parameter in order to advance or retard a timing of said user station.

27. The system of claim 23 wherein said timing  
30 adjustment command is based on a calculation of a distance of said user station relative to said base station.

28. The system of claim 27 wherein said calculation of a distance comprises a calculation of a propagation

delay of said base message to reach said user station and said user message to reach said base station.

29. The method of claim 27 wherein said user station  
5 is in established communication with said base station, and wherein said user message comprises a traffic mode user-to-base message.

30. A system for carrying out time division duplex  
10 communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, wherein the base station communicates sequentially with the user stations with which the base station has established communication, said system comprising

15 a plurality of time frames of equal duration, and a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, each of said time slots comprising

a base message interval in an initial portion of said time slot, during which either a base-to-user  
20 message may be sent by a base station to a user station in established communication with said base station during said time slot, or a general polling message may be transmitted indicating the availability of said time slot, and

25 a user portion following said base message interval in said time slot, during which either a user-to-base message may be sent to said base station by said user station in established communication with said base station, or a reply message may be  
30 sent to said base station by a user station seeking to establish communication with said base station, said user portion and said base message interval both lying on the same frequency band,

wherein said base station periodically transmits, during  
35 said base message interval, a timing adjustment command to



167

said user station in established communication with said base station.

31. The system of claim 30 wherein said user portion  
5 comprises a preamble interval during which a control pulse preamble may be transmitted by a second user station in established communication with said base station.

32. The system of claim 31 wherein said second user  
10 station is in established communication with said base station in the time slot immediately following the time slot in which the second user station sent the control pulse preamble.

33. A method for establishing time division duplex  
15 communication between a base station and a user station over a single frequency band, wherein said base station communicates sequentially during a time frame with user stations in established communication with said base  
20 station, and wherein said time frame is divided into a plurality of time slots of equal duration, said method comprising the steps of

transmitting, over a designated frequency band and  
during a first base interval of an available time slot in  
25 a first time frame, a general polling message,

receiving, over said designated frequency band and  
during a user interval of said available time slot, a  
reply message from a user station,

calculating at said base station, based on the time  
30 of receiving said reply message at said base station, a distance of said user station relative to said base station, and

transmitting, over said designated frequency band and  
during a second base interval of said available time slot  
35 in a second time frame, a base message from said base

168

station directed to said user station, said base message comprising a timing adjustment command whereby timing of a subsequent message from said user station directed to said base station over said designated frequency band is  
5 advanced or retarded.

34. The method of claim 33 wherein said base station and said user station communicate over said designated frequency band in said available time slot in subsequent  
10 time frames.

35. The method of claim 34 wherein said base station sends, in each of said subsequent time frames, a base-to-user message directed to said user station, and wherein  
15 said user station sends, in each of said subsequent time frames, a user-to-base message directed to said base station.

36. The method of claim 35 wherein said base-to-user  
20 message periodically comprises a new timing adjustment command.

37. The method of claim 35 wherein said user station sends, prior to each base-to-user message, a control pulse  
25 preamble over said designated frequency band and directed to said base station.

38. The method of claim 37 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a plurality of concatenated  
30 codes.

39. The method of claim 37 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a kronecker product of a minimum peak sidelobe code and a Barker code.  
35

40. The method of claim 33 wherein at least one of said general polling message, reply message, and base message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

5       41. The method of claim 33 wherein said user station maintains a timing variable, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing variable in order to advance or retard said timing.

10       42. The method of claim 33 wherein said user station maintains a timing parameter relative to a fixed reference, and wherein said timing adjustment command modifies said timing parameter in order to advance or retard said timing.

15       43. The method of claim 33 wherein said step of calculating a distance of said user station relative to said base station comprises a step of calculating a propagation delay of said general polling message to reach  
20 said user station and said reply message to reach said base station.

25       44. In a system for time division duplex communication wherein a base station communicates with a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, said system comprising a plurality of periodic time frames, each time frame divided into a plurality of base time slots and a plurality of corresponding user time slots, a method including the steps of:

30       transmitting, in a user time slot over a frequency band, a first user message from a user station to a base station,

receiving, at said user station and over said frequency band, a base message from said base station,

170

said base message comprising a timing adjustment command,  
and

transmitting, in a user time slot over said frequency  
band, a second user message from said user station to said  
5 base station, said second user message advanced or  
retarded in relative timing with respect to the start of  
said user time slot, in response to said timing adjustment  
command.

10 45. A frame structure for time division duplex  
communication between a base station and a plurality of  
user stations over a single frequency band, comprising  
a plurality of time frames, and

a plurality of time slots for each time frame, each  
15 time slot comprising a base transmission interval during  
which a base station may transmit over a designated  
frequency band a base-to-user messages to one of a  
plurality of user stations, and a user transmission  
interval during which one of said user stations may  
20 transmit a user-to-base message to said base station over  
said designated frequency band,

wherein a first forward link transmission and a first  
reverse link transmission between said base station and a  
first user station are separated by either an intervening  
25 forward or reverse link communication with a second user  
station.

46. The frame structure of claim 45 wherein said  
first forward link transmission and said first reverse  
30 link transmission are separated by an amount of time  
sufficient to allow propagation of said first forward link  
transmission to a forward link destination and propagation  
of said first reverse link transmission to a reverse link  
destination.

35

47. The frame structure of claim 46 wherein said forward link destination is said first user station, and said reverse link destination is said base station.

5 48. The frame structure of claim 47 further comprising a preamble interval preceding said first forward link transmission, during which a control pulse preamble is received by said base station from said first user station.

10 49. The frame structure of claim 46 wherein said forward link destination is said base station, and said reverse link destination is said first user station.

15 50. The frame structure of claim 45 wherein said base-to-user messages periodically comprise a timing adjustment command whereby a relative timing of said user-to-base messages is adjusted.

20 51. A frame structure for time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising a plurality of time frames, and

25 a plurality of time slots for each time frame, each time slot comprising a base transmission interval during which a base station may transmit over a designated frequency band a base-to-user messages to one of a plurality of user stations, and a user transmission interval during which one of said user stations may  
30 transmit a user-to-base message to said base station over said designated frequency band,

wherein duplex communication between said base station and a first user station is carried out in a designated base interval and a designated user interval,  
35 said designated base interval and said designated user

interval being separated by at least one intervening base interval or user interval.

52. The frame structure of claim 51 wherein said  
5 designated base interval and said designated user interval  
comprise a duplex pairing, and a time separation between  
said designated base interval and said designated user  
interval is sufficient to allow a first message to  
propagate over a forward link of said duplex pairing, and  
10 a second message to propagate over a reverse link of said  
duplex pairing.

53. The frame structure of claim 51 wherein said  
base-to-user message periodically comprises a timing  
15 adjustment command whereby a relative timing of said user-  
to-base message is adjusted.

54. A method of time division duplex communication  
between a base station and a plurality of user stations  
20 over a single frequency band, wherein said base station  
communicates during a time frame with user stations in  
established communication with said base station, and  
wherein said time frame is divided into a plurality of  
time slots of equal duration, said method comprising the  
25 steps of

transmitting, over a designated frequency band and in  
a first time interval of a time frame, a first base  
message from a base station directed to a first user  
station,

30 receiving said base message at said first user  
station,

transmitting from a second user station, over said  
designated frequency band, a first user message directed  
to said base station,

173

receiving said first user message at said base station in a second time interval of said time frame,

transmitting, over said designated frequency band and in a third time interval of said time frame, a second base message from said base station,

transmitting from said first user station, over said designated frequency band, a second user message directed to said base station, and

receiving said second user message at said base station in a fourth time interval of said time frame.

55. The method of claim 54 wherein a time between transmitting said first base message and receiving said second user message is sufficient to allow said first base message to propagate from said base station to said first user station, and said second user message to propagate from said first user station to said base station.

56. The method of claim 54 wherein at least one of said first user message, said second user message, said first base message, and said second base message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

57. The method of claim 54 further comprising the steps of

calculating at said base station, based on a time of receiving said second user message at said base station, a distance of said first user station relative to said base station, and

transmitting, over said designated frequency band, a third base message from said base station directed to said first user station, said third base message comprising a timing adjustment command whereby timing of a subsequent message from said first user station directed to said base

station over said designated frequency band is advanced or retarded.

58. The method of claim 54 further comprising the  
5 step of transmitting, prior to said step of transmitting  
said first base message to said first user station, a  
control pulse preamble over said designated frequency band  
from said first user station to said base station.

10 59. A method of time duplex communication between a  
base station and a plurality of user stations over a  
single frequency band during a time frame, said time frame  
being divided into a plurality of time slots of equal  
duration, said method comprising the steps of

15 transmitting, during a first time slot, a first base-  
to-user message from a base station directed to a first  
user station,

receiving, during said first time slot, a first user-  
to-base message at said base station from a second user  
20 station,

receiving, after said first user-to-base message, a  
control pulse preamble at said base station from a third  
user station,

25 transmitting, during a second time slot, a second  
base-to-user message from said base station directed to  
said third user station, and

receiving, during said second time slot, a second  
user-to-base message at said base station from said first  
user station.

30 60. The method of claim 59 further comprising the  
step of receiving, after said second user-to-base message,  
a second control pulse preamble at said base station from  
a fourth user station.

35



61. The method of claim 59 further comprising the step of calculating at said base station, based on a time of receiving said control pulse preamble at said base station, a distance of said third user station relative to said base station, wherein said second base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command whereby subsequent messages from said third user station directed to said base station are advanced or retarded in relative timing.

10

62. The method of claim 59 further comprising the steps of

calculating at said base station, based on a time of receiving said second user-to-base message at said base station, a distance of said first user station relative to said base station, and

transmitting, in a subsequent time frame, a third base-to-user message from said base station directed to said first user station, said third base message comprising a timing adjustment command whereby timing of a subsequent message from said first user station directed to said base station is advanced or retarded.

63. A method of interleaved time duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising the steps of

receiving, over a designated frequency band, a first control pulse preamble at a base station from a first user station,

transmitting, over said designated frequency band, a first base-to-user message from said base station to said first user station, and

after a time interval of sufficient duration to receive a first user-to-base message at said base station

from a second user station, transmit a second base-to-user message from said base station, and receive a second control pulse preamble at said base station from a third user station, receiving over said designated frequency band a second user-to-base message at said base station from said first user station.

64. The method of claim 63 wherein said first base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command.

65. The method of claim 20 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, subsequent messages transmitted from said first user station are advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

66. The method of claim 63 wherein at least one of said first base-to-user message and said second user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

67. An interleaved time division duplex frame structure wherein a base station communicates with a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising

a plurality of time frames, and  
a plurality of time slots in each time frame, each of said time slots comprising

a base message interval during which a base-to-user message may be sent over a predetermined frequency band by a base station to a first user station in established communication with said base station,

a user message interval during which a user-to-base message may be received over said predetermined frequency band at said base station from a second

177

user station in established communication with said base station, and

5 a preamble interval during which a control pulse preamble may be received over said predetermined frequency band from a third user station in established communication with said base station, whereby said base station may respond to said third base station in an immediately following time slot.

10 68. The interleaved time division duplex frame structure of claim 67 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command.

15 69. The interleaved time division duplex frame structure of claim 68 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, subsequent messages transmitted from said first user station are advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

20 70. The interleaved time division duplex frame structure of claim 67 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

25 71. A system for carrying out time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising a plurality of time frames, and  
30 a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, each of said time slots comprising

a base interval, during which either a base-to-user message may be sent by a base station to a first user station in established communication with said  
35 base station during said time slot, or a general

polling message may be transmitted by said base station indicating availability of said time slot,

a user interval, during which either a user-to-base message may be received at said base station from a second user station in established communication with said base station, or a reply message may be received at said base station from a third user station seeking to establish communication with said base station, and

a preamble interval during which a control pulse preamble may be received from a fourth user station in established communication with said base station, whereby said base station may respond to said fourth base station in an immediately following time slot.

72. The system of claim 71 wherein said base interval occupies an initial portion of a time slot, and said user interval a latter portion of said time slot.

73. The system of claim 71 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command directed to said first user station.

74. The interleaved time division duplex frame structure of claim 73 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, subsequent messages transmitted from said first user station are advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

75. The system of claim 71 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

76. The system of claim 71 wherein, in response to receiving said reply message at said base station from said third user station, said base station transmits a timing adjustment command directed to said third user station.

77. In a system for time division duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, wherein said base station communicates during a time frame with user stations in established communication with said base station, and wherein said time frame is divided into a plurality of time slots of equal duration, a method comprising the steps of

receiving at a first user station, over a designated frequency band and in a first time interval of a time frame, a first base message from a base station directed to said first user station,

waiting for said base station to receive, over said designated frequency band and in a second time interval of said time frame, a first user message from a second user station directed to said base station,

waiting for said base station to transmit, over said designated frequency band and in a third time interval of said time frame, a second base message from said base station,

transmitting from said first user station, over said designated frequency band and in a fourth time interval of said time frame, a second user message directed to said base station.

78. A method for communicating between a base station and a plurality of user stations comprising the steps of

180

transmitting from a base station, over a specified frequency band and during an initial portion of a time frame, a plurality of base-to-user messages directed to user stations, each of said base-to-user messages  
5 corresponding to a different base time slot,

receiving at said base station from said user stations, over said specified frequency band and during a latter portion of said time frame, a plurality of user-to-base messages directed to said base station, each of said  
10 user-to-base messages corresponding to a different user time slot, and

transmitting from said base station, over said specified frequency band and during a subsequent time frame, a timing adjustment command to at least one of said  
15 user stations, whereby at least one subsequent user-to-base message from said user station is advanced or retarded in time by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

20 79. The method of claim 78 wherein at least one of said base-to-user messages and said user-to-base messages is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

25 80. The method of claim 78 further comprising the steps of

transmitting from said base station a signal identifying an available user time slot,

receiving from a user station seeking to establish communication with said base station, over said specified  
30 frequency band and during said available user time slot, a reply message,

transmitting from said base station, over said specified frequency band, a second timing adjustment command to said user station seeking to establish  
35 communication with said base station, whereby at least one

181

subsequent user-to-base message from said user station seeking to establish communication with said base station is advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said second timing adjustment command.

5

81. The method of claim 80 wherein said reply message is transmitted from said user station seeking to establish communication with said base station in said available user time slot after a predetermined delay  
10 period.

82. The method of claim 80 wherein said reply message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

15 83. The method of claim 80 wherein the length of said reply message is such that it will be fully received by said base station prior to the start of a second user time slot immediately following said available user time slot.

20

84. The method of claim 78 wherein each user time slot is separated from a following user time slot by an abbreviated guard band.

25 85. The method of claim 84 wherein said abbreviated guard band has a duration of less than a full round trip propagation delay time relative to a radius of a cell in which said base station is located.

30 86. In a communication system employing time division multiplexing, a method for establishing communication between a base station and a user station comprising the steps of

transmitting from a base station, over a specified  
35 frequency band and during an initial portion of a time

frame, a plurality of base-to-user messages directed to user stations with which said base station has previously established communication, said initial portion comprising a plurality of base time slots, wherein each of said base-to-user messages corresponds to a different base time slot and at least one of said base time slots is available for communication,

transmitting from a user station seeking to establish communication with said base station, over said specified frequency band and during a user time slot in a user portion of said time frame, a reply message directed to said base station, said user time slot paired with said available base time slot,

receiving at said base station said reply message, calculating a propagation delay at said base station based on a relative time of receiving said reply message and deriving a timing adjustment command thereby,

transmitting from said base station, over said specified frequency band and during a subsequent time frame, a timing adjustment command to said user station,

in response to said timing adjustment command, advancing or retarding a relative timing of subsequent user-to-base messages from said user station to said base station by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

87. The method of claim 86 wherein said reply message is transmitted from said user station in said user time slot after a predetermined delay period.

30

88. The method of claim 86 wherein one or more of said base-to-user messages and said user-to-base messages are transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.



89. The method of claim 86 wherein said reply message is transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

90. The method of claim 86 wherein the length of said reply message is such that it will be fully received by said base station prior to the start of an immediately following user time slot.

91. A system of communication comprising  
a plurality of time frames of equal duration, each of said time frames comprising a base transmission portion, a collective guard portion, and a user transmission portion, said collective guard portion located between said base transmission portion and said user transmission portion,

a plurality of base time slots in said base transmission portion, during each of which a base station may transmit a base-to-user message directed to one of a plurality of user stations,

a plurality of user time slots in said user transmission portion, during each of which a corresponding one of said user stations may transmit a user-to-base message directed to said base station, said user time slots separated by abbreviated guard bands,

wherein said base station commands at least one of said user stations to advance or retard a relative timing of its respective user-to-base message in response to a calculated propagation delay time.

92. The system of claim 91 wherein a new user station seeking to establish communication with said base station transmits a reply message to said base station during said collective guard portion.

93. The system of claim 92 wherein said base station calculates, based on a time of receiving said reply message, a new user station propagation delay for said new user station and transmits, during an available one of  
5 said base time slots, a timing adjustment command to said new user station.

94. The system of claim 92 wherein the length of said reply message is such that it will be fully received  
10 by said base station prior to the end of said collective guard portion.

95. The system of claim 91 wherein a new user station seeking to establish communication with said base  
15 station transmits a reply message to said base station during an available one of said user time slots.

96. The system of claim 95 wherein said base station calculates, based on a time of receiving said reply  
20 message, a new user station propagation delay for said new user station and transmits, during one of said base time slots corresponding to said one available user time slot, a timing adjustment command to said new user station.

25 97. The system of claim 95 wherein the length of said reply message is such that it will be fully received by said base station prior to the start of an immediately following user time slot.

30 98. The system of claim 95 wherein said available user time slot is the first user time slot.

99. The system of claim 91 wherein one or more of said base-to-user messages and said user-to-base messages  
35 are transmitted using a spread spectrum technique.

100. The system of claim 91 wherein said abbreviated guard bands have a duration of less than a full round trip propagation delay time relative to a radius of a cell in which said base station is located.

5

101. A method for carrying out time division multiplexed communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising the steps of

10 transmitting, during a base portion of a time frame, a base station burst over a designated frequency band, said base station burst comprising a plurality of time intervals corresponding to base time slots, wherein either  
15 a base-to-user message or a general polling message is transmitted in each of said base time slots, said base-to-user message being transmitted in the base time slots already in use for established communication with user stations, and said general polling message being transmitted in the base time slots available for  
20 communication,

receiving in user time slots, during a user portion of said time frame and over said designated frequency band, a user-to-base message in the user time slots already in use for established communication with said  
25 base station, and a reply message in the user time slots in which a new user station is attempting to establish communication with said base station, and

periodically transmitting from said base station, over said designated frequency band, a timing adjustment  
30 command to at least one of said user stations, whereby subsequent user-to-base messages from said user station are advanced or retarded in time by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

186

102. The method of claim 25 further comprising the step of transmitting from said base station, over said designated frequency band, an initial timing adjustment command to at least one of said user stations attempting  
5 to establish communication with said base station.

103. The method of claim 101 wherein said base time slots are interleaved.

10 104. The method of claim 101 wherein said base time slots are non-interleaved.

105. A system for time division multiplexed communication between a base station and a plurality of  
15 user stations over a single frequency band, comprising  
a plurality of time frames of equal duration,  
a base transmission portion in each of said time frames,

a plurality of base time slots in said base  
20 transmission portion, during which either a base-to-user message may be sent by a base station to a user station in established communication with said base station, or a general polling message may be transmitted by said base station indicating the availability of said base time  
25 slot,

a user transmission portion in each of said time frames, distinct from said base transmission portion, and  
a plurality of user time slots in said user transmission portion, each user time slot corresponding to  
30 one of said base time slots, during which either a user-to-base message may be sent to said base station by a user station in established communication with said base station, or a reply message may be sent to said base station by a user station seeking to establish  
35 communication with said base station, said user

187

transmission portion and said base transmission portion lying on the same frequency band,

wherein said base station periodically transmits, during said base time slots, a timing adjustment command to said user stations in established communication with said base station.

106. The system of claim 105 wherein said base station transmits an initial timing adjustment command to at least one of said user stations attempting to establish communication with said base station, in response to receiving a reply message from said user station.

107. The system of claim 105 wherein said base time slots are interleaved.

108. The system of claim 105 wherein said base time slots are non-interleaved.

109. A method for communicating between a base station and a plurality of user stations comprising the steps of

transmitting from a base station, over a specified frequency band and during a base portion of a time frame, a base station burst comprising a plurality of base-to-user messages directed to user stations,

receiving at said base station from said user stations, over said specified frequency band and during a user portion of said time frame, a plurality of user-to-base messages directed to said base station, each of said user-to-base messages corresponding to a different user time slot,

transmitting from said base station, over said specified frequency band and during a subsequent time frame, a timing adjustment command to at least one of said

user stations, whereby subsequent user-to-base messages from said user station are advanced or retarded in time by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

5        110. The method of claim 109 wherein said base-to-user messages are interleaved.

111. The method of claim 110 wherein said base station burst comprises a plurality of blocks, each block  
10 comprising a plurality of sub-messages, and each of said base-to-user messages comprising at least one of said sub-messages from a plurality of said blocks.

112. The method of claim 111 wherein each of said  
15 base-to-user messages comprises exactly one sub-message from each of said blocks.

113. The method of claim 111 wherein at least one of said sub-messages in each of said blocks is preceded by a  
20 preamble.

114. The method of claim 113 wherein all of said sub-messages in each of said blocks are preceded by a  
25 preamble.

115. The method of claim 113 wherein said preamble comprises a spread spectrum code.

116. The method of claim 110 wherein said user  
30 stations employ forward error correction.

117. The method of claim 116 wherein said forward error correction comprises a Reed-Solomon coding technique.  
35

118. A system for time division multiplexed communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over a single frequency band, comprising a plurality of time frames of equal duration,

5 a base transmission portion in each of said time frames, said base transmission portion comprising a plurality of transmit time slots,

a plurality of sub-messages in each of said transmit time slots, wherein one or more sub-messages from a plurality of said transmit time slots are directed by a base station to the same user station in established communication with said base station, and

10 a user transmission portion in each of said time frames, said user transmission portion comprising a plurality of user time slots during which user-to-base messages from user stations in established communication with said base station are received,

wherein said base station periodically transmits during said base transmission portion a timing adjustment command to said user stations in established communication with said base station.

119. The system of claim 118 wherein a user station receiving said timing adjustment command advances or retards its timing by an amount specified by said timing adjustment command.

120. The system of claim 118 wherein exactly one sub-message from each of said transmit time slots is directed to the same user station.

121. The system of claim 118 wherein at least one of said sub-messages in each of said transmit time slots is preceded by a preamble.

35

190

122. The system of claim 121 wherein all of said sub-messages in each of said transmit time slots are preceded by a preamble.

5        123. The system of claim 121 wherein said preamble comprises a spread spectrum code.

124. The system of claim 121 wherein said user stations employ forward error correction.

10

125. The system of claim 121 wherein said forward error correction comprises a Reed-Solomon coding technique.

15        126. The system of claim 121 wherein a user station seeking to establish communication with said base station transmits an abbreviated message in an available one of said user time slots.

20        127. The system of claim 126 wherein said base station transmits, in response to receiving said abbreviated message, an initial timing adjustment command to said user station seeking to establish communication.

25        128. The system of claim 118 wherein said user time slots are separated by abbreviated guard bands.

129. A method of duplex communication between a base station and a user station over multiple frequency bands,  
30 comprising the steps of

transmitting, over a first frequency band, a control pulse preamble from a user station,

receiving, during a first preamble interval, said control pulse preamble at a base station,



191

transmitting, over a second frequency band and during a base message interval, a base-to-user message from said base station to said user station,

receiving said base-to-user message at said user  
5 station,

transmitting, over said first frequency band, a user-to-base message from said user station, and

receiving, during a user message interval, said user-to-base message at said base station.

10

130. The method of claim 129 further comprising the step of transmitting, prior to said step of transmitting said control pulse preamble, a plurality of preamble bursts over said second frequency band from said base  
15 station to said user station.

131. The method of claim 130 wherein said preamble bursts are three in number.

20 132. The method of claim 130 wherein the number of preamble bursts equals a number of antennas used by said base station, and wherein said method further comprises the steps of

measuring at said user station a relative received  
25 signal quality of said preamble bursts,

transmitting from said user station, as part of said user-to-base message, an indication of said relative received signal quality, and

selecting at said base station, in response to said  
30 relative received signal quality, one or more of said antennas for subsequent messages to said user station.

133. The method of claim 129 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command  
35 directed to said user station.

134. The method of claim 133 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, a subsequent message transmitted from said user station is advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment  
5 command.

135. The method of claim 129 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.  
10

136. The method of claim 129 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

137. The method of claim 129 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a spread spectrum code.  
15

138. The method of claim 129 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a plurality of concatenated  
20 codes.

139. The method of claim 138 wherein said control pulse preamble comprises a kronecker product of a minimum peak sidelobe code and a Barker code.  
25

140. A method of communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising the steps of

transmitting, during a first time slot and over a  
30 base transmission frequency band, a first base-to-user message from a base station to a first user station,

receiving said first base-to-user message at said first user station,

193

transmitting, over a user transmission frequency band, a control pulse preamble from a second user station to said base station,

receiving, during said first time slot, said control  
5 pulse preamble at said base station,

transmitting, during a second time slot and over said base transmission frequency band, a second base-to-user message from said base station to said second user station,

10 receiving said second base-to-user message at said second user station,

transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a user-to-base message from said first user station to said base station, and

15 receiving, during said second time slot, said user-to-base message at said base station.

141. The method of claim 140 further comprising the steps of

20 transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a second user-to-base message from said second user station to said base station, and

receiving, during a third time slot, said second user-to-base message at said base station.

25

142. The method of claim 141 further comprising the steps of

transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a second control pulse preamble from a third user  
30 station to said base station,

receiving, during said second time slot, said second control pulse preamble at said base station,

transmitting, during said third time slot and over said base transmission frequency band, a third base-to-

194

user message from said base station to said third user station,

receiving said third base-to-user message at said third user station,

5 transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a third user-to-base message from said third user station to said base station, and

receiving, during a fourth time slot, said third user-to-base message at said base station.

10

143. The method of claim 140 wherein said second base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command.

15

144. The method of claim 143 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, a subsequent message transmitted from said second user station to said base station is advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

20

145. The method of claim 140 wherein at least one of said first base-to-user message, said second base-to-user message, and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

25

146. The method of claim 140 further comprising the step of transmitting, prior to said step of transmitting said control pulse preamble, a plurality of preamble bursts over said base transmission frequency band from  
30 said base station to said first user station.

147. The method of claim 140 wherein said second time slot immediately follows said first time slot.

148. The method of claim 140 wherein a relative starting reference point for each time slot, including said first time slot and said second slot, is offset in time for said user transmission frequency band with  
5 respect to said base transmission frequency band.

149. The method of claim 148 wherein said offset is of sufficient duration to allow said first base-to-user message to propagate from said base station to said first  
10 user station, and said user-to-base message to propagate from said first user station to said base station.

150. The method of claim 140 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread  
15 spectrum or a narrowband mode.

151. A frame structure for communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising  
20 a plurality of time frames, and  
a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, each of said time slots comprising  
a base interval, during which either a base-to-user message may be transmitted over a first  
25 frequency band by a base station to a first user station in established communication with said base station during said time slot, or a general polling message may be transmitted over said first frequency band indicating the availability of said time slot,  
30 a user interval, during which either a user-to-base message may be received over a second frequency band at said base station from a second user station in established communication with said base station, or a reply message may be received over said second  
35 frequency band at said base station from a third user

station seeking to establish communication with said base station, and

5 a preamble interval during which a control pulse preamble may be received over said second frequency band from a fourth user station in established communication with said base station, whereby said base station may respond to said fourth base station in a following time slot.

10 152. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command directed to said first user station.

15 153. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

20 154. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein, in response to receiving said reply message at said base station from said third user station, said base station transmits a timing adjustment command directed to said third user station.

25 155. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein said user interval is offset from said base interval by a predetermined amount of time less than the duration of an entire time slot.

30 156. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein said user interval and said base interval are substantially overlapping.

35 157. The frame structure of claim 151 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

158. An interleaved air interface frame structure for carrying out time division multiplexed communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising

5 a plurality of time frames during each of which a base station may transmit over a first designated frequency band and user stations may transmit over a second designated frequency band according to a predetermined protocol,

10 a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, said time slots having a base station portion corresponding to said first designated frequency band and a user station portion corresponding to said second designated frequency band,

15 wherein said base station portion comprises a base message interval, during which said base station may transmit a first base-to-user message to a first base station in response to having received a first control pulse preamble in an immediately preceding time slot, and  
20 a base preamble interval, during which said base station may transmit at least one preamble burst directed to a second user station, whereby said second user station may respond to said at least one preamble burst in a following time slot, and

25 wherein said user station portion comprises a user message interval, during which a third user station may transmit a user-to-base message in response to having received a second base-to-user message in an immediately preceding time slot, and a control pulse preamble  
30 interval, during which a fourth user station may transmit a control pulse preamble to said base station, whereby said base station may respond to said control pulse preamble in said following time slot.

159. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein said user station portion is offset from said base station portion by a predetermined amount of time less than the duration of an entire time slot.

5

160. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command directed to said first user station.

10

161. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

15

162. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

20

163. The interleaved air interface frame structure of claim 158 wherein said control pulse preamble is concatenated.

25

164. An interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure for communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations, comprising

a plurality of time frames, and

30 a plurality of time slots in each of said time frames, said time slots each comprising a base station portion and a user station portion, wherein a duplex pairing consists of a first base station portion in a first time slot and a first user station portion in a second time slot subsequent to said first time slot,



whereby a base station transmits over a first designated frequency band a base-to-user message during said first base station portion, and said base station receives over a second designated frequency band a user-to-base message from a user station during said first user station portion, and

wherein for each time slot said user station portion is offset by a predetermined amount of time from said base station portion.

10

165. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 wherein said predetermined amount of time is of sufficient duration to allow said base-to-user message to propagate from said base station to said first user station, and said user-to-base message to propagate from said first user station to said base station so as to be received in said first user station portion.

20

166. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command directed to said user station.

25

167. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 wherein at least one of said base-to-user message and said user-to-base message is encoded using a spread spectrum technique.

30

168. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 wherein said base station is capable of transmitting in either a spread spectrum or a narrowband mode.

200

169. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 164 further comprising a preamble interval in each time slot during which said base station receives a control pulse preamble over said second  
5 designated frequency band from a user station in established communication prior to exchanging traffic messages therewith.

170. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame  
10 structure of claim 169 further comprising a plurality of preamble burst intervals in each time slot during which said base station transmits a plurality of preambles, one in each preamble burst interval, over said first designated frequency band to a user station in established  
15 communication prior to receiving said control pulse preamble.

171. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 170 wherein said preamble burst  
20 intervals are three in number.

172. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 170 wherein the number of preamble burst intervals equals a number of antennas used by said  
25 base station, and wherein said user station measures a relative received signal quality of said preamble bursts and transmits to said base station, as part of said user-to-base message, an indication of said relative received signal quality.

30

173. The interleaved frequency division duplex frame structure of claim 172 wherein said base station selects, in response to said relative received signal quality, one or more of said antennas for subsequent messages to said  
35 user station.

201

174. A frame structure for duplex communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising

a plurality of time frames, and

5 a plurality of time slots for each time frame, each time slot comprising a base transmission interval during which a base station may transmit over a first designated frequency band a base-to-user message to a first one of a plurality of user stations in established communication  
10 with said base station, and a user transmission interval during which said base station may receive a user-to-base message over a second designated frequency band from a second one of said user stations,

wherein the start of said user transmission interval  
15 in each time slot is offset by a predetermined amount of time relative to the start of said base transmission interval.

175. The frame structure of claim 174 wherein said  
20 base-to-user message to said first user station comprises a forward link transmission of a duplex pairing, and a reverse link transmission from said first user station to said base station occurs in a time slot immediately following said forward link transmission.

25

176. The frame structure of claim 175 wherein said forward link transmission and said reverse link transmission are separated by an amount of time sufficient to allow propagation of said forward link transmission to  
30 said first user station and propagation of said reverse link transmission to said base station, without simultaneous reception and transmission by said first user station.

202

177. The frame structure of claim 175 further comprising a preamble interval preceding said first forward link transmission, during which a control pulse preamble is received over said second designated frequency band by said base station from said first user station.

178. The frame structure of claim 175 wherein said base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command whereby a relative timing of said reverse link transmission is adjusted.

179. A method of communication between a base station and a plurality of user stations over multiple frequency bands, comprising the steps of

transmitting, during a first time interval and over a base transmission frequency band, a first base-to-user message from a base station to a first user station,

receiving said first base-to-user message at said first user station,

transmitting, over a user transmission frequency band, a control pulse preamble from a second user station to said base station,

receiving, during a second time interval, said control pulse preamble at said base station,

transmitting, during a third time interval and over said base transmission frequency band, a second base-to-user message from said base station to said second user station,

receiving said second base-to-user message at said second user station,

transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a user-to-base message from said first user station to said base station, and

receiving, during a fourth time interval, said user-to-base message at said base station.

203

180. The method of claim 179 wherein said first time interval and said second time interval occupy a first time slot, and said third time interval and said fourth time interval occupy a second time slot.

5

181. The method of claim 180 wherein said second time slot immediately follows said first time slot.

182. The method of claim 180 wherein said third time interval and said fourth time interval are at least partially overlapping.

10

183. The method of claim 179 further comprising the steps of

15

transmitting, over said user transmission frequency band, a second user-to-base message from said second user station to said base station, and

receiving, during a fifth time interval, said second user-to-base message at said base station.

20

184. The method of claim 179 wherein said second base-to-user message comprises a timing adjustment command.

25

185. The method of claim 184 wherein, in response to said timing adjustment command, a subsequent message transmitted from said second user station to said base station is advanced or retarded by an amount of time specified by said timing adjustment command.

30

186. A method of duplex communication between a base station and a user station over a plurality of frequency bands, comprising the steps of

transmitting, over a first frequency band, a control pulse preamble from a user station to a base station,

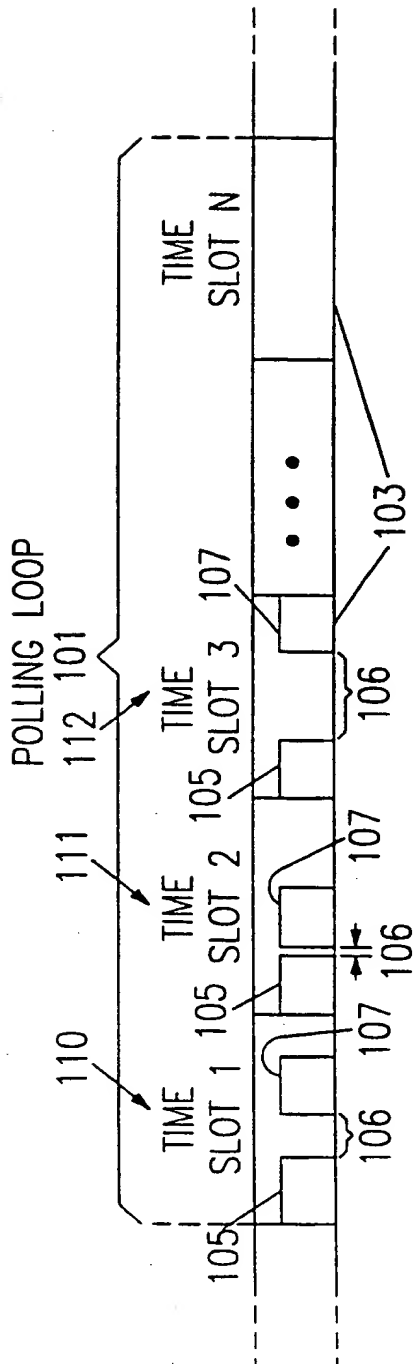
35

204

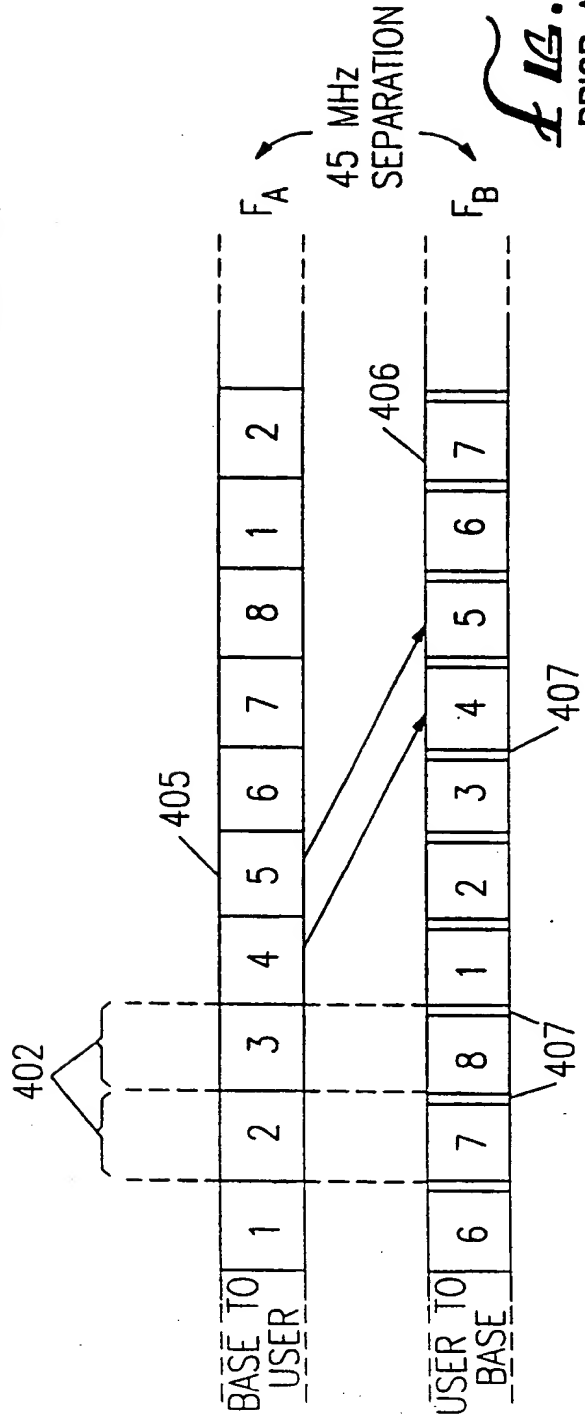
receiving at said user station, over a second frequency band, a base-to-user message from said base station, and

transmitting, over said first frequency band, a user-  
5 to-base message from said user station to said base station.

1/33



*fig. 1*  
PRIOR ART



*fig. 4*  
PRIOR ART

2/33

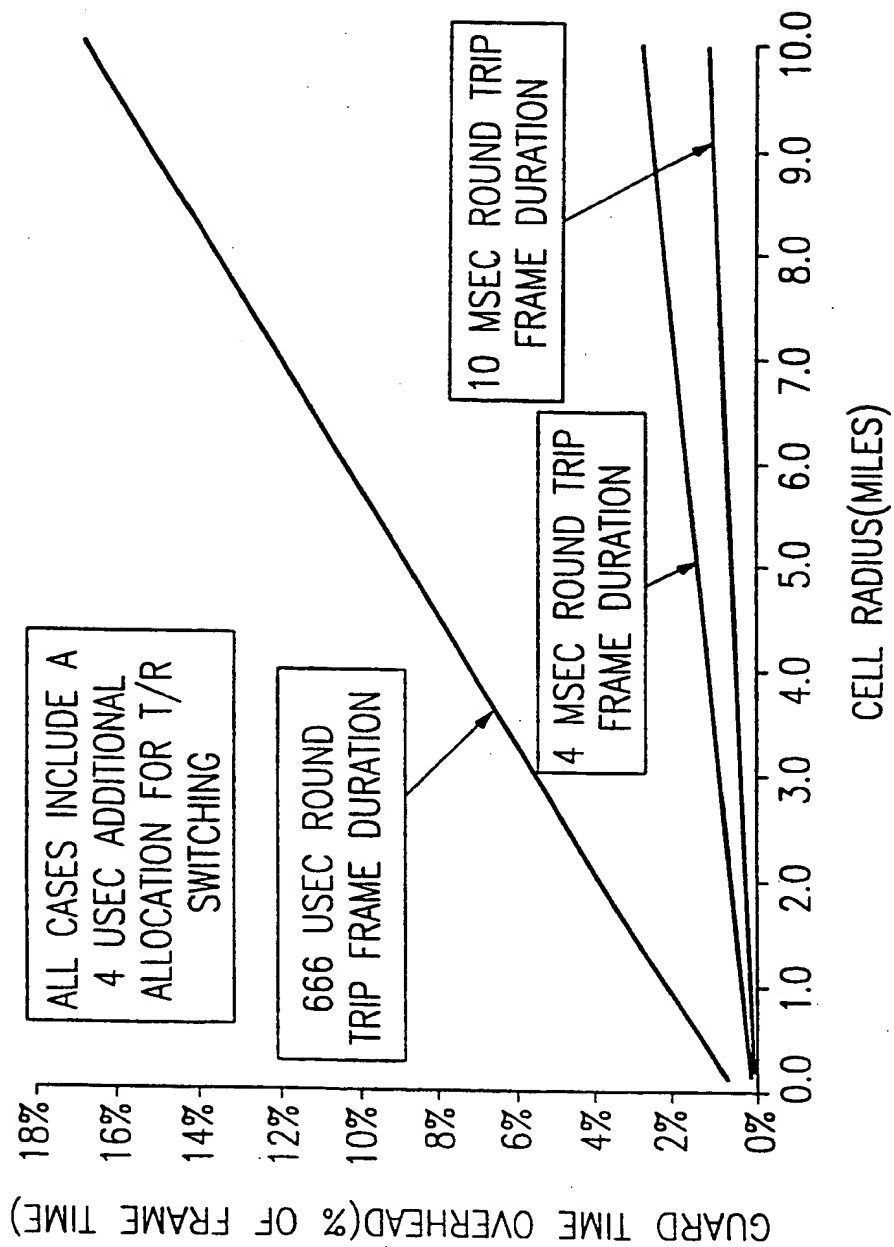


Fig. 2



3/93

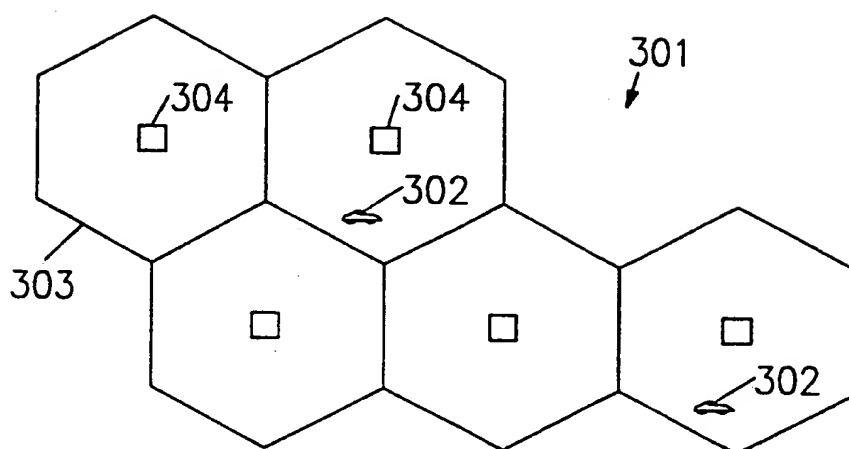


FIG. 3A

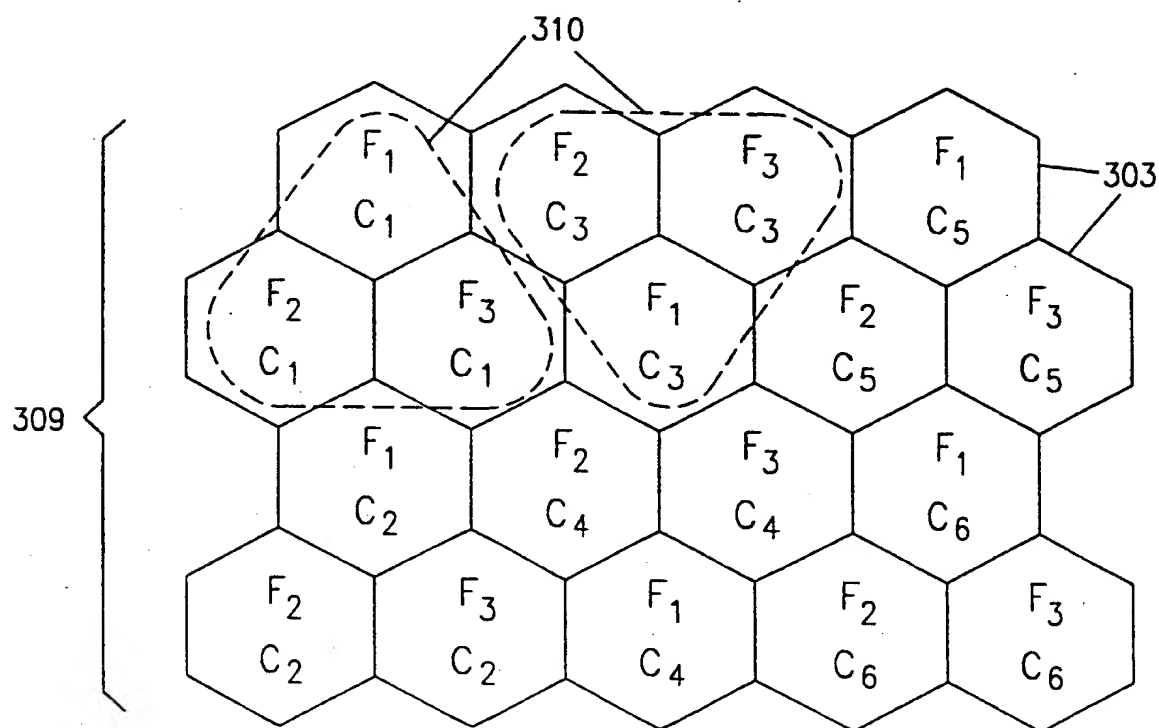


FIG. 3B

4/33

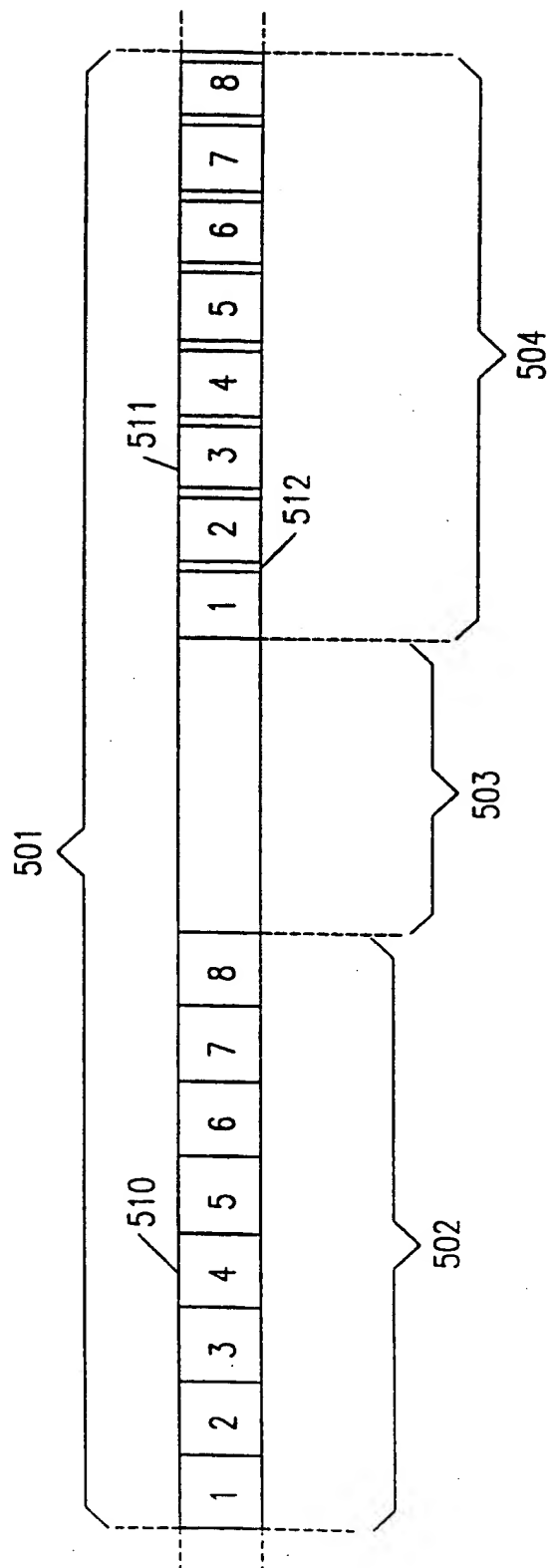
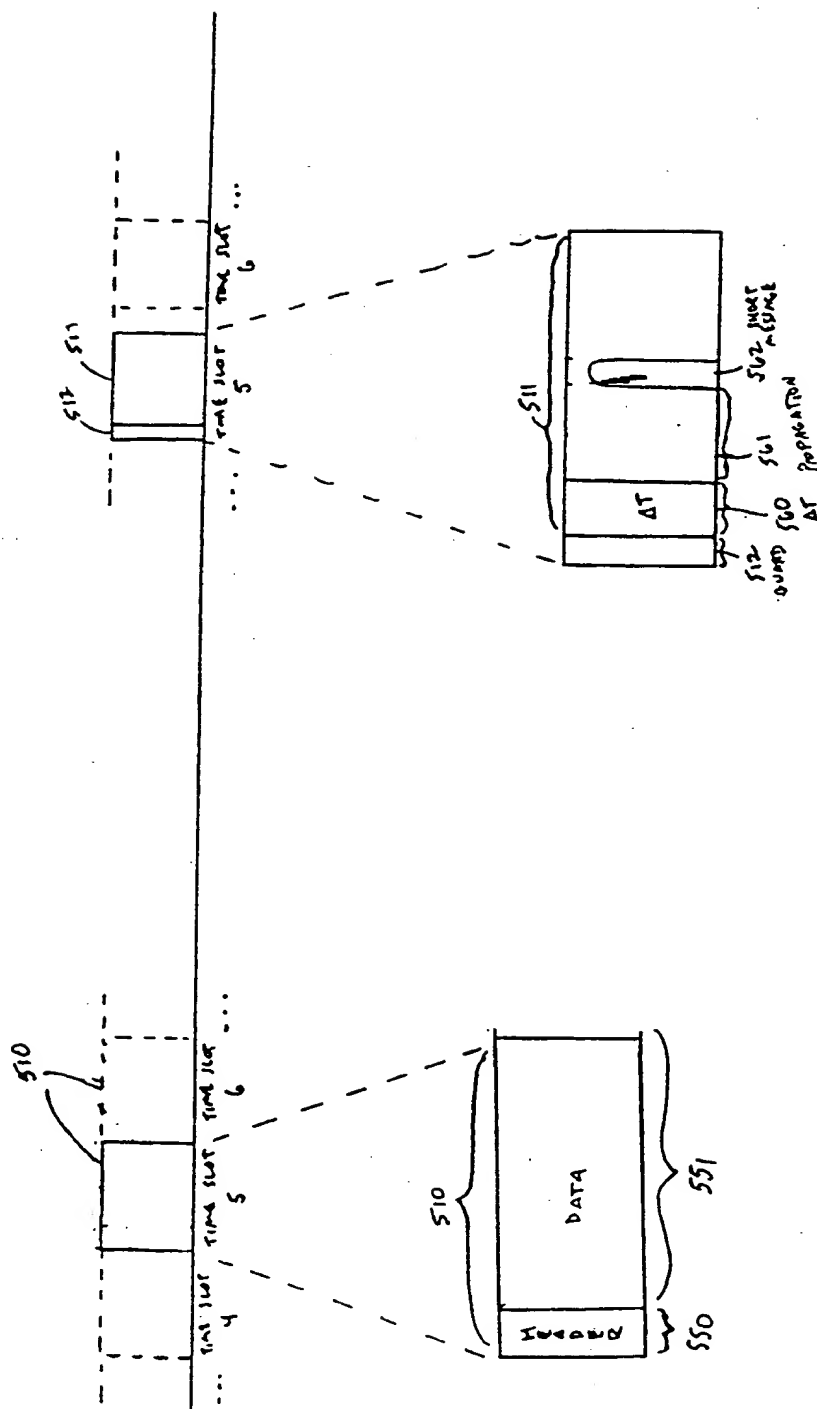
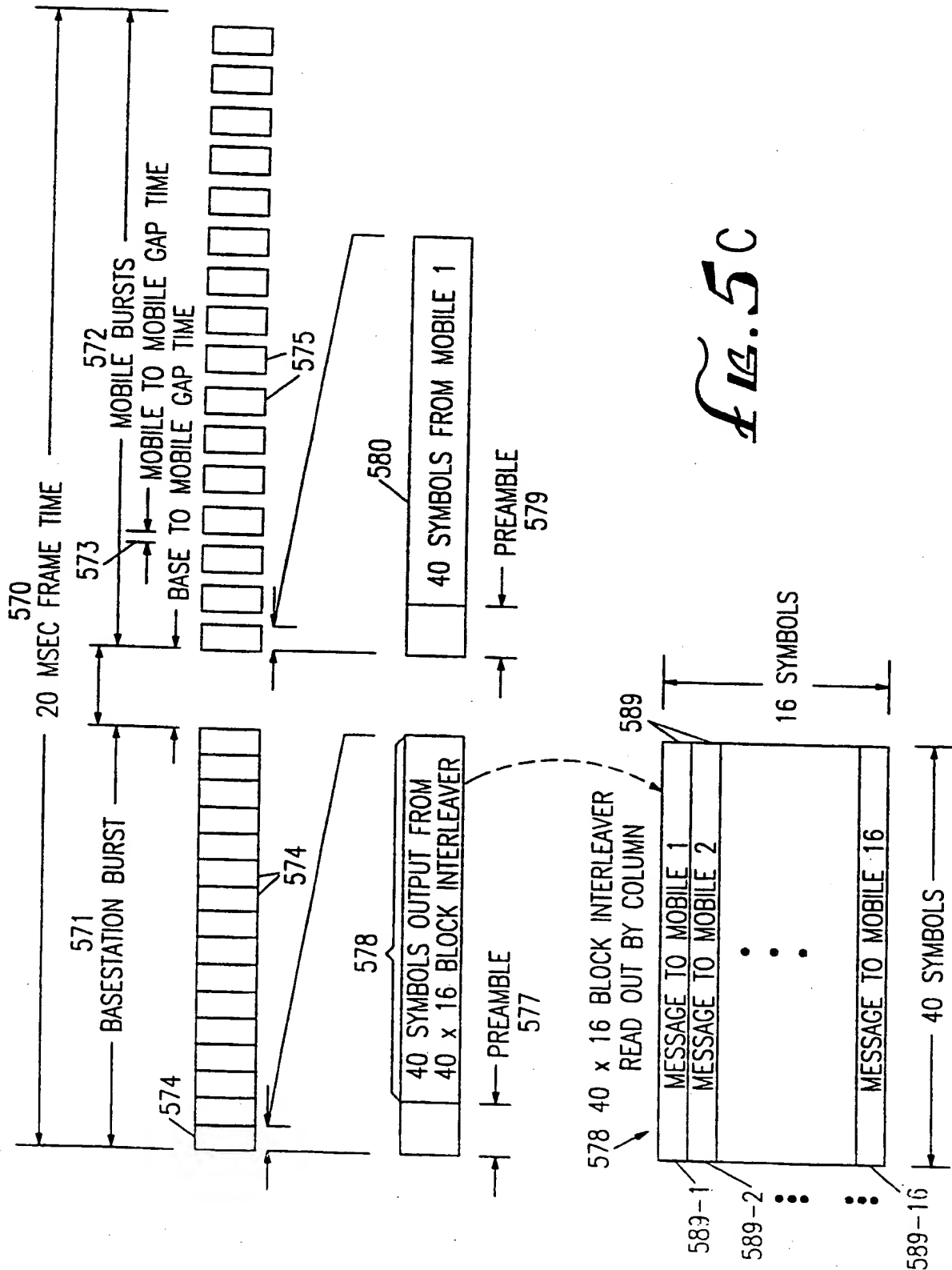


fig. 5A

FIGURE 5B



6/93



7/33

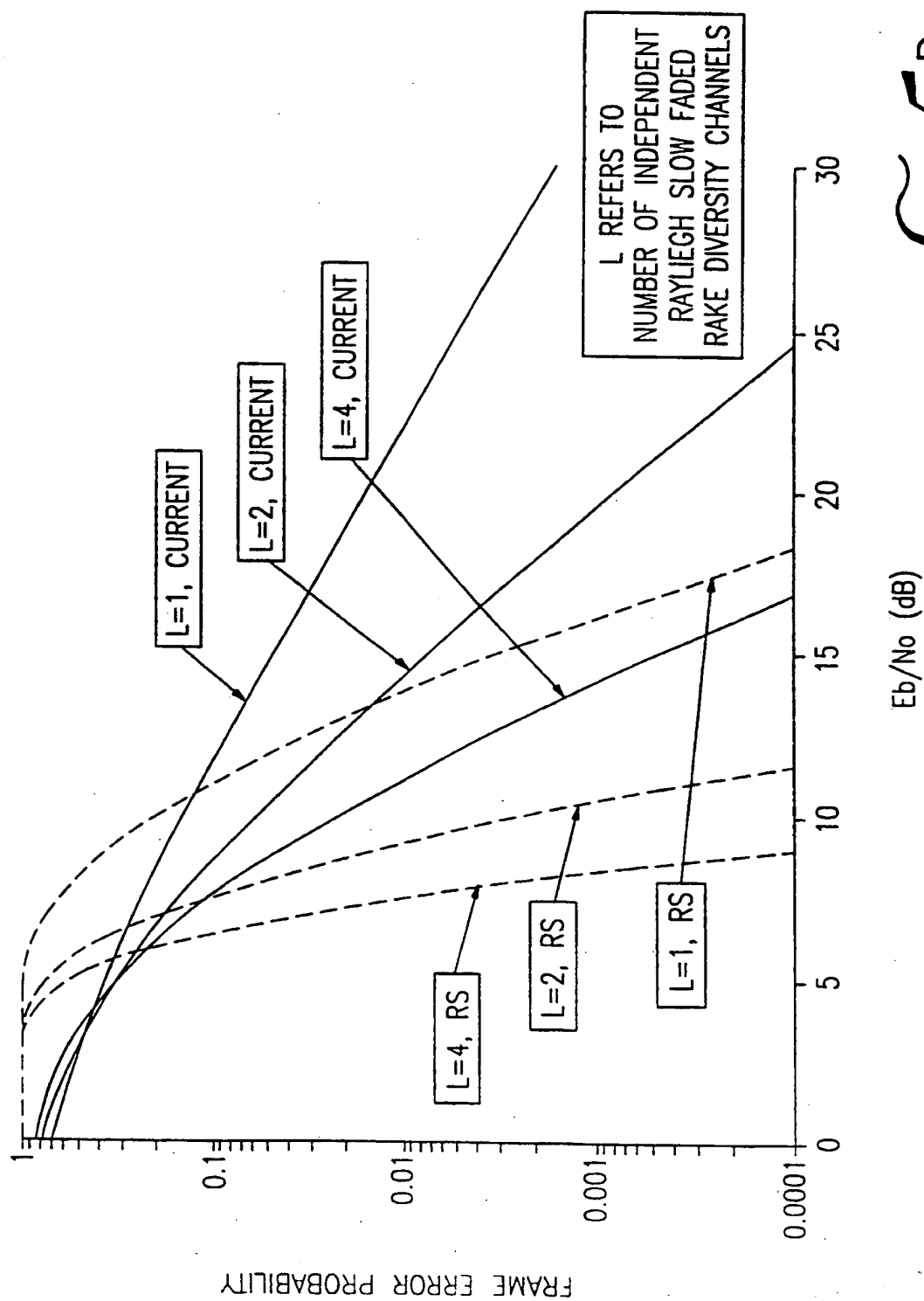


fig. 5D

8/33

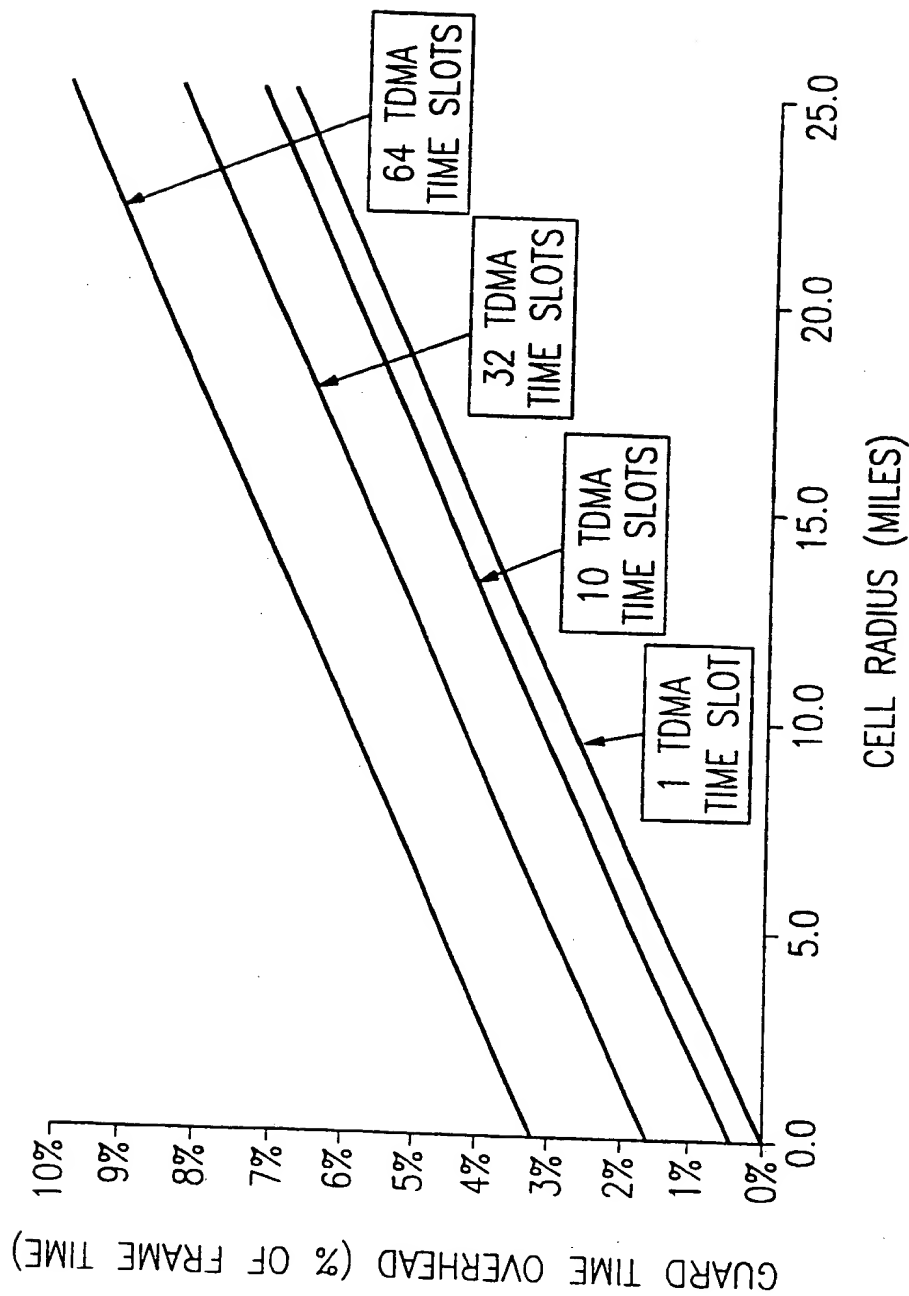


Fig. 6

9/33

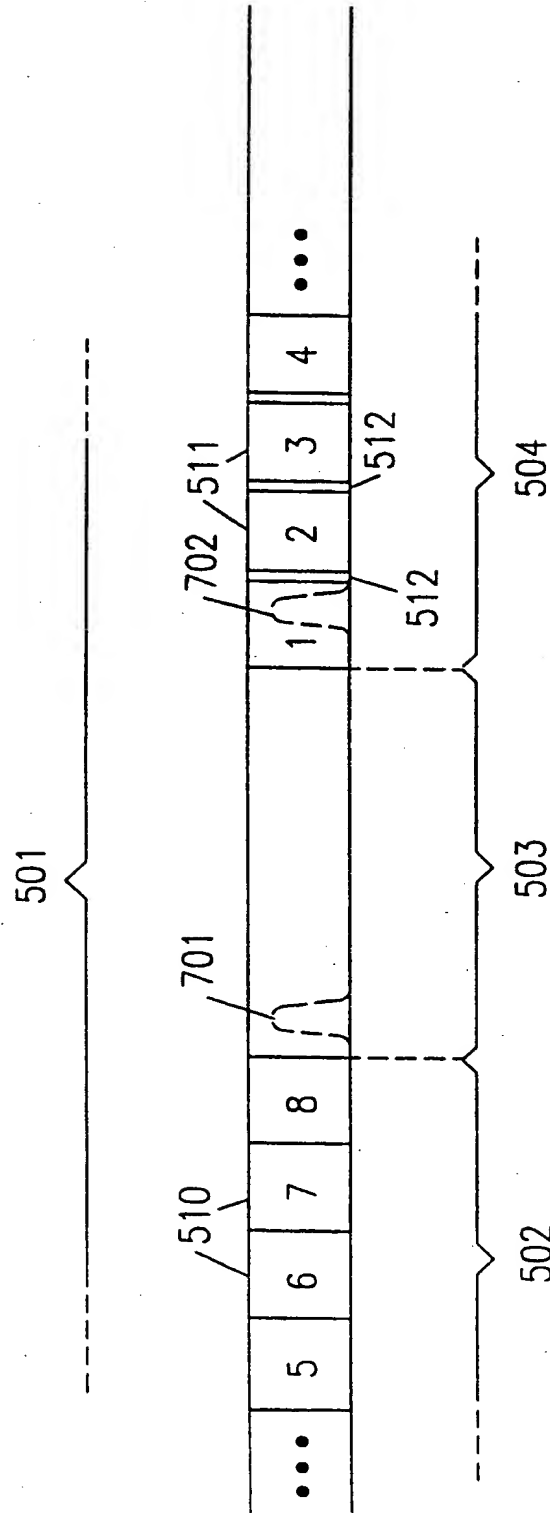
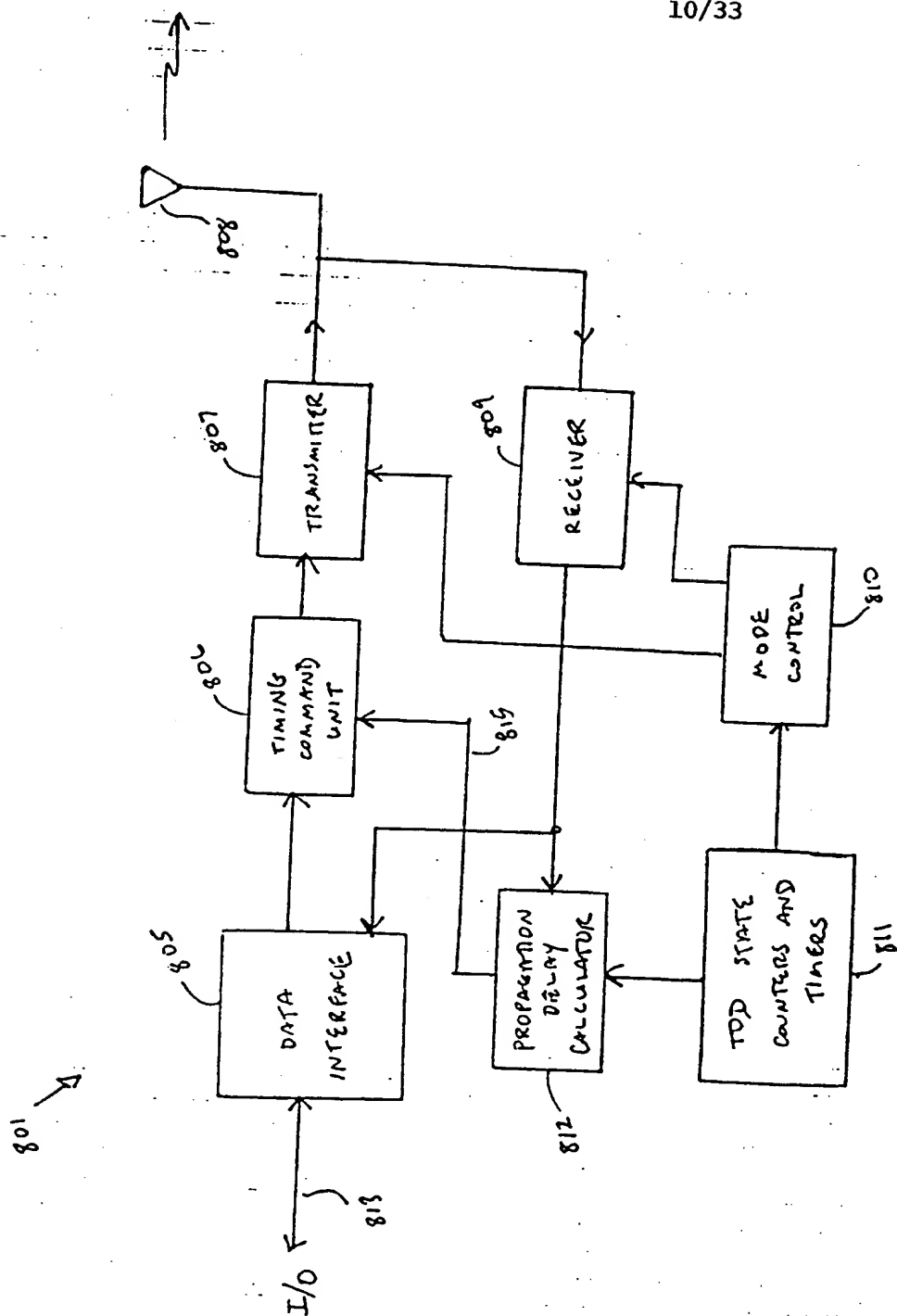


Fig. 7

10/33



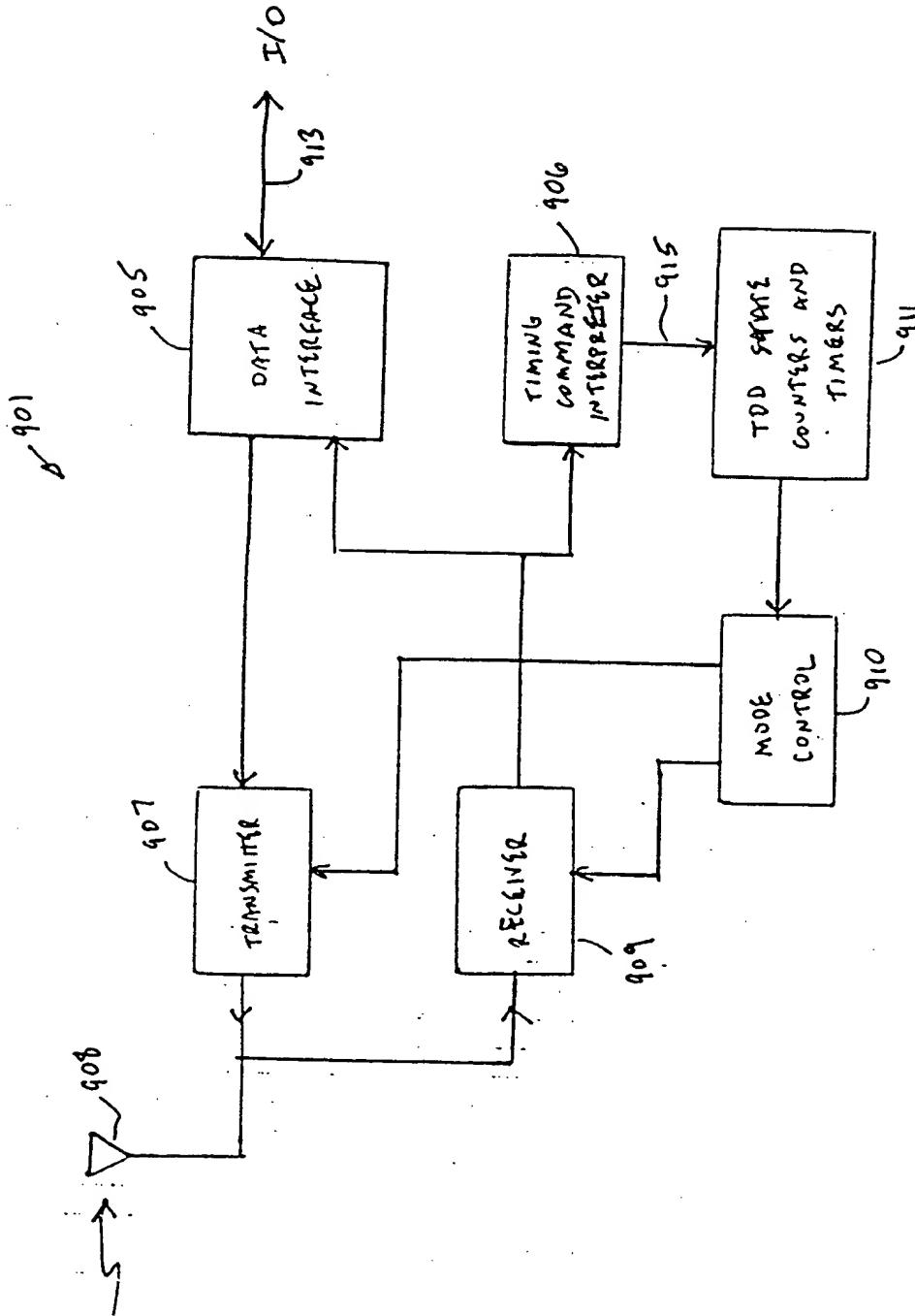
BASE STATION

FIGURE 9A





12/33



USER STATION

FIGURE 9

13/33

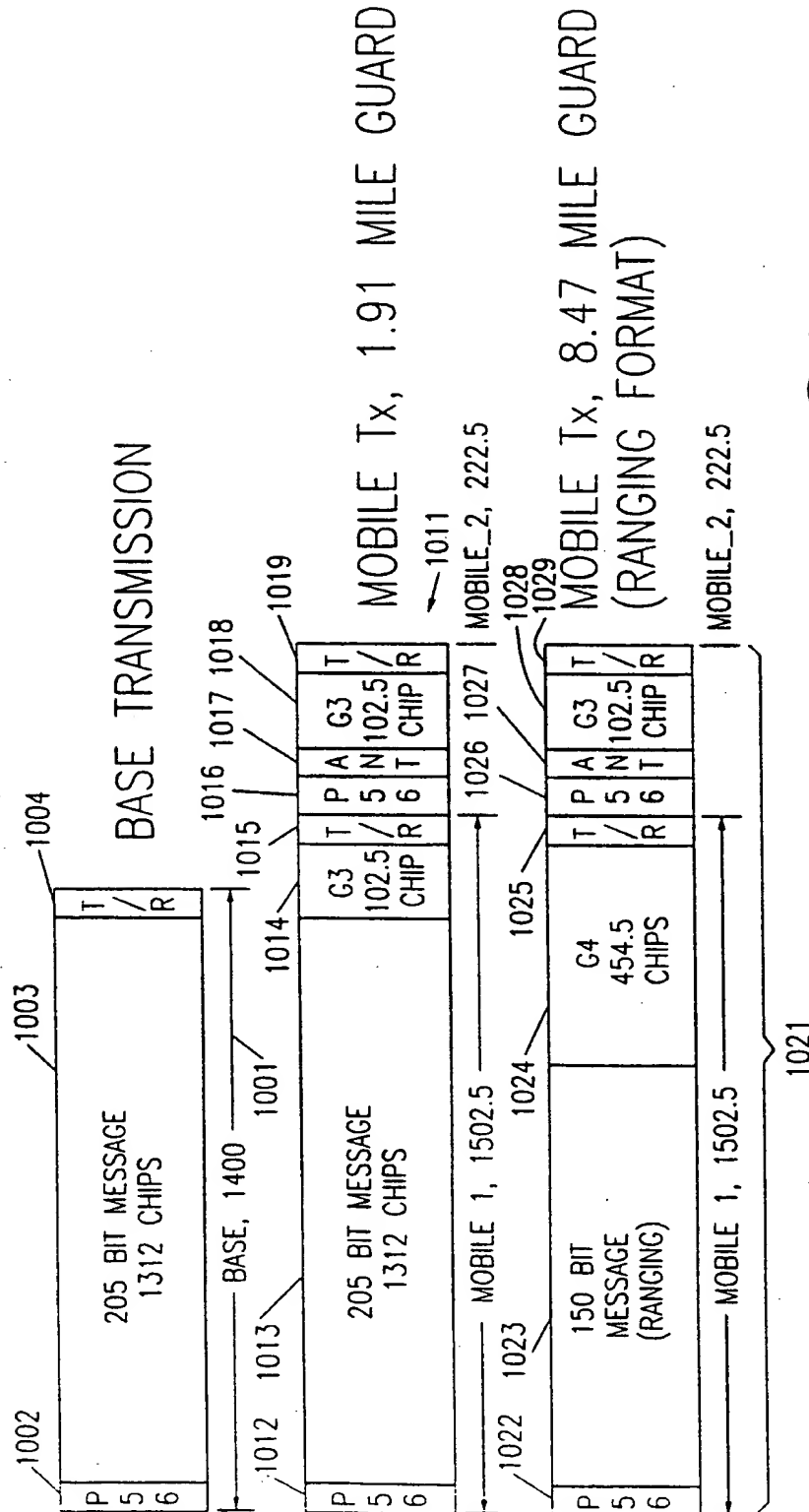
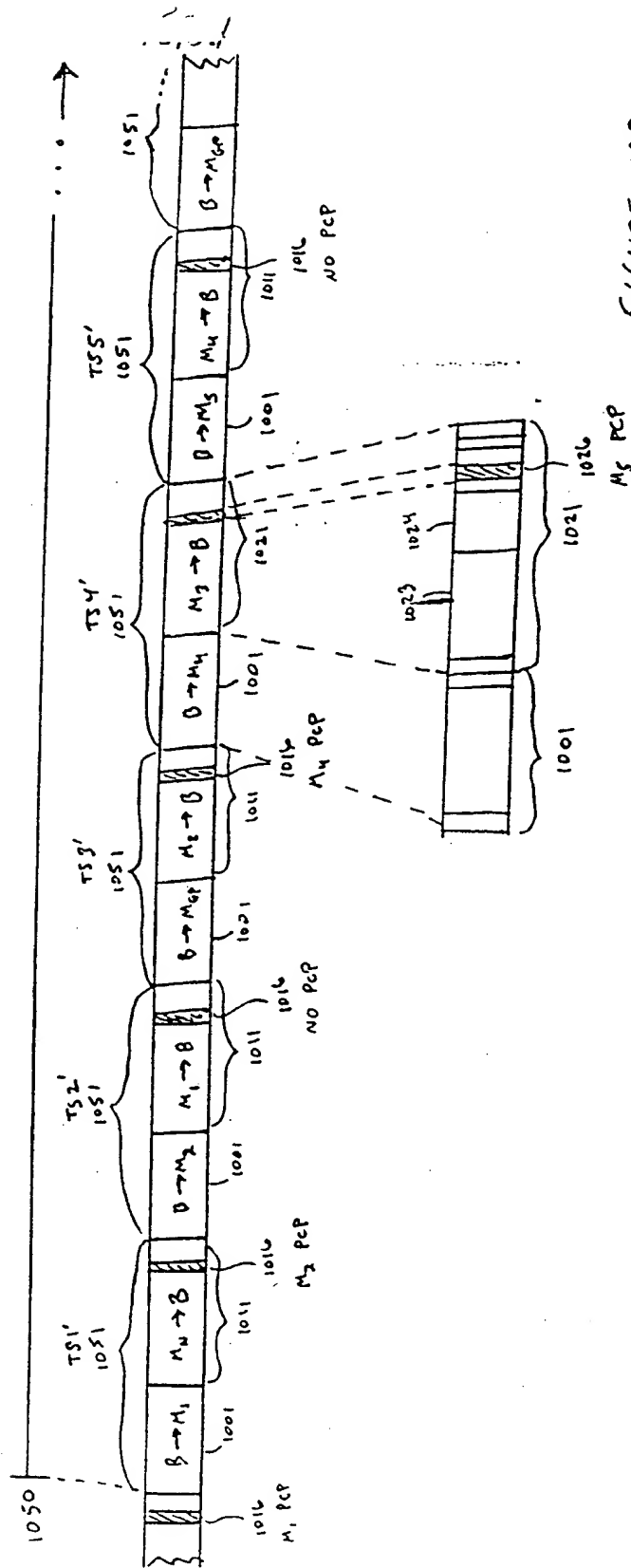
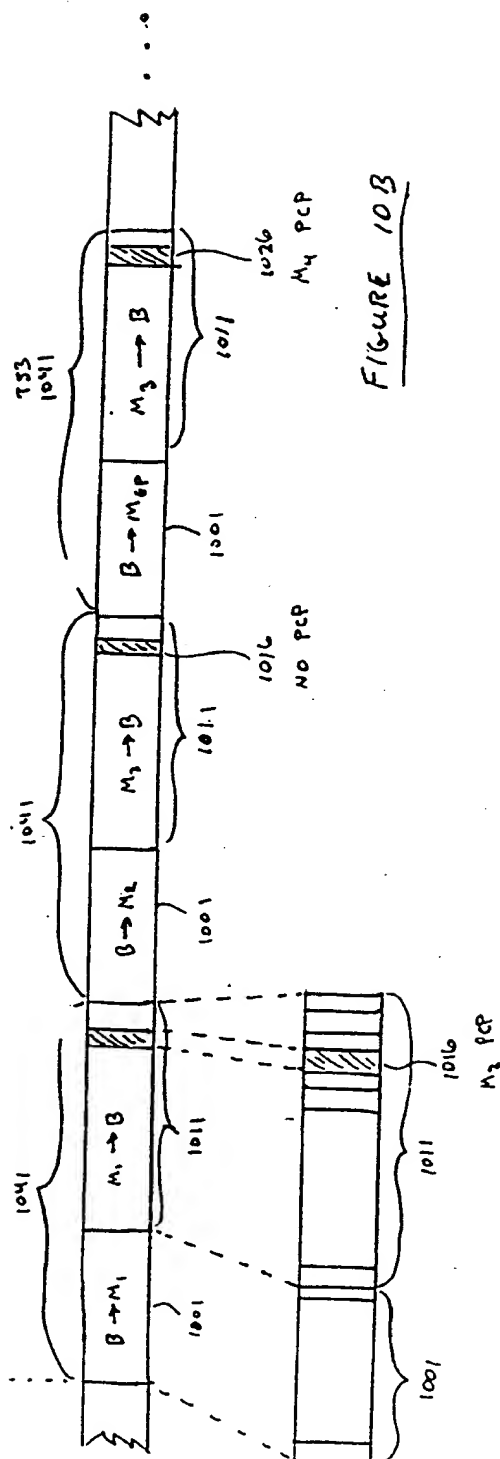


Fig. 10A



15/33

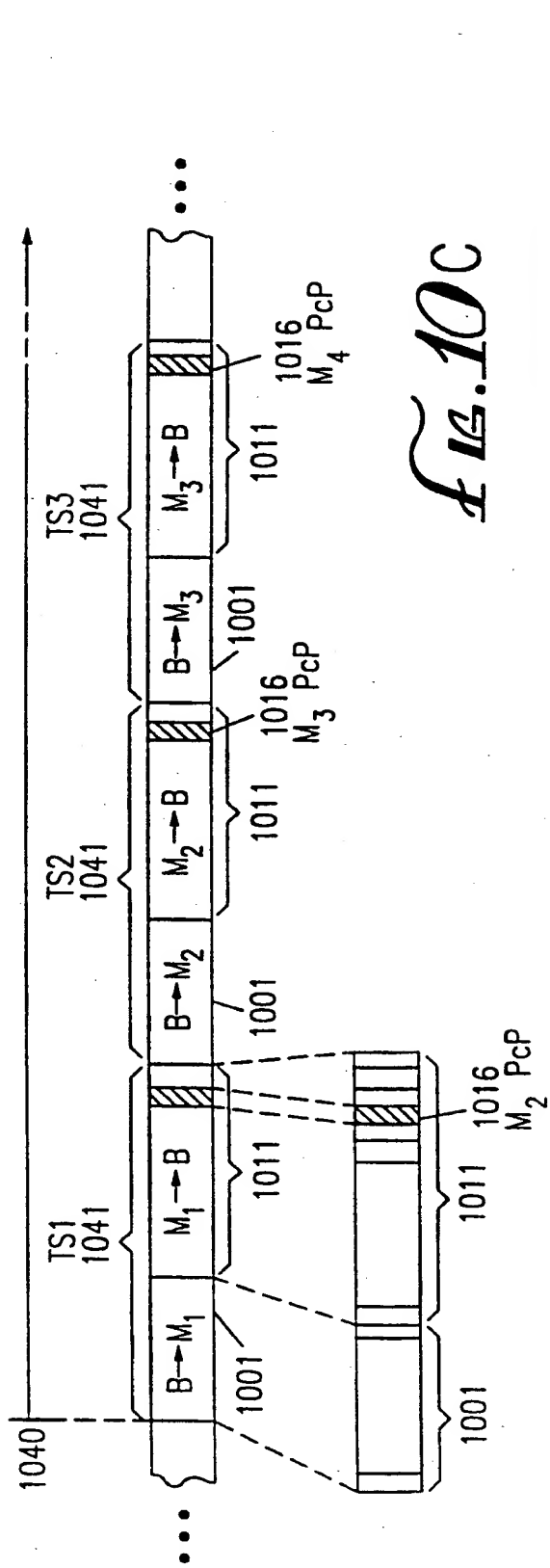


FIG. 10C

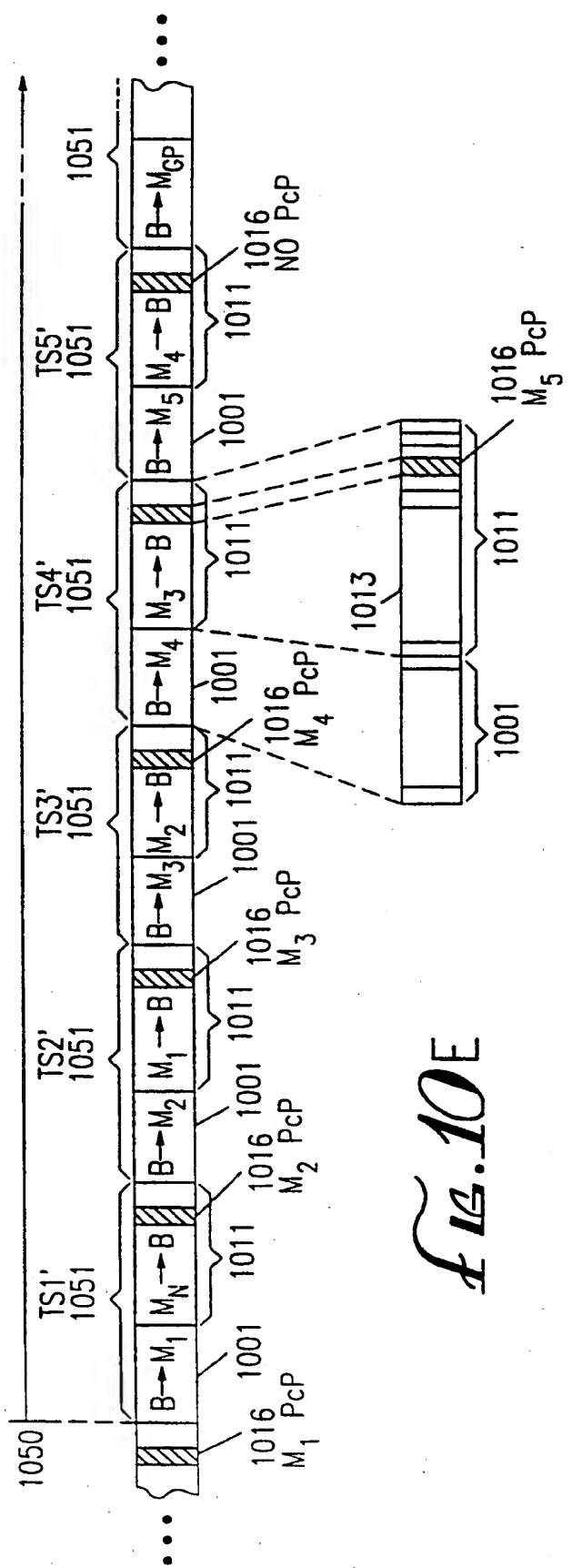


FIG. 10E

16/33

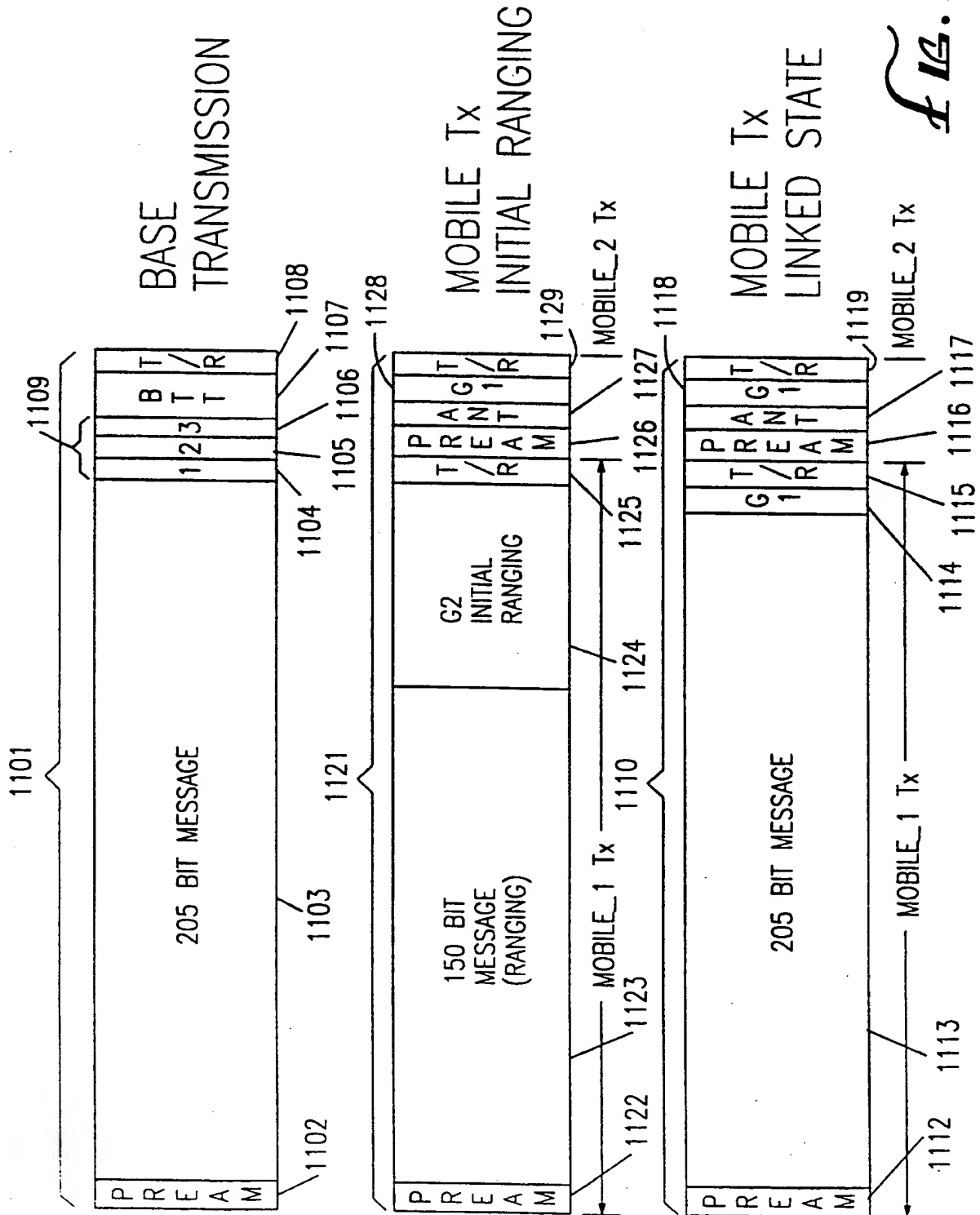


FIG. 11A

17/33

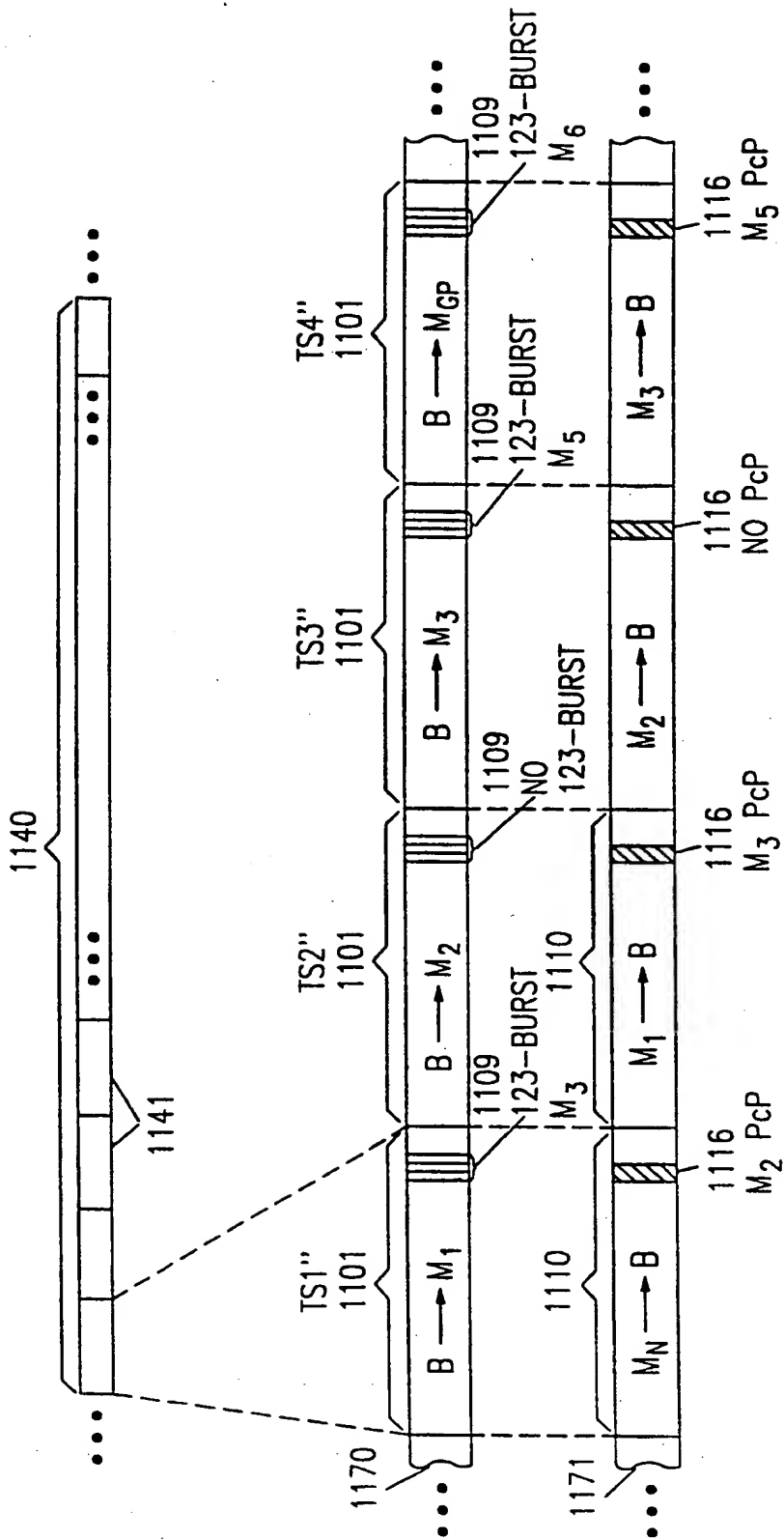


FIG. 11B

18/33

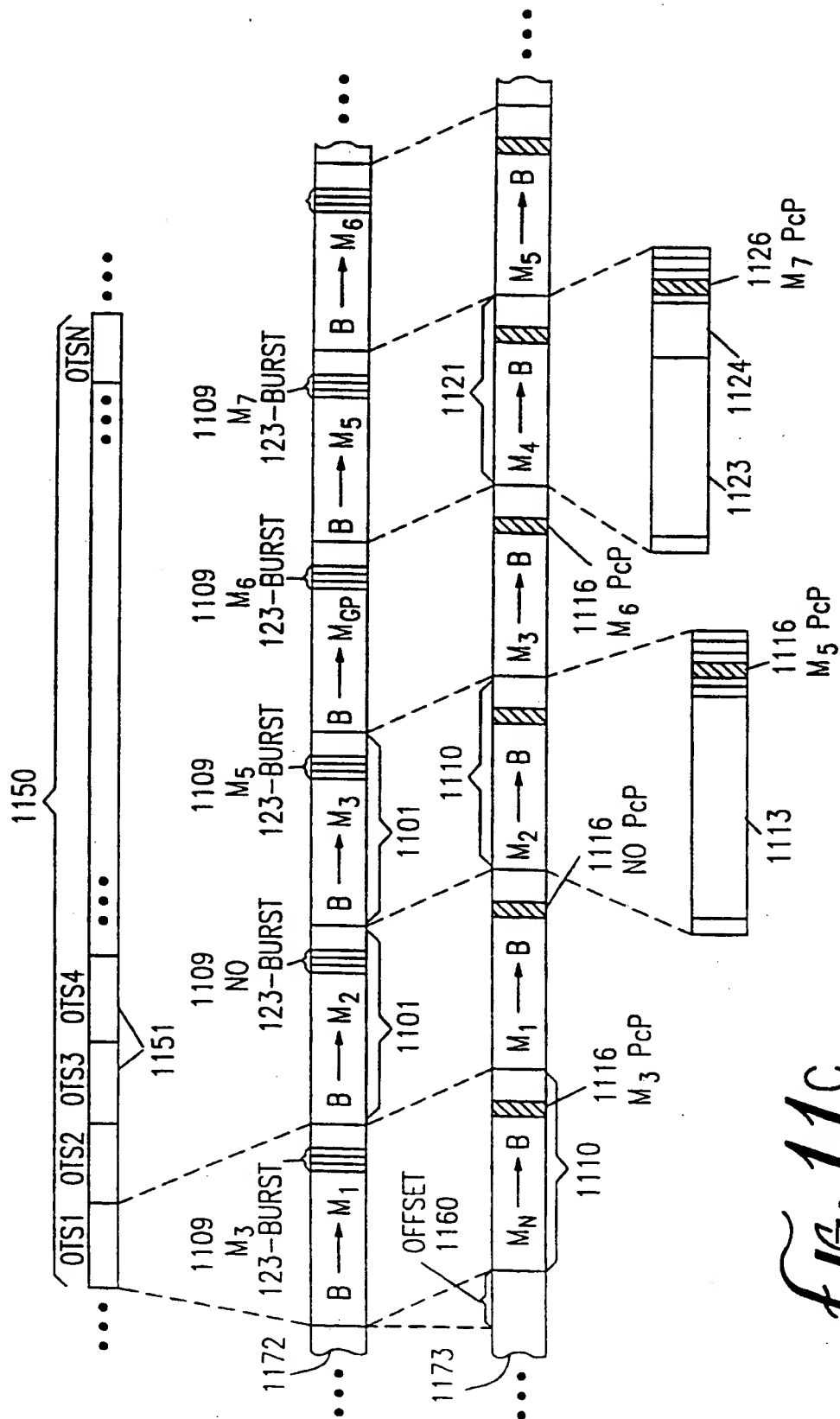
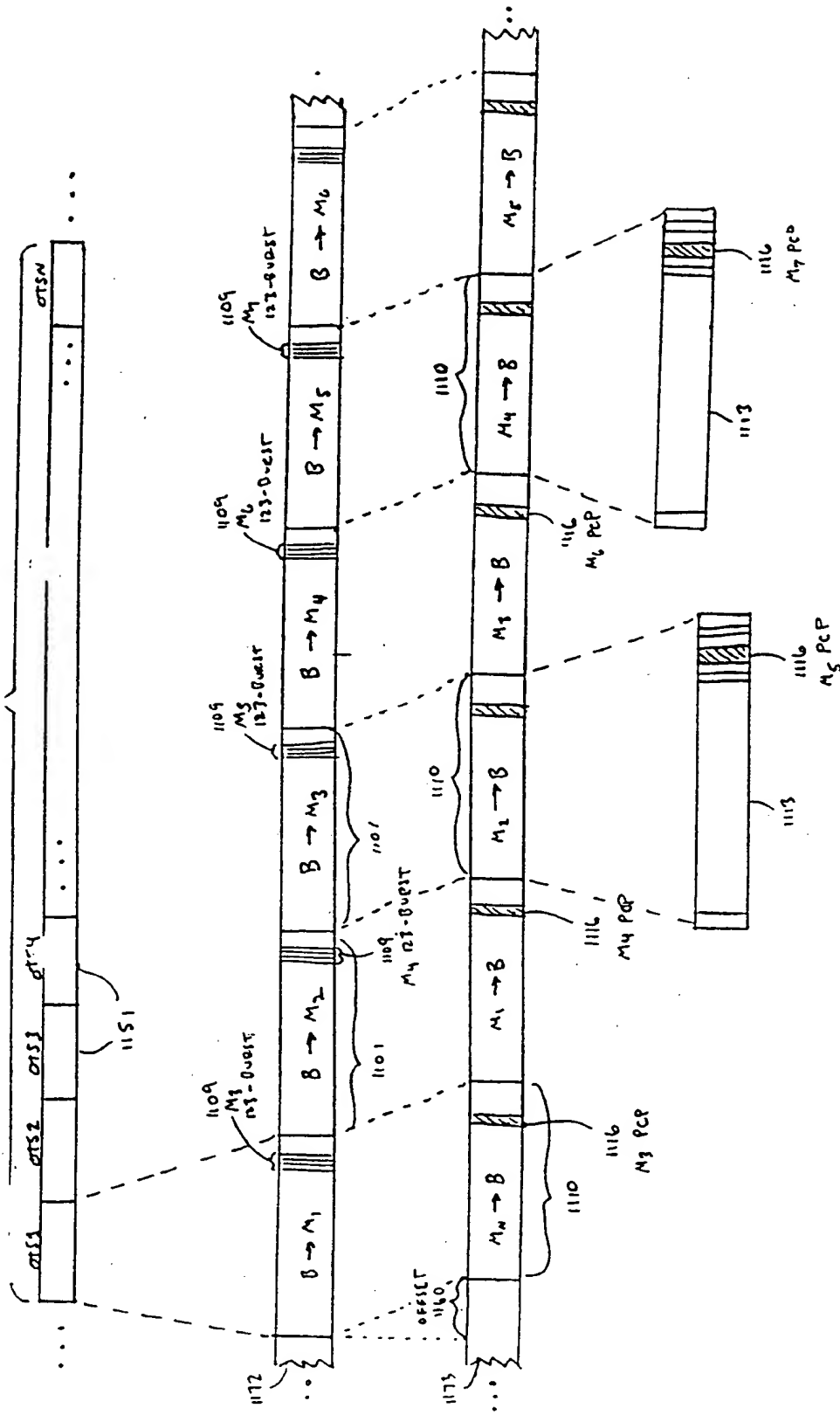


FIG. 11C





OFFSET INTERLEAVED  
FRAME FORMAT

FIGURE 11D

20/33

Table 12a

## 21 Bit Header Bit Utilization

TABLE 12A-1Base  
PollingReference 3.1.2.14.1  
Page 47

Total Bits	21
Field	
-----	
B/H	1
E	1
G/S	1
P/N	1
SA	1
PWR	3
CU	2
Opp. Link Qual.	2
Timing Command	3
Header FCW	4
-----	
Bits Used	19
Spares	2

Base  
Traffic3.1.2.14.2  
49TABLE 12A-2

Total Bits	21
Field	
-----	
B/H	1
E	1
C/N	1
P/N	1
SA	1
PWR	3
B/W Grant	2
CU	2
Opp. Link Qual.	2
Timing Command	3
Header FCW	4
-----	
Bits Used	21
Spares	0

TABLE 12A-3Mobile Station  
PollingReference 3.1.2.14.3  
Page 52

Total Bits	21
Field	
-----	
B/H	1
E	1
G/S	1
P/N	1
SA	1
PWR	3
BW Request	1
CU	x
Opp. Link Qual.	2
Timing Command	x
Header FCW	4
-----	
Bits Used	15
Spares	6

Mobile Station  
Traffic3.1.2.14.4  
53TABLE 12A-4

Total Bits	21
Field	
-----	
B/H	1
E	1
S/N	1
P/N	1
SA	1
PWR	3
B/W Grant	1
CU	x
Opp. Link Qual.	2
Timing Command	x
Header FCW	4
-----	
Bits Used	15
Spares	6

FIGURE 12A



SYMMETRIC FRAME FORMATS ASYMMETRIC FRAME FORMATS  
(TDD, NON-RANGING ONLY)

*Fig. 12C*

TABLE 12C-1

BASE SYMMETRIC BEARER
--------------------------

TABLE 12C-2

BASE ASYMMETRIC BEARER
---------------------------

TABLE 12C-3

BASE DOMINANT  
MOBILE

MOBILE STATION SYMMETRIC BEARER
------------------------------------

MOBILE STATION ASYMMETRIC BEARER
-------------------------------------

TOTAL BITS	205	TOTAL BITS	45	TOTAL BITS	365	TOTAL BITS	205	TOTAL BITS	365	45
FIELD		FIELD		FIELD		FIELD		FIELD		
HEADER	21	HEADER	21	HEADER	21	HEADER	21	HEADER	21	21
D CHANNEL	8	D CHANNEL	8	D CHANNEL	8	D CHANNEL	8	D CHANNEL	8	8
B-CHANNEL	160	B-CHANNEL	0	B-CHANNEL	320	B-CHANNEL	160	B-CHANNEL	320	0
FRAME FCW	16	FRAME FCW	16	FRAME FCW	16	FRAME FCW	16	FRAME FCW	16	16
OR		OR		OR		OR		OR		
HEADER	21	HEADER	21	HEADER	21	HEADER	21	HEADER	21	21
D CHANNEL	8	D CHANNEL	8	D CHANNEL	8	D CHANNEL	8	D CHANNEL	8	8
B-CHANNEL	176	B-CHANNEL	16	B-CHANNEL	336	B-CHANNEL	176	B-CHANNEL	336	16
FRAME FCW	0	FRAME FCW	0	FRAME FCW	0	FRAME FCW	0	FRAME FCW	0	0
BITS USED	205	BITS USED	45	BITS USED	365	BITS USED	205	BITS USED	365	45
SPARES	0	SPARES	0	SPARES	0	SPARES	0	SPARES	0	0

23/33

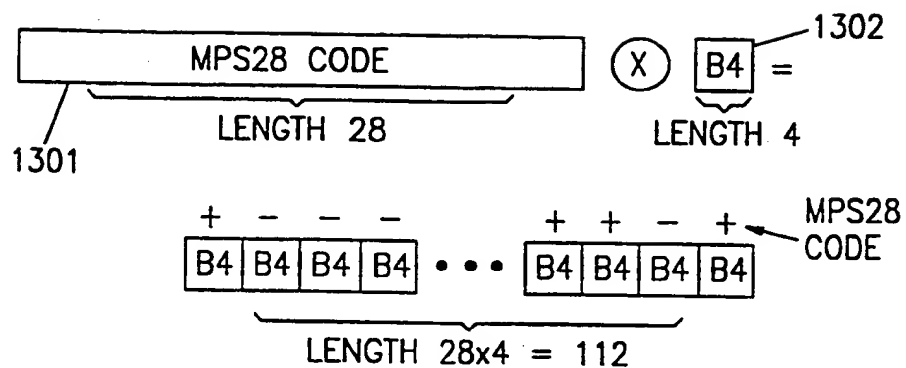


Fig. 13A

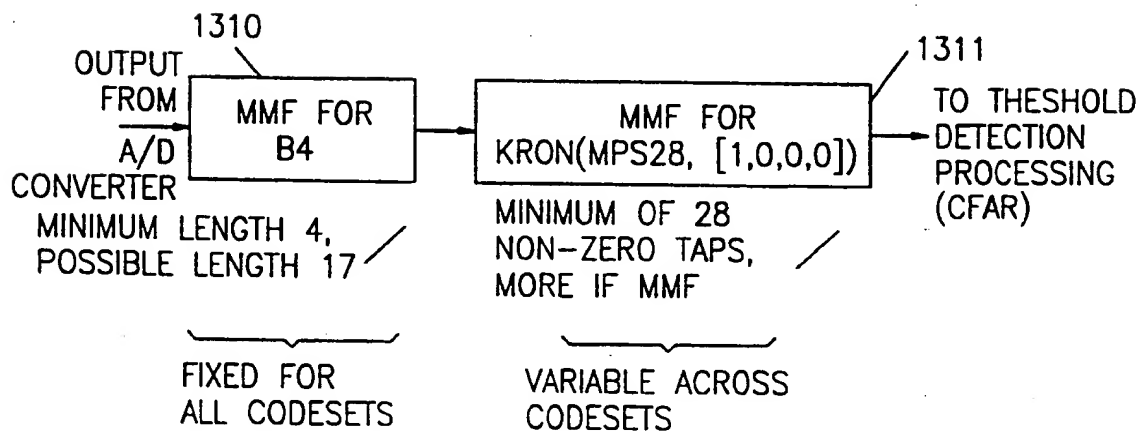


Fig. 13B

24/33

CASE IDENTIFIER	PREAMBLE LENGTH	99.9% DETECTION THRESHOLD(dBm)		ANTENNA PROBE LENGTH	90% DETECTION THRESHOLD(dBm)	
		NO SIDELOBE	-7 dB PEAK SIDELOBE		NO SIDELOBE	-7 dB PEAK SIDELOBE
HIGH TIER INTERFACES AND ISM INTERFACES						
5.00HT	56	-100.4	-96.1	28	-100.6	-94.8
2.80HF	112	-105.9	-101.6	56	-106.1	-100.4
1.60HF	84	-107.1	-102.8	28	-105.5	-99.8
1.40HF	112	-108.9	-104.6	28	-106.1	-100.4
LOW TIER INTERFACES AND UNLICENSED ISOCRONOUS INTERFACES						
5.00HT	56	-100.4	-96.1	28	-100.6	-94.8
0.64LF	28	-106.3	-102.0	13	-106.2	-100.4
0.56LF	28	-106.9	-102.6	13	-106.8	-101.0
0.35LF	25	-108.4	-104.2	11	-108.1	-102.3

<sup>1</sup>PFA<sub>1</sub>SHOT=1%, NF=4 dB, IMPLEMENTATION LOSS=3 dB, CFAR LOSS=2 dB

fig. 13C

15/33

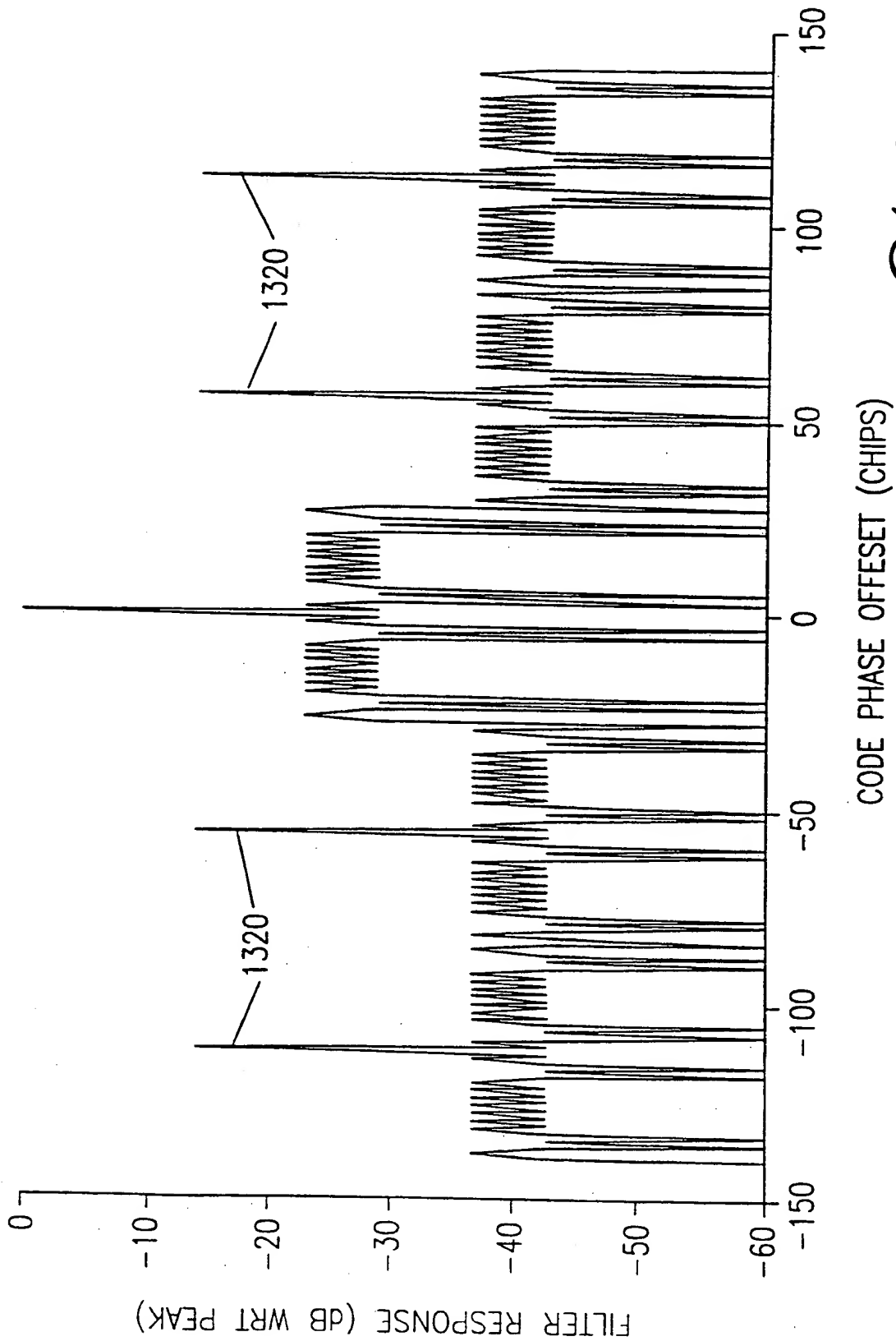
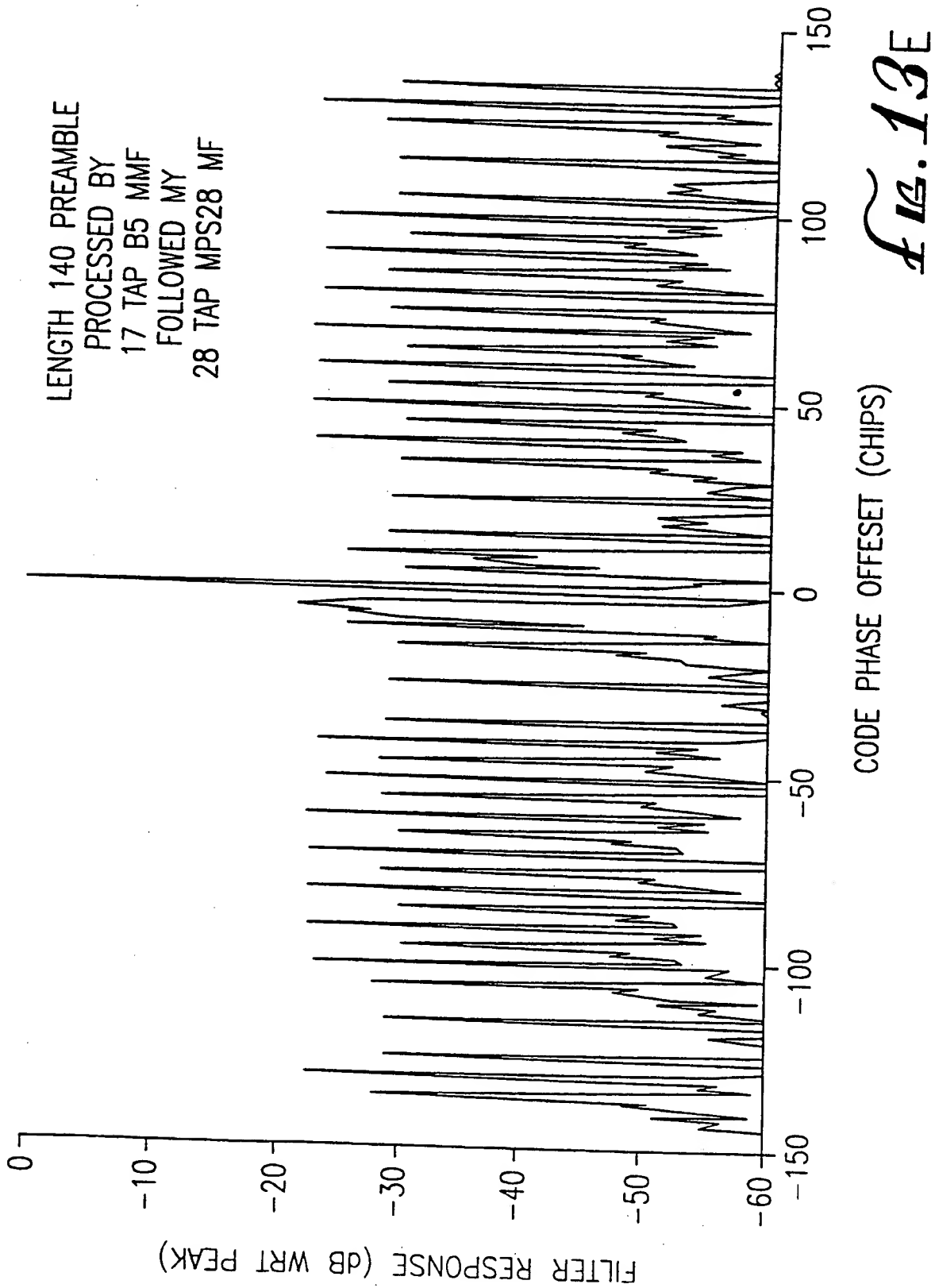


FIG. 13D

26/99



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)



27/33

AIR INTERFACE SUMMARY<sup>1</sup>

CASE IDENTIFIER	DUPLEX METHOD	TIME SLOTS	CHIPRATE (MHz)	CHANNELS IN ALLOCATION	SENSITIVITY (dBm)	BASES REQUIRED	
HIGH TIER INTERFACES (L <sub>ANT</sub> =2, L <sub>RAKE</sub> =2, 30 MHz ALLOCATION)							
5.00HT	TDD	32/25	5.00	8.0	-97.1	R <sup>2</sup> PROP	R <sup>4</sup> PROP
2.80HF	FDD	32	2.80	7.1	-99.6	100.00%	100.00%
1.60HF	FDD	20	1.60	12.5	-102.0	55.98%	74.82%
1.40HF	FDD	16	1.40	14.3	-102.6	31.99%	56.56%
LOW TIER INTERFACES (L <sub>ANT</sub> =3, L <sub>RAKE</sub> =1, 30 MHz ALLOCATION)							
5.00HT	TDD	32	5.00	8.0	-99.1	R <sup>2</sup> PROP	R <sup>7</sup> PROP
0.64LF	FDD	40	0.64	31.3	-92.9	100.00%	100.00%
0.56LF	FDD	35	0.56	35.7	-93.5	410.20%	149.67%
0.35LF	FDD	25	0.35	57.1	-95.5	358.92%	144.07%
UNLICENSED ISOCRONOUS INTERFACES(L <sub>ANT</sub> =3,L <sub>RAKE</sub> =1, 1.25 MHz MAX CHANNEL BANDWIDTH)							
5.00HT	TDD	32	5.00	0.3	-99.1	R <sup>2</sup> PROP	R <sup>7</sup> PROP
0.64LT	TDD	20	0.64	2.6	-92.9	100.00%	100.00%
0.56LT	TDD	17	0.56	3.0	-93.5	410.20%	149.67%
0.35LT	TDD	12	0.35	4.8	-95.5	358.92%	144.07%
ISM AIR INTERFACES (L <sub>ANT</sub> =3, L <sub>RAKE</sub> =1, 83.5 MHz ALLOCATION)							
5.00HT	TDD	32	5.00	22.3	-99.1	224.39%	125.98%
2.80HT	TDD	16	2.80	19.9	-101.6	R <sup>2</sup> PROP	R <sup>7</sup> PROP
1.60HT	TDD	10	1.60	34.8	-104.0	100.00%	100.00%
1.40HT	TDD	8	1.40	39.8	-104.6	55.98%	84.72%
						31.99%	72.21%
						27.99%	69.50%

<sup>1</sup> SENSITIVITY IMPROVEMENTS OF 3 TO 6 dB ARE POSSIBLE IN LOW TIER AND UNLICENSED ISOCRONOUS AIR INTERFACES.

fig. 1A

18/93

fig. 15

## DIGITAL RANGE LIMITS FOR PHYSICAL LAYER AIR INTERFACES

CASE IDENTIFIER	DUPLEX METHOD	CHIPRATE (MHz)	RANGING USED	TIME SLOTS	DIGITAL RANGE (MILES)
HIGH TIER INTERFACES					
5.00HT	TDD	5.00	YES	32	10.06
2.80HF	FDD	2.80	YES	32	6.12
1.60HF	FDD	1.60	YES	20	12.81
1.40HF	FDD	1.40	YES	16	12.77
LOW TIER INTERFACES					
5.00HT	TDD	5.00	YES	32	10.06
0.64LF	FDD	0.64	YES	40	8.59
0.56LF	FDD	0.56	YES	35	5.66
0.35LF	FDD	0.35	YES	25	9.85
UNLICENSED ISOCRONOUS INTERFACES					
5.00HT	TDD	5.00		32	10.06
0.64LT	TDD	0.64		40	8.59
0.56LT	TDD	0.56		35	5.66
0.35LT	TDD	0.35		25	9.85
ISM AIR INTERFACES					
5.00HT	TDD	5.00		32	10.06
2.80HT	TDD	2.80		32	6.12
1.60HT	TDD	1.60		20	12.81
1.40HT	TDD	1.40		16	12.77

19/33

DUPLEX METHOD	BASE STATION OPERATING MODE	MOBILE HAS DIPLEXER	FORWARD LINK ANTENNA PROBE SIGNAL EMPLOYED	MOBILE SUPPORTS INTERLEAVED TRAFFIC STREAMS	NUMBER OF BASE SLOTS FORBIDDEN BETWEEN		MAXIMUM TRAFFIC MODE SLOT AGGREGATION POTENTIAL TO SINGLE MOBILE
					GP/SP NEGOTIATIONS	SAME MOBILE TRAFFIC SLOTS	
TDD	RANGING	N/A	NO	NO	1	1	50%
"	"	"	"	YES	1	0	100%
"	NON-RANGING	"	"	NO	0	0	100%
"	"	"	"	YES	0	0	100%
FDD	RANGING	NO	NO	NO	2	3	25%
"	"	"	"	YES	2	3	25%
"	NON-RANGING	"	"	NO	1	1	50%
"	"	"	"	YES	1	1	50%
FDD	RANGING	YES	NO	NO	2	3	25%
"	"	"	"	YES	2	0	100%
"	NON-RANGING	"	"	NO	1	1	50%
"	"	"	"	YES	1	0	100%
FDD	RANGING	NO	YES	NO	2	3	25%
"	"	"	"	YES	2	3	25%
"	NON-RANGING	"	"	NO	1	1	50%
"	"	"	"	YES	1	1	50%
FDD	RANGING	YES	YES	NO	2	3	25%
"	"	"	"	YES	2	3	25%
"	NON-RANGING	"	"	NO	1	1	50%
"	"	"	"	YES	1	1	50%
FDD	RANGING	YES	YES	NO	2	3	25%
"	"	"	"	YES	2	0	100%
"	NON-RANGING	"	"	NO	1	1	50%
"	"	"	"	YES	1	1	50%

FRAME LAYOUT IMPACTS ON  
RULES FOR NEXT BASE  
TRANSMISSION & SLOT  
AGGREGATION

NOTE: SLOT NEGOTIATIONS  
RELATES ONLY TO GP->SP,  
SP->SP AND SP-> TRAFFIC  
NEGOTIATIONS WHEN PCP  
HANDSHAKE IS INACTIVE.

fig. 10

30/99

LOW TIER SYSTEM<sup>1</sup>—SUMMARIES FOR HANDSETS WITH & WITHOUT ANTENNA SELECTION DIVERSITY

CASE DESIGNATION	SYMBOL RATE (ksp/s)	RANGING FORMAT USED	NUMBER OF FULL DUPLEX, 8 kbps SLOTS <sup>2</sup>	DIGITAL RANGE (MILES)	4DPSK SENSITIVITY (dBm)									
					NO FADE	L <sub>ANT</sub> =1	L <sub>ANT</sub> =2	L <sub>ANT</sub> =3						
MOBILES HAVE SELECTION DIVERSITY ANTENNA (FORWARD LINK SENDS TWO PREAMBLES, NO PCP)														
0.350LF_D	350	YES	NO	50	50	40	10.64	3.99	13.31	-97.8	-87.2	-92.5	-94.5	
0.280LF_D	280	YES	NO	NO	40	35	13.31	4.99	11.64	-98.8	-88.1	-93.5	-95.4	
0.224LF_D	224	YES	NO	NO	32	28	16.63	6.24	14.55	-99.8	-89.1	-94.5	-96.4	
MOBILES DO NOT HAVE SELECTION DIVERSITY ANTENNA (FORWARD LINK SENDS THREE ANTENNA PROBES, PCP USED ONCE LINKED)														
0.350LF_P	350	YES	NO	NO	40	40	35	10.78	3.33	6.65	-97.8	-87.2	-92.5	-94.5
0.280LF_P	280	YES	NO	NO	35	28	11.64	1.66	8.32	-98.8	-88.1	-93.5	-95.4	
0.224LF_P	224	YES	NO	NO	28	20	13.72	2.08	15.38	-99.8	-89.1	-94.5	-96.4	

1: BASED ON 4QAM MODULATION FORMAT.

2: UNLICENSED ISOCRONOUS TDD MODES HAVE INT(FDD SLOT COUNT/2) FULL DUPLEX TIME SLOTS (ABOUT 1/2 AS MANY).

fig. 17

3/1/93

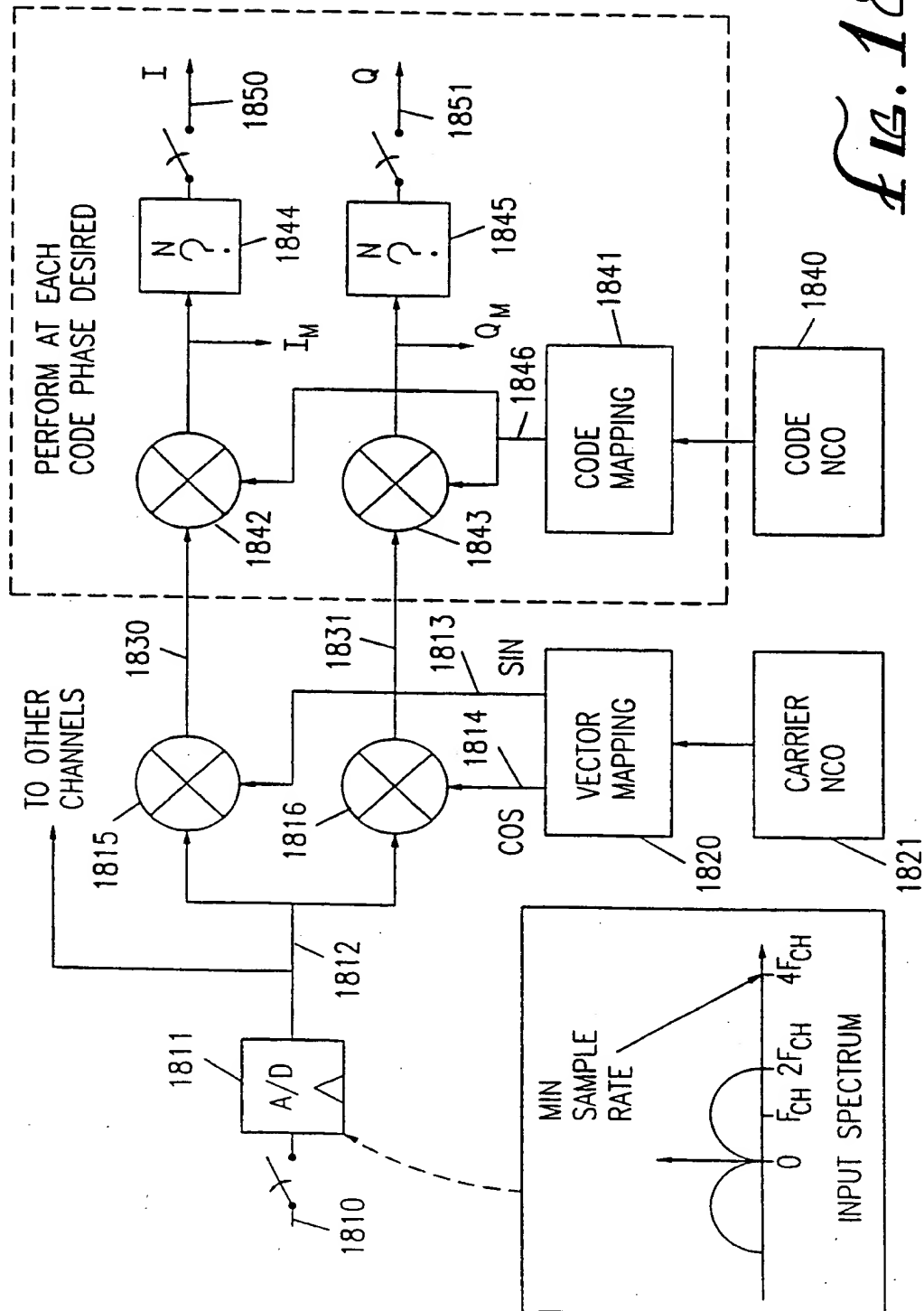
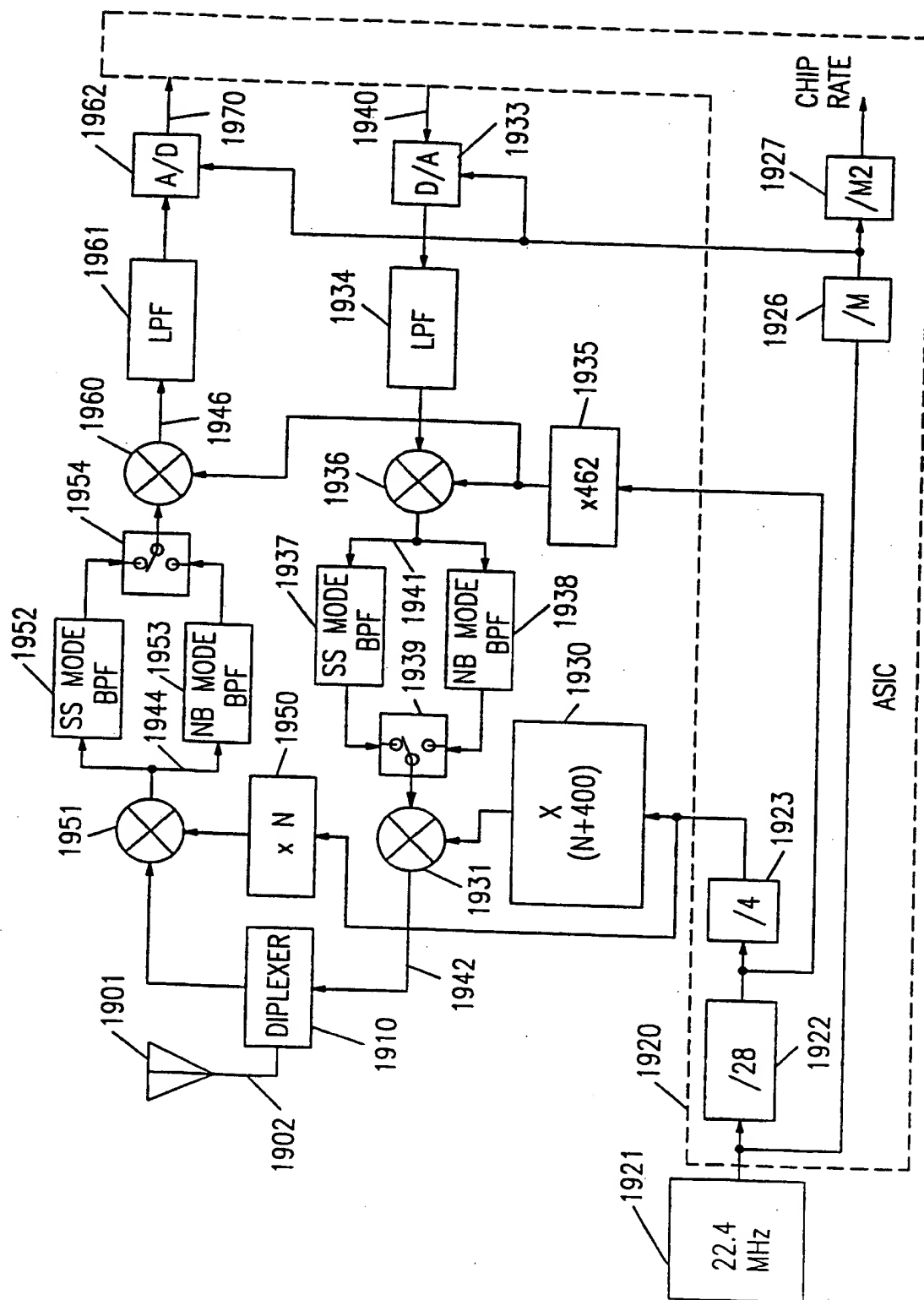


Fig. 18

52/93

Fig. 19A



33/33

	2.80Mcp SPREAD SPECTRUM	1.60Mcp SPREAD SPECTRUM	1.40Mcp SPREAD SPECTRUM	0.70Mcp NARROW- BAND	0.64Mcp NARROW- BAND	0.56Mcp NARROW- BAND	0.35Mcp NARROW- BAND
MASTER OSC FREQ 10:	22.4	22.4	22.4	22.4	22.4	22.4	22.4
10/28:	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
10/28/4:	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2
SECOND LO DIVIDE RATIO:	462	462	462	462	462	462	462
SECOND LO FREQ:	369.6	369.6	369.6	369.6	369.6	369.6	369.6
M:	2	7	4	8	7	10	16
M2:	4	2	4	4	5	4	4
CHIP RATE:	2.8	1.6	1.4	0.7	0.64	0.56	0.35
SAMPLE RATE:	11.2	11.2	5.6	2.8	3.2	2.24	1.4
FS/(IF+Fch):	2.00	3.50	2.00	1.87	2.22	1.93	1.87
FINAL IF FREQUENCY:	-2.8	-1.6	-1.4	-0.8	-0.8	-0.6	-0.4
SECOND IF FREQUENCY:	366.8	368	368.2	368.8	368.8	369	369.2
INPUT FREQUENCY:	1850	1850	1850	1850	1850	1850	1850
FIRST LO:	1483.2	1482	1481.8	1481.2	1481.2	1481	1480.8
N:	7416	7410	7409	7406	7406	7405	7404
INPUT FREQUENCY:	1850.2	1850.2	1850.2	1850.2	1850.2	1850.2	1850.2
FIRST LO	1483.4	1482.2	1482	1481.4	1481.4	1482.2	1481
N:	7417	7411	7410	7407	7407	7406	7405
INPUT FREQUENCY:	1930	1930	1930	1930	1930	1930	1930
FIRST LO:	1563.2	1562	1561.8	1561.2	1561.2	1561	1560.8
N:	7816	7810	7809	7806	7806	7805	7804

FIG. 19B

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US96/07905

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**

IPC(6) : Please See Extra Sheet.

US CL : Please See Extra Sheet.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 370/30, 32, 92, 95.3, 105.1, 110.1; 379/58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 202; 455/33.1, 33.2, 34.1, 51.1, 54.1

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS

search terms: base station, user station, transmitting, receiving, control or control pulse, and delay

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US, A, 4,742,512 (AKASHI ET AL.) 03 May 1988, col. 8, lines 5-47, col. 4, lines 1-23, and Fig. 1.	1-186
Y	US, A, 5,109,393 (SAEGUSA) 28 April 1992, col. 4, lines 17-36 and col. 3, lines 10-34.	1-186
T	US, A, 5,528,597 (GERSZBERG ET AL.) 18 June 1996, col. 1, line 60 to col. 2, line 9, col. 3, lines 14-35, col. 5, lines 18-26, and col. 4, lines 56-67.	1-62, 64, 66, 68-70, 72-76, 78-128, 133-139, 143-146, 148-150, 152-157, 159-178, 184-186

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	*T	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
*A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be part of particular relevance	*X*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
*E* earlier document published on or after the international filing date	*Y*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
*L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	*&*	document member of the same patent family
*O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
*P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search 31 JULY 1996	Date of mailing of the international search report 27 AUG 1996
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Box PCT Washington, D.C. 20231 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230	Authorized officer Douglas Olms Telephone No. (703) 305-4703

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet)(July 1992)\*



## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US96/07905

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A,P	US, A, 5,506,837 (SOLLNER ET AL.) 09 April 1996, see entire document.	1-186
A	US, A, 4,222,115 (COPPER ET AL.) 09 September 1980, see entire document.	1-186

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet)(July 1992)★

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US96/07905

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:  
IPC (6):

H04B 1/00; H04J 1/00, 3/06, 3/12, 3/16, 3/24; H04M 3/42, 9/00, 11/00; H04Q 9/00

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:  
US CL :

370/30, 32, 92, 95.3, 105.1, 110.1; 379/58, 59, 60, 61, 64, 202; 455/33.1, 33.2, 34.1, 51.1, 54.1